



PROJECT MANUAL  
for

**Jefferson Twp. LSD-HS Ag Ed Facility**  
2701 South Union Road, Dayton, Ohio 45417

for the  
**Jefferson Township Local School District**  
2625 South Union Road, Dayton, Ohio 45417

SHP Comm. No. 2024006.01  
April 18, 2024



312 Plum Street, Suite 700  
Cincinnati, Ohio 45202  
(513) 381-2112

**BID/PERMIT SET**

**DOCUMENT 00 01 10 - TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP**

**Division 00 – Procurement and Contracting Requirements**

00 01 10 ..... Table of Contents  
00 11 13 ..... Notice to Bidders  
00 21 13 ..... Instructions to Bidders AIA Document A701 – 2018  
00 21 14 ..... Supplementary Instructions to Bidders  
00 41 16 ..... Bid Form  
00 43 13 ..... Bid Guaranty and Contract Bond  
00 45 13 ..... Bidder’s Qualifications  
00 45 14 ..... Non-Collusion Affidavit  
00 45 15 ..... Delinquent Personal Property Tax Affidavit  
00 45 17 ..... Unresolved Findings for Recovery Affidavit  
00 45 18 ..... Campaign Contributions Affidavit  
00 52 16 ..... Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor AIA A101 – 2017  
00 54 33 ..... Digital Data Licensing Agreement AIA C106 – 2022  
00 72 16 ..... General Conditions of the Contract for Construction AIA A201 – 2017  
00 73 01 ..... Supplementary General Conditions  
00 73 03 ..... Drug-Free Workplace Certification  
00 73 04 ..... Waiver of Escrow Agreement  
00 73 42 ..... Contract Provisions for Non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards  
00 73 43 ..... Davis-Bacon Contract Provisions  
00 73 44 ..... Davis-Bacon Wage Determinations

**SPECIFICATIONS GROUP**

**GENERAL REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP**

**Division 01 – General Requirements**

01 10 00 ..... Summary  
01 23 00 ..... Alternates  
01 25 00 ..... Substitution Procedures  
01 26 00 ..... Contract Modification Procedures  
01 29 00 ..... Payment Procedures  
01 31 00 ..... Project Management and Coordination  
01 32 00 ..... Construction Progress Documentation  
01 32 33 ..... Photographic Documentation  
01 33 00 ..... Submittal Procedures  
01 40 00 ..... Quality Requirements  
01 42 00 ..... References  
01 50 00 ..... Temporary Facilities and Controls  
01 60 00 ..... Product Requirements  
01 73 00 ..... Execution  
01 77 00 ..... Closeout Procedures  
01 78 23 ..... Operation and Maintenance Data  
01 78 39 ..... Project Record Documents  
01 79 00 ..... Demonstration and Training

**FACILITY CONSTRUCTION SUBGROUP**

**Division 02 – Existing Conditions**

02 41 19 ..... Selective Demolition (Not included for 90% submittal)

**Division 03 – Concrete**

03 30 00 ..... Refer to Structural Drawings

**Division 04 – Masonry**

04 20 00 ..... Unit Masonry

**Division 05 – Metals**

05 50 00 ..... Refer to Structural Drawings

05 52 13 ..... Pipe and Tube Railings

**Division 06 – Wood, Plastics, and Composites**

06 10 00 ..... Rough Carpentry

06 16 00 ..... Sheathing

06 10 00 ..... Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses

**Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection**

07 21 00 ..... Thermal Insulation

07 62 00 ..... Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim

07 92 00 ..... Joint Sealants

**Division 08 – Openings**

08 11 13 ..... Hollow Metal Doors and Frames

08 36 13 ..... Sectional Overhead Doors

08 71 00 ..... Door Hardware

08 80 00 ..... Glazing

**Division 09 - Finishes**

09 22 16 ..... Non-Structural Metal Framing

09 29 00 ..... Gypsum Board

09 51 13 ..... Acoustical Panel Ceilings

09 65 13 ..... Resilient Base and Accessories

09 65 16 ..... Resilient Sheet Flooring

09 91 12 ..... Painting

**Division 10 – Specialties**

10 11 00 ..... Visual Display Units

10 14 23 ..... Panel Signage

10 26 00 ..... Wall and Door Protection

**Division 11 – Equipment**

NA

**Division 12 – Furnishings**

- 12 32 16 .....Manufactured Plastic-Laminate-Clad-Casework
- 12 36 23.13 .....Plastic-Laminate-Clad-Countertops

**Division 13 – Special Construction**

NA

**Division 14 – Conveying Equipment**

NA

**FACILITY SERVICES SUBGROUP**

**Division 21 – Fire Suppression**

NA

**Division 22 – Plumbing**

- 22 05 00 .....Common Work Results for Plumbing
- 22 05 17 .....Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
- 22 05 23 .....General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
- 22 05 29 .....Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- 22 05 53 .....Identification for Plumbing Piping, Valves and Equipment
- 22 07 00 .....Plumbing Insulation
- 22 10 13 .....Facility Liquified Petroleum Gas Piping
- 22 10 17 .....Liquified Petroleum Piping
- 22 11 16 .....Domestic Water Piping
- 22 11 19 .....Domestic Water Piping Specialties
- 22 13 16 .....Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
- 22 13 19 .....Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
- 22 15 13 .....Compressed Air Piping
- 22 15 19 .....Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers
- 22 40 00 .....Plumbing Fixtures

**Division 23 – Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC)**

- 23 05 00 .....Common Work Results for HVAC
- 23 05 13 .....Common Motor Requirements
- 23 05 29 .....Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- 23 05 48.....Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- 23 05 53 .....Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- 23 05 93 .....Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
- 23 07 13 .....Duct Insulation
- 23 07 19 .....HVAC Piping Insulation
- 23 23 00 .....Refrigerant Piping
- 23 31 13 .....Metal Ducts
- 23 33 00 .....Air Duct Accessories
- 23 34 23 .....HVAC Power Ventilators
- 23 37 13 .....Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles
- 23 72 00 .....Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment
- 23 74 16 .....Packaged, Small-Capacity, Rooftop Air-Conditioning Units
- 23 81 26 .....Split-System Air-Conditioners

- 23 81 29 ..... Variable-Refrigerant-Flow HVAC Systems
- 23 82 39 ..... Unit Heaters

**Division 26 – Electrical**

- 26 00 10 ..... Supplemental Requirements for Electrical
- 26 05 19 ..... Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
- 26 05 26 ..... Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 29 ..... Hangers and Supports for Electrical System
- 26 05 33 ..... Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 44 ..... Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
- 26 05 53 ..... Identification for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 73 ..... Power System Studies
- 26 09 23 ..... Lighting Control Devices
- 26 24 16 ..... Panelboards
- 26 25 00 ..... Low-Voltage Enclosed Bus Assemblies
- 26 27 26 ..... Wiring Devices
- 26 28 13 ..... Fuses
- 26 28 16 ..... Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
- 26 29 13 ..... Enclosed Controllers and Starters
- 26 50 00 ..... Lighting
- 26 60 00 ..... Addressable Fire Alarm Systems

**Division 27 – Communications**

NA

**Division 28 – Electronic Safety and Security**

NA

**SITE AND INFRASTRUCTURE SUBGROUP**

**Division 31 – Earthwork**

- 31 10 00 ..... Site Clearing
- 31 20 00 ..... Earth Moving

**Division 32 – Exterior Improvements**

- 32 12 16 ..... Asphalt Paving
- 32 13 13 ..... Concrete Paving

**Division 33 – Utilities**

- 33 11 00 ..... Water Distribution
- 33 31 00 ..... Sanitary Sewers
- 33 41 00 ..... Storm Drainage

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 01 10**

**DOCUMENT 00 11 13 – NOTICE TO BIDDERS**

Separate, sealed bids for each of the requirements set forth below will be received at the Office of the Treasurer of the Board of Education of the **Jefferson Township Local School District, Board of Education Office, 2625 South Union Road, Dayton, Ohio 45417** until:

**1:00 p.m. – local time  
May 8, 2024**

and will be publicly opened and read immediately thereafter at the usual place of meeting, and a report thereof made to the board at their next meeting.

Said work consists of the renovation of classroom space in the existing High School into an Agriculture Education shop. The work also includes the construction of a new Greenhouse and Livestock Barn with supporting site improvements.

Project Location: 2701 South Union Road, Dayton Ohio, 45417

**Pre-bid meeting:**

Prospective bidders are encouraged to attend a **pre-bid meeting** to be held **Wednesday, May 1, 2024 at 11:00 a.m.** at the following location:

**Jefferson Township Local School District  
Board of Education Office  
2625 South Union Road  
Dayton, Ohio 45417**

A tour of the project area will follow the meeting.

The Contract Documents are available for purchase from: Key Blue Prints Inc., 411 Elliott Ave, Cincinnati, Ohio 45215, 513-821-2111 [www.keycompanies.com](http://www.keycompanies.com). Documents will be forwarded at bidder's expense.

Bids shall be submitted on the form furnished with each set of bid documents or on a photographic copy of that form. Each bid shall be accompanied by a bid guarantee meeting requirements of Section 153.54 of the Ohio Revised Code. Said guarantee may be in the form of a bond (ORC 153.571) or a certified check, cashiers check, or letter of credit meeting requirements of 153.54. The project is ESSER funded so prevailing wage rates apply. Bids received after the time and date set for bid opening will be returned to the bidder unopened.

The said Board of Education reserves the right to waive informalities, and to accept or reject any and all, or parts of any and all bids.

No bids may be withdrawn for at least 60 days after the scheduled closing time for receipt of bids.

The probable construction cost estimate for this work is: \$2,000,000 base bid

Board of Education – Jefferson Township Local School District

By: Craig Jones, Treasurer

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 11 13**



# AIA<sup>®</sup> Document A701<sup>™</sup> – 2018

## Instructions to Bidders

for the following Project:  
*(Name, location, and detailed description)*

**THE OWNER:**  
*(Name, legal status, address, and other information)*

**THE ARCHITECT:**  
*(Name, legal status, address, and other information)*

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | DEFINITIONS                                    |
| 2 | BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS                       |
| 3 | BIDDING DOCUMENTS                              |
| 4 | BIDDING PROCEDURES                             |
| 5 | CONSIDERATION OF BIDS                          |
| 6 | POST-BID INFORMATION                           |
| 7 | PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND              |
| 8 | ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS |

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**  
The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

FEDERAL, STATE, AND LOCAL LAWS MAY IMPOSE REQUIREMENTS ON PUBLIC PROCUREMENT CONTRACTS. CONSULT LOCAL AUTHORITIES OR AN ATTORNEY TO VERIFY REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO THIS PROCUREMENT BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM.

It is intended that AIA Document G612 □ 2017, Owner's Instructions to the Architect, Parts A and B will be completed prior to using this document.

## ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, supplementary instructions to bidders, the bid form, and any other bidding forms. The Proposed Contract Documents consist of the unexecuted form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor and that Agreement's Exhibits, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, all Addenda, and all other documents enumerated in Article 8 of these Instructions.

§ 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, or in other Proposed Contract Documents apply to the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect, which, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections, modify or interpret the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents, to which Work may be added or deleted by sums stated in Alternate Bids.

§ 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from, or that does not change, the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.

§ 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid and who meets the requirements set forth in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment, or labor for a portion of the Work.

## ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

§ 2.1 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that:

- .1 the Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents;
- .2 the Bidder understands how the Bidding Documents relate to other portions of the Project, if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction;
- .3 the Bid complies with the Bidding Documents;
- .4 the Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and has correlated the Bidder's observations with the requirements of the Proposed Contract Documents;
- .5 the Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception; and
- .6 the Bidder has read and understands the provisions for liquidated damages, if any, set forth in the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

## ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

### § 3.1 Distribution

§ 3.1.1 Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents, as indicated below, from the issuing office designated in the advertisement or invitation to bid, for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein.

*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall obtain Bidding Documents.)*



**§ 3.1.2** Any required deposit shall be refunded to Bidders who submit a bona fide Bid and return the paper Bidding Documents in good condition within ten days after receipt of Bids. The cost to replace missing or damaged paper documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the paper Bidding Documents, and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.

**§ 3.1.3** Bidding Documents will not be issued directly to Sub-bidders unless specifically offered in the advertisement or invitation to bid, or in supplementary instructions to bidders.

**§ 3.1.4** Bidders shall use complete Bidding Documents in preparing Bids. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Bidding Documents.

**§ 3.1.5** The Bidding Documents will be available for the sole purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by distribution of the Bidding Documents.

### **§ 3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents**

**§ 3.2.1** The Bidder shall carefully study the Bidding Documents, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall notify the Architect of errors, inconsistencies, or ambiguities discovered and request clarification or interpretation pursuant to Section 3.2.2.

**§ 3.2.2** Requests for clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing and shall be received by the Architect at least seven days prior to the date for receipt of Bids.  
*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit requests for clarification and interpretation.)*

**§ 3.2.3** Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents shall be made by Addendum. Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

### **§ 3.3 Substitutions**

**§ 3.3.1** The materials, products, and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.

#### **§ 3.3.2 Substitution Process**

**§ 3.3.2.1** Written requests for substitutions shall be received by the Architect at least ten days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Requests shall be submitted in the same manner as that established for submitting clarifications and interpretations in Section 3.2.2.

**§ 3.3.2.2** Bidders shall submit substitution requests on a Substitution Request Form if one is provided in the Bidding Documents.

**§ 3.3.2.3** If a Substitution Request Form is not provided, requests shall include (1) the name of the material or equipment specified in the Bidding Documents; (2) the reason for the requested substitution; (3) a complete description of the proposed substitution including the name of the material or equipment proposed as the substitute, performance and test data, and relevant drawings; and (4) any other information necessary for an evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED), that will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.

**§ 3.3.3** The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.

**§ 3.3.4** If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval shall be set forth in an Addendum. Approvals made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3.5 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### § 3.4 Addenda

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to Bidders known by the issuing office to have received complete Bidding Documents.

*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Addenda will be transmitted.)*

§ 3.4.2 Addenda will be available where Bidding Documents are on file.

§ 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued no later than four days prior to the date for receipt of Bids, except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.

§ 3.4.4 Prior to submitting a Bid, each Bidder shall ascertain that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

### ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

#### § 4.1 Preparation of Bids

§ 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with or identified in the Bidding Documents.

§ 4.1.2 All blanks on the bid form shall be legibly executed. Paper bid forms shall be executed in a non-erasable medium.

§ 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and numbers, unless noted otherwise on the bid form. In case of discrepancy, the amount entered in words shall govern.

§ 4.1.4 Edits to entries made on paper bid forms must be initialed by the signer of the Bid.

§ 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "No Change" or as required by the bid form.

§ 4.1.6 Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the bid security, state the Bidder's refusal to accept award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall neither make additional stipulations on the bid form nor qualify the Bid in any other manner.

§ 4.1.7 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name and legal status of the Bidder. As part of the documentation submitted with the Bid, the Bidder shall provide evidence of its legal authority to perform the Work in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. Each copy of the Bid shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further name the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached, certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.

§ 4.1.8 A Bidder shall incur all costs associated with the preparation of its Bid.

#### § 4.2 Bid Security

§ 4.2.1 Each Bid shall be accompanied by the following bid security:

*(Insert the form and amount of bid security.)*

§ 4.2.2 The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid and shall, if required, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount of the bid security shall be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty. In the event the Owner fails to comply with Section 6.2, the amount of the bid security shall not be forfeited to the Owner.

**§ 4.2.3** If a surety bond is required as bid security, it shall be written on AIA Document A310□, Bid Bond, unless otherwise provided in the Bidding Documents. The attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall affix to the bond a certified and current copy of an acceptable power of attorney. The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 4.2.4** The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until (a) the Contract has been executed and bonds, if required, have been furnished; (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn; or (c) all Bids have been rejected. However, if no Contract has been awarded or a Bidder has not been notified of the acceptance of its Bid, a Bidder may, beginning days after the opening of Bids, withdraw its Bid and request the return of its bid security.

### **§ 4.3 Submission of Bids**

**§ 4.3.1** A Bidder shall submit its Bid as indicated below:

*(Indicate how, such as by website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit their Bid.)*

**§ 4.3.2** Paper copies of the Bid, the bid security, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall be addressed to the party receiving the Bids and shall be identified with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address, and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the notation "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof.

**§ 4.3.3** Bids shall be submitted by the date and time and at the place indicated in the invitation to bid. Bids submitted after the date and time for receipt of Bids, or at an incorrect place, will not be accepted.

**§ 4.3.4** The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids.

**§ 4.3.5** A Bid submitted by any method other than as provided in this Section 4.3 will not be accepted.

### **§ 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid**

**§ 4.4.1** Prior to the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder may submit a new Bid to replace a Bid previously submitted, or withdraw its Bid entirely, by notice to the party designated to receive the Bids. Such notice shall be received and duly recorded by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. The receiving party shall verify that replaced or withdrawn Bids are removed from the other submitted Bids and not considered. Notice of submission of a replacement Bid or withdrawal of a Bid shall be worded so as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.

**§ 4.4.2** Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids in the same format as that established in Section 4.3, provided they fully conform with these Instructions to Bidders. Bid security shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.

**§ 4.4.3** After the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder who discovers that it made a clerical error in its Bid shall notify the Architect of such error within two days, or pursuant to a timeframe specified by the law of the jurisdiction where the Project is located, requesting withdrawal of its Bid. Upon providing evidence of such error to the reasonable satisfaction of the Architect, the Bid shall be withdrawn and not resubmitted. If a Bid is withdrawn pursuant to this Section 4.4.3, the bid security will be attended to as follows:

*(State the terms and conditions, such as Bid rank, for returning or retaining the bid security.)*

## **ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS**

### **§ 5.1 Opening of Bids**

If stipulated in an advertisement or invitation to bid, or when otherwise required by law, Bids properly identified and received within the specified time limits will be publicly opened and read aloud. A summary of the Bids may be made available to Bidders.

## **§ 5.2 Rejection of Bids**

Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids.

## **§ 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)**

**§ 5.3.1** It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents. Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's best interests.

**§ 5.3.2** Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Bidding Documents, and to determine the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and Alternates accepted.

## **ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION**

### **§ 6.1 Contractor's Qualification Statement**

Bidders to whom award of a Contract is under consideration shall submit to the Architect, upon request and within the timeframe specified by the Architect, a properly executed AIA Document A305, Contractor's Qualification Statement, unless such a Statement has been previously required and submitted for this Bid.

### **§ 6.2 Owner's Financial Capability**

A Bidder to whom award of a Contract is under consideration may request in writing, fourteen days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids, that the Owner furnish to the Bidder reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Owner shall then furnish such reasonable evidence to the Bidder no later than seven days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids. Unless such reasonable evidence is furnished within the allotted time, the Bidder will not be required to execute the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

### **§ 6.3 Submittals**

**§ 6.3.1** After notification of selection for the award of the Contract, the Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, submit in writing to the Owner through the Architect:

- .1 a designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own forces;
- .2 names of the principal products and systems proposed for the Work and the manufacturers and suppliers of each; and
- .3 names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.

**§ 6.3.2** The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.

**§ 6.3.3** Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect will notify the Bidder if either the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder. If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a proposed person or entity, the Bidder may, at the Bidder's option, withdraw the Bid or submit an acceptable substitute person or entity. The Bidder may also submit any required adjustment in the Base Bid or Alternate Bid to account for the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution. The Owner may accept the adjusted bid price or disqualify the Bidder. In the event of either withdrawal or disqualification, bid security will not be forfeited.

**§ 6.3.4** Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner and Architect.

## **ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND**

### **§ 7.1 Bond Requirements**

**§ 7.1.1** If stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder.

**§ 7.1.2** If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid. If the furnishing of such bonds is required after receipt of bids and before execution of the Contract, the cost of such bonds shall be added to the Bid in determining the Contract Sum.

**§ 7.1.3** The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 7.1.4** Unless otherwise indicated below, the Penal Sum of the Payment and Performance Bonds shall be the amount of the Contract Sum.

*(If Payment or Performance Bonds are to be in an amount other than 100% of the Contract Sum, indicate the dollar amount or percentage of the Contract Sum.)*

## **§ 7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bonds**

**§ 7.2.1** The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to commence sooner in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered in accordance with this Section 7.2.1.

**§ 7.2.2** Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond.

**§ 7.2.3** The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.

**§ 7.2.4** The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

## **ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

**§ 8.1** Copies of the proposed Contract Documents have been made available to the Bidder and consist of the following documents:

- .1** AIA Document A101  2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, unless otherwise stated below.  
*(Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)*
  
- .2** AIA Document A101  2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, unless otherwise stated below.  
*(Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)*
  
- .3** AIA Document A201  2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, unless otherwise stated below.  
*(Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)*
  
- .4** AIA Document E203  2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, dated as indicated below:  
*(Insert the date of the E203-2013.)*
  
- .5** Drawings

Number	Title	Date
.6	Specifications	

Section	Title	Date	Pages
.7	Addenda:		

Number	Date	Pages
--------	------	-------

.8 Other Exhibits:  
*(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)*

AIA Document E204  2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:  
*(Insert the date of the E204-2017.)*

The Sustainability Plan:

Title	Date	Pages
-------	------	-------

Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

Document	Title	Date	Pages
----------	-------	------	-------

.9 Other documents listed below:  
*(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Proposed Contract Documents.)*

**DOCUMENT 00 21 14 - SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

**NOTE:**

This section shall serve to supplement, modify, change and/or clarify provisions of the Instructions to Bidders (AIA Document A-701, 2018 Edition, "Instructions to Bidders"). Where an Article of the Instructions to Bidders is not modified or a Paragraph, Subparagraph, or Clause thereof is not modified or deleted by these supplements, the unaltered provisions of that Article, Paragraph, Subparagraph, or Clause shall remain in effect. Where items of this section directly conflict with those of the Instructions to Bidders, the provisions of this section shall prevail.

**ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATION**

Add the following to Article 2:

"2.2 Bidders shall refer to the "Notice to Bidders" for Pre-Bid Meeting requirements."

**ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS**

**3.1 Distribution**

Delete Paragraph 3.1.1 and replace with the following:

"3.1.1 Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents from the issuing office designated in the Notice to Bidders."

Delete Paragraph 3.1.2 in its entirety.

**3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents**

Add Paragraph 3.2.1.1 as follows:

"3.2.1.1 Each Bidder is responsible for calling to the attention of the Architect any ambiguities, inconsistencies, errors, or omissions which may occur in the documents for their part of the Work. If Bidder fails to request clarification, the Bidder will be expected to overcome such conditions without additions to the bid amount."

Add Paragraph 3.2.2.1 as follows:

"3.2.2.1 Clarification or interpretation can be made via e-mail to Dan Behnfeldt, dbehnfeldt@shp.com or telephone, 513-588-1380."

**3.4 Addenda**

Delete Paragraph 3.4.3 and replace with the following:

"3.4.3 If an Addendum is issued within 72 hours prior to the published time for the opening of bids (excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays), the time for opening of bids shall be extended one (1) week with no further advertising required."

**ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES**

**4.1 Preparation of Bids**

Add Paragraph 4.1.1.1 as follows:

"4.1.1.1 Any change or alteration to the wording of the bid form may cause a Bid to be rejected as non-responsive."

Delete Paragraph 4.1.3 and replace with the following:

"4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and figures and in figures only where no space is provided for words. In case of discrepancy, the amount written in words shall govern."

Add paragraph 4.1.5.1 and 4.1.5.2 as follows:

"4.1.5.1 A blank entry or an entry of "No Bid", "N/A", or similar entry for any Alternate will cause a Bid to be rejected as non-responsive if that Alternate is selected.

4.1.5.2 If an Alternate is not selected and an entry of "No Bid", "N/A", or similar entry for the Alternate is listed, this action, by itself, will not render the Bid as non-responsive."

Add Paragraph 4.1.9 as follows:

"4.1.9 The Bidder shall include a signed copy of the Bidder's Qualifications and Non-Collusion Affidavit with their Bid; a copy of each form is included in Division 00 of the Project Manual."

**4.2 Bid Security**

Delete Paragraphs 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3 and 4.2.4 and replace with the following:

4.2.1 Each Bid shall be accompanied by a bid security, in accordance with the Ohio Revised Code (ORC) Section 153.54(B), in the amount of the Base Bid plus ADD Alternates or;

4.2.2 a signed bond in the form of a certified check, cashier's check or letter of credit, as provided in ORC Section 153.54(C). The amount of the certified check, cashier's check or letter of credit shall be equal to ten (10) percent of the Base Bid plus ADD Alternates or;

4.2.3 a bid guaranty and contract bond in accordance with ORC Section 153.571 in the amount of 100 percent of the total Base Bid plus ADD Alternates. If the dollar space on the bid guaranty is left blank, the penal sum will be the full amount of the Base Bid plus ADD Alternates, stated in dollars and cents. A percentage is not acceptable, pursuant to ORC Section 153.571.

4.2.4 The bond shall serve as an assurance that the Bidder will, upon acceptance of the Bid, comply with all conditions precedent for Contract execution, within the time specified.

4.2.5 The bond must be issued by a surety authorized by the Department of Insurance to transact business in Ohio. The bond must be issued by a surety capable of demonstrating a record of competent underwriting, efficient management, adequate reserves, and sound investments. These criteria will be met if the surety currently has an A.M. Best Company Policy Holders Rating of "A+", "A" or "A-" or better and has or exceeds the Best Financial Size Category of Class VII. The bond must be signed by an authorized agent, with Power of Attorney, from a surety.

4.2.6 Bond will be returned to all unsuccessful Bidders after Contract is awarded. If used, a certified check, cashier's check or letter of credit will be returned to the successful Bidder upon providing the bond required by ORC Section 153.54(C).

4.2.7 If for any reason, other than as authorized by Article 4.4, Modifications or Withdrawal of Bid, the Bidder fails to enter into a Contract, and the Owner awards the Contract to the next lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, the Bidder who failed to enter into a Contract shall be liable to the Owner for the difference between the Bidder's Bid and the Bid of the next lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, or for a penal sum not to exceed ten (10) percent of the Bid amount, whichever is less, pursuant to ORC Section 153.54."

#### 4.3 Submission of Bids

Add Paragraph 4.3.1.1 as follows

"4.3.1.1 Submit Bid(s) in paper form, in duplicate, in sealed envelope, at time and place stipulated."

#### 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid

Delete Paragraph 4.4.3 and replace with the following:

"4.4.3 All Bids are valid for (60) days after the opening of bids. A Bid may be extended thereafter upon mutual agreement, in writing, between the Owner and Contractor. Awards beyond the sixty (60) day period shall be reviewed for increased cost of the Contract only if the cause for delay is no fault of the Contractor and substantiated."

Add Paragraph 4.4.4 as follows:

"4.4.4 A Bidder may withdraw a Bid from consideration after the bid opening if the bid amount was substantially lower than the amounts of other Bids, providing the Bid was submitted in good faith, and the reason for the bid amount being substantially lower was a clerical mistake as opposed to a judgement mistake, and was actually due to an unintentional and substantial arithmetic error or an unintentional omission of a substantial quantity of Work, labor or material made directly in the compilation of the bid amount. Request to withdraw Bid must be made in writing filed with the Owner and Architect within two business days after conclusion of the bid opening."

### ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

#### 5.2 Rejection of Bids

Add Paragraphs 5.2.1, 5.2.2 and 5.2.3 as follows

5.2.1 If the lowest Bidder is not responsive or responsible, the Owner may reject such Bid and shall notify the Bidder the reasons for the finding.

5.2.2 A Bidder notified that they are not responsive or responsible may object to the Owner's decision by filing a written request for reconsideration, which must be received by the Owner within five (5) days of the date of the notice from the Owner.

5.2.3 Upon receipt of a timely request, the Owner shall meet with the Bidder to listen to the Bidder's objections.

.1 No award of contract shall become final until the Owner has met with all Bidders who have filed timely request for reconsideration.



- .2 If all request for reconsideration are rejected in the Owner's discretion, the award of contract shall become final, or the Owner, in its discretion, may reject all bids.
- .3 If a request for reconsideration is not rejected, any procedures for the determination of the lowest responsible Bidder that have not already been completed concerning the applicable Bidder shall be completed. Following the completed procedures and evaluation of the Bidder, the Bidder will be notified of the findings."

### 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)

Add Paragraphs 5.3.1.1, 5.3.1.2 and 5.3.1.3 as follows:

"5.3.1.1 Pursuant to ORC Section 153.52, the Contract will be awarded to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder.

5.3.1.2 In determining the lowest Bidder, the Owner shall consider the Base Bid and any selected Alternates which the Owner determines to accept, and may result in an award to a Bidder other than the Bidder that submitted the lowest Base Bid. Voluntary Alternates will not be considered in determining the lowest amount.

5.3.1.3 The Bidder acknowledges that although there is an estimate for the cost of the Project, the market conditions may and frequently do result in the estimate being different from the sum of the Bids received, either higher or lower. The Bidder understands that the Owner has included alternatives, which include deduct and add Alternates, to give flexibility in building the Project with funds available. The Bidder further understands and acknowledges that the use of add and deduct Alternates is a long held customary practice in the construction industry in the State of Ohio. The Bidder also acknowledges that the Owner will not make a decision about what Alternates on which to base the award of contracts until the Bids are received, and the Owner can compare its available funds with the Base Bids and the cost or savings from selecting different Alternates. No Contract(s) shall be entered into if the total price of all Contracts for the Project that is bid on the same day, are in excess of ten (10) percent above the entire estimate thereof, in accordance with ORC Section 153.12. Project estimate is listed in the Notice to Bidders."

Delete Paragraph 5.3.2 and replace with the following:

"5.3.2 Subject to the right of the Owner to reject each and every Bid, the Owner will determine the lowest responsive Bid by taking into consideration not only the amount of the Bid but such of the following criteria as it, in its discretion, deems appropriate and may give such weight thereto as it deems appropriate in determining the responsibility of the Bidder:

- .1 the Bidder's financial ability to complete the Contract;
- .2 the Bidder's experience with projects of similar size and scope and more complex projects;
- .3 the conduct and performance of the Bidder on previous contracts completed in a timely manner;
- .4 the Bidder's facilities and equipment;
- .5 the adequacy, in numbers and experience, of the Bidders work force to complete the Contract successfully on time and on budget;
- .6 the ability of the Bidder to execute the Contract properly; and
- .7 the evaluation of the Bid substantially below the median of other Bids."

Add Paragraphs 5.3.3, 5.3.4 and 5.3.5 as follows:

"5.3.3 The Owner shall obtain from the lowest Bidder any information the Owner deems appropriate to the consideration of factors showing responsibility. The failure to submit requested information on a timely basis may result in the determination that the Bidder is not responsible.

5.3.4 The Bidder authorizes the Owner and its representatives to contact owners, construction managers, contractors, and design professionals on projects on which the Bidder has worked and authorizes and requests such owners, construction managers, contractors, and design professionals to provide a candid evaluation of Bidder's performance. By submitting a Bid, the Bidder agrees that if they or any person at their urging, directly or indirectly, brings action against any of such owners, construction managers, contractors, and design professionals or their employees as a result of or related to such candid elevation and such action is not successful, the Bidder will reimburse such owners, design professionals and/or their employees for all legal fees and expenses incurred by them that are related to such legal action, including the cost of collection. This obligation is expressly intended for the benefit of such owners, construction managers, contractors, design professionals and their employees.

5.3.5 The number of consecutive calendar days required to complete the Work shall be considered by the Owner in determining the lowest and responsive Bidder."

## ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION

### 6.2 Owner's Financial Capability

Delete Paragraph 6.2 in its entirety.

### 6.3 Submittals

Add the following Paragraph after Paragraph 6.3.1.3 as follows:

“.4 a list of proposed Contractors and Suppliers.”

## ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND

### 7.1 Bond Requirements

Delete Paragraphs 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, and 7.1.4 and replace with the following:

“7.1.1 The Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder.

7.1.1.1 Bonds shall be written in conformance with the Bond Form provided in the Project Manual and in compliance with ORC Section 153.571.

7.1.2 Prior to award of contract, successful Bidders who provided a cashier's check, certified check or letter of credit as bid security shall submit a contract bond in the form of a performance and payment bond in an amount equal to 100% of the contract sum. The performance and payment bond must be signed by an authorized agent of an acceptable surety bonding company and by the Bidder. Bond must be issued by a surety company authorized by Ohio Department of Insurance to transact business in the State of Ohio. The bond shall be issued by a surety company which can adequately demonstrate a record of competent underwriting, efficient management, adequate reserves and soundness of investments. These criteria will be met if the surety currently has an A.M. Best Company Policyholder Rating of "A+", "A", or "A-" or better and has or exceeds the Best Financial Size Category of Class VII.

7.1.3 Bond must be countersigned by an Ohio resident agent if bond is issued by an out-of-state agent.

7.1.4 Performance and payment bond must be supported by credentials showing power of attorney and corporate seals to each copy. Bonds shall remain in effect for 12 months after date of Substantial Completion is issued by the Owner. Certificate by bonding company of compliance is required prior to final acceptance of Project.”

### 7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bonds

Delete Paragraph 7.2 in its entirety.

## ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Delete Article 8 in its entirety, and replace with the following:

### **ARTICLE 8 SUPPLEMENTAL BIDDING INFORMATION**

8.1 If the Owner and Bidder enter into a Contract within 60 days of the bid opening, the Contractor shall pay any and all material, labor or subcontract cost increases which have occurred since the bid opening. Contract entered into beyond 60 day period may contain additional amounts for cost increases if the cause for delay is not the fault of the Contractor.

8.2 Prior to the signing of a Contract, the successful Bidder shall furnish:

- (i) Certificate of Insurance meeting the requirements of the General Conditions;
- (ii) Ohio Workers' Compensation Certificates;
- (iii) Ohio Secretary of State Certification;
- (iv) Delinquent Personal Property Tax Affidavit as required by ORC Section 5719.042 (form included in Division 00 of the Project Manual);
- (v) Campaign Contributions Affidavit as required by ORC Section 3517.13 (form included in Division 00 of the Project Manual); and
- (vi) Contractor Consent to Escrow Agent/Agreement or waiver of Escrow (form included in Division 00 of the Project Manual).

8.2.1 The award of the Contract and the execution of the Contract are based upon the expectation that the lowest responsible Bidder will comply with the conditions of Section 8.2.

8.2.2 Non-compliance with the conditions within five (5) days of the date that the Bidder is notified of the notice of intent to award the Contract shall be cause for the Owner to cancel the award for the Bidder's lack of responsibility and award the Contract to another Bidder which the Owner determines is the next lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, or resubmit the Contract for bidding, at the discretion of the Owner.

8.3 Upon the signing of a Contract, the Owner shall notify the Surety and Surety Agent of the award of the contract in compliance with ORC Section 9.32.”

**ARTICLE 9 PREVAILING WAGES**

Add Article 9 to read as follows:

**“ARTICLE 9 PREVAILING WAGE**

9.1 The Owner will pay all or part of the contract sum with federal grant funding. Accordingly, prevailing wages in compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act apply to this project.”

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 21 14**

**DOCUMENT 00 41 16 - BID FORM**

**Jefferson Twp. LSD-HS Ag Ed Facility**  
**For**  
**Jefferson Township Local School District**

**SUBMITTED BY:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
(CONTRACTOR FIRM NAME)

**SUBMITTED NO LATER THAN**

**1:00 p.m. - Local Time**  
**May 8, 2024**

**AT THE OFFICE OF:**

**Craig Jones, Treasurer**

**JEFFERSON TOWNSHIP LOCAL SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Board of Education**  
**2625 South Union Road**  
**Dayton, Ohio, 45417**

**DOCUMENTS PREPARED BY:**

**SHP**

**312 Plum Street, Suite 700**  
**Cincinnati, Ohio 45202**

**Bid Form continues on next page**

**PART A - GENERAL NOTES**

The attention of the bidder is called to Notice to Bidders / Instructions to Bidders / Supplementary Instructions to Bidders / Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor / General Conditions / Supplementary General Conditions for specific items relating to the execution of the Bid Form. In submitting this bid, the bidder represents that they have carefully reviewed and understand these documents and agrees to the conditions of these documents. Non-compliance with any of the provisions of these documents may constitute sufficient cause for rejection of a bid.

Execute duplicate Bid Form in original for each bid submitted.

Attach Bid Security to first Bid Form.

Attach the following forms to the first Bid Form:

- o Bidder's Qualifications
- o Non-Collusion Affidavit

Do Not alter the wording of the Bid Form.

Bidders may attach typewritten sheet(s) providing any additional information, voluntary substitutions, or voluntary alternates for the Owner's consideration but the bid amounts contained herein must be based on the bid documents, not such voluntary substitutions or voluntary alternates.

Submit completed Bid Form along with all other required information in a sealed envelope plainly identified as to items being bid and name of bidder. See Instructions to Bidders.

The Owner reserves the right to award separate contracts for each individual item bid or to award combination bids if provided for in this form.

It is understood and agreed that each Bid Package will achieve **Substantial Completion for the Renovation work by August 30, 2024 and Final Completion by September 13, 2024;** and **Substantial Completion for the Barn, Greenhouse, and Site work by September 13, 2024 and Final Completion by September 27, 2024** per definition of AIA General Conditions. See Section 00 73 01 "Supplementary General Conditions" Article 8 – Time, including liquidated damages information.

**PART B - RECEIPT OF ADDENDA**

The following addenda have been received and taken into account in preparation of this bid:

Addenda No.: _____	Addenda No.: _____
Addenda No.: _____	Addenda No.: _____
Addenda No.: _____	Addenda No.: _____
Addenda No.: _____	Addenda No.: _____
Addenda No.: _____	Addenda No.: _____

**Bid Form continues on next page**

**PART C - PROPOSAL**

We, the undersigned bidder have fully examined the Contract Documents entitled: "**Jefferson Twp. LSD-HS Ag Ed Facility**" for **Jefferson Township Local School District**, dated **April 18, 2024** as prepared by SHP, and do hereby propose to perform all Work for the applicable Contract, in accordance with the Contract Documents, for the amounts as follows:

**BASE BID**

**BP#1 – Jefferson Twp. LSD-HS Ag Ed Facility**

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

**ALTERNATES**

**Alternate No. 1: Each bidder is requested to state the change to provide sealed concrete in lieu of Vinyl Sheet Flooring in Rooms 1102 CLASSROOM, 1103 SMALL GROUP ROOM, and 1104 OFFICE per drawing sheet A701.**

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Base Bid (check one).

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Contract Time (calendar days).

**Alternate No. 2: Each bidder is requested to state the change to provide sealed concrete in lieu of Resinous Flooring in Rooms 1101 AG ED LAB and 1106 MECH TECH LAB per drawing sheet A701.**

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Base Bid (check one).

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Contract Time (calendar days).

**Alternate No. 3: Each bidder is requested to state the change to provide 225A Rated Busway in lieu of electric drops in Rooms 1101 AG ED LAB per drawing sheet E200.**

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Base Bid (check one).

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Contract Time (calendar days).

**Alternate No. 4: Each bidder is requested to state the deduction in cost by deleting the Barn and Manure Storage structure from the Scope of Work. Installation of the paving, water line, electric, and conduit for IT up to within five feet of the barn will remain in the Base Bid Scope of Work.**

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Base Bid (check one).

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Contract Time (calendar days).

**Alternate No. 5: Each bidder is requested to state the addition in cost to provide ceiling fans in Room 2001 Small Animal Barn per drawing sheet E201.**

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Base Bid (check one).

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

Add to \_\_\_\_\_ Deduct from \_\_\_\_\_ Contract Time (calendar days).

**VOLUNTARY DEDUCT / VALUE ENGINEERING**

Contractors are encouraged to provide voluntary deducts and/or value engineering suggestions to the base bid plans and specifications. Attach additional pages if necessary:

**VE No. 1:** (provide written description) \_\_\_\_\_

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

**VE No. 2:** (provide written description) \_\_\_\_\_

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

**VE No. 3:** (provide written description) \_\_\_\_\_

ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS, for the sum of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Sum in words: \_\_\_\_\_

**Bid Form continues on next page**



**PART D – BIDDER'S CERTIFICATION**

The bidder hereby acknowledges that the following representations in this bid are material and not mere recitals:

1. Bidder has read and understands the Contract Documents and agrees to comply with all requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether the bidder has actual knowledge of the requirements and regardless of any statement or omission made by the bidder which might indicate a contrary intention.
2. Bidder represents that the bid is based upon the Standards specified by the Contract Documents.
3. Bidder has visited the Project site, become familiar with local conditions and has correlated personal observations about the requirements of the Contract Documents. The bidder has no outstanding questions regarding the interpretation of the Contract Documents.
4. Bidder understands domestic steel use requirements as specified in Ohio Revised Code Section 153.011 apply to this project.
5. Bidder understands that the award of separate contracts for the Project will require phased, sequential, coordinated and interrelated operations which may involve interference, disruption, hindrance or delay in the progress of the bidder's Work
6. Bidder will enter into and execute the agreement with the Owner, if a contract is awarded on the basis of this bid, and if the bidder does not execute an agreement for any reason, other than as authorized by law, the bidder and the bidder's Surety are liable to the Owner as provided in the Ohio Revised Code and as applicable to the Owner.
7. Bidder certifies that the upon the award of a contract, it will make a good faith effort to ensure that all of its employees, while working on the site of the Project, will not purchase, transfer, use or possess illegal drugs or alcohol or abuse prescription drugs in any way.
8. Bidder agrees to furnish any information requested by the Owner to evaluate the responsibility of the bidder.
9. It is understood and agreed that the work embodied in this contract shall be substantially completed per definition of the AIA General Conditions by the milestone dates indicated in the Contract Documents.
10. Costs, per day as shown in the Table of Liquidated Damages (Section 00 73 01 – Supplementary General Conditions) will be accumulated and assessed to all prime contractors (unless specifically released in writing by the Architect or an extension of time is approved by the Architect) after this date until Substantial Completion and Final Completion are achieved, as determined by the Architect.

**Bid Form continues on next page**

**PART E - SIGNATURE PAGE & INFORMATION ABOUT BIDDER**

Legal Name of Business \_\_\_\_\_.

Name of President \_\_\_\_\_.

Name(s) of Owner (If not Corporation)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Main Office Address \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Company Tax identification Number: \_\_\_\_\_.

Company Website (if available): \_\_\_\_\_.

Main Office Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_.

Main Office Contact Person \_\_\_\_\_.

Main Contact Person E-mail Address \_\_\_\_\_.

**Authorized Signature** \_\_\_\_\_.

Printed name and Title \_\_\_\_\_.

**Date of Signature:** \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART F LEAD TIMES:**

Please identify lead times for materials that might arrive after Substantial Completion:

**Estimated lead time for \_\_\_\_\_ (after shop drawing approval) \_\_\_\_\_ WEEKS**

Attach other documents required

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 41 16**

**DOCUMENT 00 43 13 - BID GUARANTY AND CONTRACT BOND (ORC § 153.571)**

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, the undersigned \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ ("Contractor") as principal and

\_\_\_\_\_ as sureties are hereby held and

firmly bound unto the **Board of Education of the Jefferson Township Local School District, Montgomery County, Ohio**, as obligee in the penal sum of the dollar amount of the bid submitted by the principal to the

obligee on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, to undertake the project known as:

**"Jefferson Twp. LSD-HS Ag Ed Facility"** ("Project")

The penal sum referred to herein shall be the dollar amount of the principal's bid to the obligee, incorporating any additive or deductive Alternates made by the principal on the date referred to above to the obligee, which are accepted by the obligee. In no case shall the penal sum exceed the amount of

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_).

(If the foregoing blank is not filled in, the penal sum will be the full amount of the principal's bid, including add Alternates. Alternatively, if the blank is filled in the amount stated must not be less than the full amount of the bid including add Alternates, in dollars and cents. A percentage is not acceptable.) For the payment of the penal sum well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns.

Signed this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

THE CONDITION OF THE ABOVE OBLIGATION IS SUCH that whereas the above named principal has submitted a bid for work on the Project.

Now, therefore, if the obligee accepts the bid of the principal and the principal fails to enter into a proper contract in accordance with the bid, plans, details, specifications, and bills of material; and in the event the principal pays to the obligee the difference not to exceed ten percent (10%) of the penalty hereof between the amount specified in the bid and such larger amount for which the obligee may in good faith contract with the next lowest bidder to perform the work covered by the bid; or in the event the obligee does not award the contract to the next lowest bidder and resubmits the project for bidding, the principal pays to the obligee the difference not to exceed ten percent (10%) of the penalty hereof between the amount specified in the bid, or the costs, in connection with the resubmission, of printing new contract documents, required advertising, and printing and mailing notices to prospective bidders, whichever is less, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect; if the obligee accepts the bid of the principal and the principal within ten (10) days after the awarding of the contract enters into a proper contract in accordance with the bid, plans, details, specifications, and bills of material, which said contract is made a part of this bond the same as though set forth herein.

Now also, if the said principal shall well and faithfully do and perform the things agreed by said principal to be done and performed according to the terms of said contract; and shall pay all lawful claims of subcontractors, materialmen, and laborers, for labor performed and materials furnished in the carrying forward, performing, or completing of said contract; we agreeing and assenting that this undertaking shall be for the benefit of any materialman or laborer having a just claim, as well as for the obligee herein; then this obligation shall be void; otherwise the same shall remain in full force and effect; and surety shall indemnify the obligee against all damage suffered by failure of the principal to perform the contract according to its provisions and in accordance with the plans, details, specifications, and bills of material therefore and to pay all lawful claims of subcontractors, materialmen, and laborers for labor performed or material furnished in carrying forward, performing, or completing the contract and surety further agrees and assents that this undertaking is for the benefit of any subcontractor, materialman, or laborer having a

just claim, as well as for the obligee; it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the surety for any and all claims hereunder shall in no event exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The said surety hereby stipulates and agrees that no modifications, omissions, or additions in or to the terms of the said contract or in or to the plans or specifications therefore shall in any wise affect the obligations of said surety on its bond. The said surety further stipulates that it is authorized to execute bonds in the State of Ohio and that the liability incurred is within the limits of Section 3929.02 of the Ohio Revised Code.

Signed and sealed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(PRINCIPAL) (Seal)

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Printed Name & Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(SURETY) (Seal)

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Printed Name & Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
NAME OF SURETY'S AGENT

Surety's Agent's Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety's Agent's Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Surety's Agent's E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 43 13**

**DOCUMENT 00 45 13 – BIDDER’S QUALIFICATIONS**

**Project Number:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Project Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

**1. Company Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Physical Address:** \_\_\_\_\_  
Street, Building, Unit

\_\_\_\_\_  
City, State, Zip

**Mailing Address (if different):** \_\_\_\_\_  
P.O. Box

\_\_\_\_\_  
City, State, Zip

**Telephone Number (w/ Area Code):** ( \_\_\_\_\_ ) \_\_\_\_\_

**Email address:** \_\_\_\_\_

**2. Overall Experience.** Indicate Bidder’s overall experience performing the trades bid, including the years in business performing the trade under present and former business names.

**3. Financial.** The apparent low Bidder shall submit, upon request of the Contracting Authority, either:

- a) An annual financial statement prepared within the 12 months prior to the bid opening by an independent licensed accounting firm; and the name, address, contact person and phone number of the bank normally used by the Bidder for its primary banking; or,
- b) A financial report generated within 30 days prior to the bid opening from Standard and Poor’s Financial Services LLC (S&P), Dun & Bradstreet, or a similar company acceptable to the Contracting Authority documenting the financial condition of the Bidder; and the name, address, contact person and phone number of the bank normally used by the Bidder for its primary banking;

**This information is not a public record under Ohio Revised Code Section 149.43; and shall remain confidential, except under proper order of a court.**

**4. Facilities & Equipment.** Indicate Bidder’s relevant facilities and major equipment (leased or owned).

**5. Ongoing & Relevant Projects.** List all ongoing projects and projects completed in the last 5 years, which are similar in cost and type to the Project. Include scope of Work, Contract value, and project name/contact person/address/phone number for each owner and architect or engineer for each project.

**6. Regulatory / Contractual.** Indicate all occurrences of the following in the last 5 years (indicate if none). For verification, attach documentation, and/or provide sufficient and appropriate detail information such as: project name, owner, contact person and phone number, amount of contract, etc.

a) State or federal Prevailing Wage violations or judgments

b) Affirmative Action violations (Attach Certificate of Compliance with Affirmative Action Programs, issued pursuant to Ohio Revised Code Section 9.47)

c) Contract abandonment, Contract termination, as either a prime- or sub-contractor, or Surety takeover

d) Debarment by state, federal or local jurisdictions

e) EPA/OSHA violations

f) Liquidated damages and Statutory Delay Forfeiture assessed

g) Drug-Free Safety Program and Drug Free Workplace Program violations

**7. Management.** Identify individuals assigned to this Project.

Principal \_\_\_\_\_ Years with firm \_\_\_\_\_ Total

Exp. \_\_\_\_\_

Project Manager \_\_\_\_\_ Years with firm \_\_\_\_\_ Total

Exp. \_\_\_\_\_

Field Superintendent \_\_\_\_\_ Years with firm \_\_\_\_\_ Total  
Exp. \_\_\_\_\_

**8. Certification.** I hereby certify that the information in this entire Bidder's Qualifications form, including all attachments and referenced information, is factual and complete.

Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_

Authorized Official (please print or type)

\_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Authorized Official \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 45 13**

**DOCUMENT 00 45 14 - NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ )  
 ) SS:  
County of \_\_\_\_\_ )

The Bidder and each person signing on behalf of the Bidder certifies, and in the case of a joint bid, each party thereto certifies as to such party's organization, under penalty of perjury, that to the best of the undersigned's knowledge and belief:

1. The Base Bid, Unit Prices or any Alternate bid in the bid have been arrived at independently without collusion, consultation, communication or agreement, for the purpose of restricting competition as to any matter relating to such Base Bid, Unit Prices or Alternate bid with any other Bidder.
2. Unless otherwise required by law, the Base Bid, Unit Prices or Alternate bid which have been quoted in the bid have not been knowingly disclosed by the Bidder and will not knowingly be disclosed by the Bidder prior to the opening, directly or indirectly, to any other Bidder that would have any interest in the Base Bid, Unit Prices or Alternate bid.
3. No attempt has been made or will be made by the Bidder to induce any other individual, partnership or corporation to submit or not to submit a bid for the purpose of restricting competition.

Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

**ADDITIONAL SIGNATURE FOR JOINT VENTURE:**

Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires \_\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 45 14**



**DOCUMENT 00 45 15 - DELINQUENT PERSONAL PROPERTY TAX AFFIDAVIT**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ )  
 ) SS:  
County of \_\_\_\_\_ )

Bid identification –

CONTRACTOR \_\_\_\_\_

being first duly sworn, deposes and says that they are

\_\_\_\_\_  
(sole owner, a partner, president, secretary, etc.)

of \_\_\_\_\_, the party making the forgoing BID; hereby affirms under oath, pursuant to Section 5719.042 of the Ohio Revised Code, that at the time the BID was submitted, my company (was) (was not) charged with delinquent personal property taxes on the General Tax List of Personal Property for \_\_\_\_\_ County, Ohio, the amount of such due and unpaid delinquent taxes, including due and unpaid penalties and interest shall be set forth below.

A copy of this statement shall be transmitted by the Fiscal Officer to the County Treasurer within 30 days of the date it is submitted.

Delinquent Personal Property Tax \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
Penalties \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
Interest \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Signed:  
\_\_\_\_\_

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public  
My Commission Expires \_\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 45 15**



**DOCUMENT 00 45 18 - CAMPAIGN CONTRIBUTIONS AFFIDAVIT**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ )  
 ) SS:  
County of \_\_\_\_\_ )

Personally appeared before me the undersigned, a bidder in the competitive bidding for

\_\_\_\_\_ for a \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Entity) (Type of Product or Service)

contract let by the **Board of Education of the Jefferson Township Local School District** who, being duly cautioned and sworn, makes the following statement with respect to prohibited activities constituting a conflict of interest or other violation under Ohio Revised Code Section 3517.13 (campaign contributions and reporting) and further states that the undersigned has the authority to make the following representation on behalf of himself or herself or of the business entity:

1. That no person or persons, whom are owners of at least twenty percent of the above named business or corporation nor any spouse of such person, has made, as an individual, within the two previous calendar years, one or more contributions totaling in excess of one thousand dollars to a candidate for or the holder of a public office having ultimate responsibility for the award of this contract, or to his/her campaign Committee nor have they aggregately given contributions totaling more than one thousand dollars.
2. That no person or persons employed by the above named firm, not their spouses are in violation of any provision of Ohio Revised Code Section 3517.13.

**BIDDER:**

SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

TITLE: \_\_\_\_\_

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires \_\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 45 18**

# AIA® Document A101® – 2017

## Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum

**AGREEMENT** made as of the **date of execution by the Owner.**  
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

**BETWEEN the OWNER:**  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

Jefferson Township Local SD  
2625 South Union Road  
Dayton, Ohio 45417

and the **CONTRACTOR:**  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

TBD

for the following **PROJECT:**  
(Name, location and detailed description)

JTLS-D-HS Ag Ed Facility  
2701 South Union Road  
Dayton, Ohio 45417

The **ARCHITECT:**  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

SHP  
312 Plum Street, Suite 700  
Cincinnati, Ohio 45202

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101®-2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201®-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

**TABLE OF ARTICLES**

<b>1</b>	<b>THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>DATE OF COMMENCEMENT, SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION AND FINAL COMPLETION</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>CONTRACT SUM</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>PAYMENTS</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>DISPUTE RESOLUTION</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS</b>

**ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Bid Documents and Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications or Change Orders issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than a Modifications and Change Orders, appears in Article 9.

The terms listed throughout this Agreement and the Contract Documents shall have the same meaning as those in the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions to the Contract.

**ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT**

**2.1 Performance.** The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

**2.2 Subcontracts**

The Contractor agrees that it will enter into written subcontractor agreements for all subcontracted work and further all subcontractor agreements shall conform with Ohio Revised Code 153.503(C) and Ohio Administrative Code 153:1-3-02.

**ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT, SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION AND FINAL COMPLETION**

**§ 3.1** The date of commencement of the Work shall be:

*(Check one of the following boxes.)*

- The date of execution of this Agreement by the Owner.
- A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.
- Established as follows:  
*(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)*

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

§ 3.3 Substantial Completion and Final Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work:

(Check one of the following boxes and complete the necessary information.)

Not later than  (  ) calendar days from the date of commencement of the Work.

By the following date:

Portion of Work	Date
Start of Work	[DEFINE]
Substantial Completion	[DEFINE]
Final Completion	[DEFINE]

§ 3.3.2 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, if portions of the Work are to be completed prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of such portions by the following dates:

Portion of Work	Substantial Completion Date
N/A	

§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM

§ 4.1 The Owner shall pay the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Contract. The Contract Sum shall be (\$ INSERT) ("Base Bid/Stipulated Sum"), subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2 Alternates

§ 4.2.1 Alternates, if any, accepted by the Owner and included in the Contract Sum:

Item	Price

§ 4.2.2

(Paragraphs deleted)

[Not Used.]

(Table deleted)

§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

(Identify each allowance.)

Item	Price
Contingency Allowance (included in Base Bid/Stipulated Sum noted in §4.1)	\$INSERT

§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any:

(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)

Item	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit (\$0.00)

§ 4.5 Liquidated damages, if any:

(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any.)

**Liquidated damages will be assessed in accordance with Article 8 of the Supplemental General Conditions, as enumerated in the Project Manual.**

**§ 4.6 Other:**

*(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)*

**At Project Closeout, any unused amounts from the Contingency Allowance will be credited to the Owner.**

**ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS**

**§ 5.1 Progress Payments**

**§ 5.1.1** Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 5.1.2** The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one (1) calendar month ending on the last day of the month.

**§ 5.1.3** Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Architect not later than the last day of a month, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than the last day of the following month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than **thirty (30)** days after the Architect receives the Application for Payment, including all required documentation.

*(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)*

**§ 5.1.4** Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

**§ 5.1.5** Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

**§ 5.1.6** In accordance with AIA Document A201-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

**§ 5.1.6.1** The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

- .1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work;
- .2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and
- .3 That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified.

**§ 5.1.6.2** The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

- .1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;
- .2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201-2017;
- .3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;
- .4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201-2017; and
- .5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

**§ 5.1.7 Retainage**

**§ 5.1.7.1** For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

*(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)*

**Retainage shall be in accordance with the Ohio Revised Code, Sections 153.12, .13, and .14. Retainage on labor shall be at the rate of 8% for the first 50% of the Work. Retainage on stored materials shall be 8% until those materials are incorporated into and become part of the Project.**

**Contractor waives any and all rights it may have relating to the establishment of a separate escrow account for the deposit of retained funds. The Contractor also waives any and all claims it may have to interest on that separate escrow account under Section 153.63(D) of the Ohio Revised Code, or other provisions of law. In consideration thereof, the Owner agrees to keep a separate accounting of the net income and earnings of the investment of the retained funds, if any, and pay such income and earnings to the Contractor on its Final Payment on the Project.**

**§ 5.1.7.1.1** The following items are not subject to retainage:

*(Insert any items not subject to the withholding of retainage, such as general conditions, insurance, etc.)*

**§ 5.1.7.2** Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:

*(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)*

**§ 5.1.7.3** Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Substantial Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. The Application for Payment submitted at Substantial Completion shall not include retainage as follows:

*(Insert any other conditions for release of retainage upon Substantial Completion.)*

**§ 5.1.8** [Not Used.]

**§ 5.1.9** Except with the Owner's prior approval, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

**§ 5.2 Final Payment**

**§ 5.2.1** Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor when

- .1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201-2017, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment; and
- .2 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect.

**§ 5.2.2** The Owner's final payment to the Contractor shall be made no later than 30 days after the issuance of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment, or as follows:

**§ 5.3 Interest**



Payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate stated below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located. *(Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)*

0 % zero percent

## ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

### § 6.1 Initial Decision Maker

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201□2017. *(Paragraphs deleted)*

### § 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolution

For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201□2017, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:

*(Check the appropriate box.)*

- Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201□2017
- Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction, per Section 8.7.
- Other *(Specify)*

If the Owner and Contractor do not select a method of binding dispute resolution, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.

## ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201□2017.

### § 7.1.1

*(Paragraphs deleted)*

[Not Used.]

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201□2017.

## ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201□2017 or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

§ 8.2 The Owner's representative:

*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

INSERT  
INSERT  
INSERT  
INSERT

§ 8.3 The Contractor's representative:

*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

TBD

§ 8.4 Neither the Owner nor the Contractor representative shall be changed without ten days prior notice to the other party.

### § 8.5 Insurance and Bonds

§ 8.5.1 The Owner and the Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions as set forth in the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction and the Supplemental General Conditions enumerated in the Project Manual, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.5.2 The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction and the Supplemental General Conditions enumerated in the Project Manual, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.6 Notice in electronic format, pursuant to Article 1 of AIA Document A201-2017, may be given in accordance with AIA Document E203-2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, if completed, or as otherwise set forth below:

*(If other than in accordance with AIA Document E203-2013, insert requirements for delivering notice in electronic format such as name, title, and email address of the recipient and whether and how the system will be required to generate a read receipt for the transmission.)*

§ 8.7 Other provisions:

#### **Governing Law**

This Agreement shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding the jurisdiction choice of law rules. Any suit, which may be brought to enforce any provision of this Agreement or any remedy with respect hereto, shall be brought in Common Pleas Court in the county in which the Project is located, and each party hereby expressly consents to the jurisdiction of such court. The parties expressly waive the right to remove any litigation arising out of this Agreement to federal court.

#### **Intended Third Party Beneficiary**

Nothing in this Agreement shall create a contractual relationship with or a cause of action in favor of a third party against the Owner. It is understood that the Owner shall be an intended third-party beneficiary of all subcontracts/subconsultant agreements and shall be entitled to enforce any rights thereunder for its benefit. The Contractor shall incorporate the obligations of this Agreement into its respective subcontractor/subconsultant agreements.

#### **Compliance with Laws**

Contractor shall comply with all applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to its performance under this Agreement. Constructor will assist the Owner and Architect, as needed, in communications with and addressing local government officials with jurisdiction over the Project.

#### **Modification**

No modification or waiver of any of the terms of this Agreement or of any other Contract Documents will be effective against a party unless set forth in writing and signed by or on behalf of a party. Under no circumstances will forbearance, including the failure or repeated failure to insist upon compliance with the terms of the Contract Documents, constitute the waiver or modification of any such terms. The parties acknowledge that no person has authority to modify this Agreement or the other Contract Documents or to waive any of its or their terms, except as expressly provided in this Agreement.

#### **Construction of Agreement**

The parties acknowledge that each party has reviewed this Agreement and the other Contract Documents and voluntarily entered into this Agreement. The normal rule of construction to the effect that any ambiguities are to be resolved against the party preparing the document will not be used in the interpretation of this Agreement, the other Contract Documents, or any amendments or exhibits hereto.

### **Partial Invalidity**

The invalidity of any provision of the Agreement shall not invalidate the Agreement or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Agreement violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Agreement shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Agreement.

### **Entire Agreement**

This Agreement, together with the other Contract documents, constitutes the entire agreement between the parties and supersedes all prior agreements, negotiations, communications, representations, and understanding with respect to the Project.

### **Counterparts**

The Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts each of which when executed and delivered shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

### **Conflicts of Interest**

Except with Owner's prior knowledge and written consent, Contractor shall not engage in any activity or accept any employment, interest, or contribution that would reasonably appear to compromise the Contractor's professional judgement with respect to the Project.

### **Non-Discrimination**

Contractor agrees:

1. That in the hiring of employees for the performance of Work under this Agreement or in any subcontract, neither the Contractor, subcontractor, nor any person acting on behalf of either of them, shall by reason of race, creed, sex, handicap, or color, discriminate against any citizen of the state in the employment of labor or workers who are qualified and available to perform the Work to which the employment relates.
2. That neither the Contractor, subcontractor, nor any person acting on behalf of either of them, shall, in any manner, discriminate against or intimidate any employee hired for the performance of Work under this Agreement on account of race, creed, sex, handicap, or color.
3. That there shall be deducted from the amount payable to the Contractor by the Owner under this Agreement a forfeiture of twenty-five dollars (\$25.00) as required by Ohio Revised Code Section 153.60 for each person who is discriminated against or intimidated in violation of this Agreement.
4. That this Agreement may be canceled or terminated by the Owner and all money to become due hereunder may be forfeited for a second or subsequent violation of the terms of this section of this Agreement.

### **No Findings for Recovery**

The Contractor represents that it is not subject to any unresolved finding for recovery under ORC Section 9.24. If this representation and warranty is found to be false, this Agreement is void, and the Contractor will immediately repay to the Owner any funds paid under this Agreement.

### **Ethics**

The Contractor is aware of the ethics responsibilities in Ohio Revised Code Section 3517.13 and is in compliance with this section of the Ohio Revised Code.

### **Davis-Bacon Prevailing Wage Application**

This Agreement is subjected to the federal Davis Bacon Act (DBA) and associated Davis-Bacon Prevailing Wage requirements. Accordingly, each laborer or worker employed by the Contractor, Subcontractor, or other persons performing Work on the Project shall be paid, at a minimum, in accordance with applicable Davis-Bacon Prevailing Wage Rates. The Contractor, Subcontractor, or other persons performing Work on the Project shall provide all related documentation required by the Contract Documents or requested by the Owner to demonstrate compliance with applicable Davis-Bacon Prevailing Wage requirements. The Contractor shall be responsible for making, obtaining, verifying and maintaining certified payroll records and associated documentation for DBA compliance, for the Project.

### **Federal Contract Provisions**

This Project is funded entirely or partially with federal grant funding. Accordingly, the [Davis Bacon Contract Provisions](attached here as Exhibit M) and the [Contract Provisions for Non-Federal Entity Contracts](attached hereto as Exhibit N) shall apply.

## ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

- .1 AIA Document A101 [ ] [2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, as modified;
- .2 AIA Document A201 [ ] [2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, as modified;
- .3 Supplemental General Conditions, as enumerated in the Project Manual;
- .4 Owner issued Bid Documents and any related Addenda, including the entirety of the Project Manual and all specifications, incorporated hereto by reference to the extent not inconsistent with this Agreement;
- .5 Drawing & Specifications prepared by the Architect for use on the Project;
- .6 Any modifications issued after the execution of this Agreement, including (i) a written amendment to the Agreement signed by both parties; (ii) a change order; or (iii) a construction change directive.
- .7 Other Exhibits:

Exhibit A: Bid Form

Exhibit B: Bid Guaranty & Contract Bond, ORC 153.571

Exhibit C: Bidder Qualifications

Exhibit D: Non-Collusion Affidavit

Exhibit E: Personal Property Tax Affidavit

Exhibit F: Findings for Recovery Affidavit

Exhibit G: Campaign Contributions Affidavit

Exhibit H: Drug Free Workplace Certification

Exhibit I: Waiver of Escrow Agreement

Exhibit J: Substitution Request Form (if applicable)

Exhibit K: Architect [ ] Electronic Documents Agreement

Exhibit L: Contractor Ohio PW [ ] Affidavit of Compliance

Exhibit M: Davis Bacon Wage Rates

Exhibit N: Davis Bacon Contract Provisions

Exhibit O: Contract Provisions for Non-Federal Entity Contracts

This Agreement is entered into as of the date of execution by the Owner.

DEFINE

OWNER (Signature)

(Printed name and title)

(Date)

TBD

CONTRACTOR (Signature)

(Printed name and title)

(Date)

(Paragraph deleted)

**Certificate of Funds  
(ORC 5705.41)**

(Paragraphs deleted)

The undersigned, Fiscal Officer of the Owner, hereby certifies that the amount required to meet the obligations under the contract, obligation, or expenditure for the services described in the preceding agreement, has been lawfully appropriated for such purpose and is in the treasury or in the process of collection to the credit of an appropriate fund, free from any outstanding obligation or encumbrance.

**Dated:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Signed:** \_\_\_\_\_

**NAME, Treasurer/ Fiscal Officer  
NAME OF ENTITY**

(Table deleted)

(Table deleted)

**(ORC 5705.412)**

The undersigned Treasurer, President of the Board of Education, and Superintendent of the Owner hereby certify that the Owner has in effect for the term of the contract the authorization to levy taxes including the renewal or replacement of existing levies which, when combined with the estimated revenue from all other sources available to the Owner at the time of this certification, are sufficient to provide the operating revenues necessary to enable the district to maintain all personnel and programs for all the days set forth in its adopted school calendars for the current fiscal year and for a number of days in succeeding fiscal years equal to the number of days instruction was held or is schedule for the current fiscal year.

**Dated:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**NAME, Treasurer**

**Dated:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**NAME, Board of Education President**

**Dated:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**NAME, Superintendent**

(Table deleted)

# DRAFT AIA® Document C106® - 2022

## Digital Data Licensing Agreement, as modified

**AGREEMENT** made as of the « » day of « » in the year « »  
(In words, indicate day, month, and year.)

**BETWEEN** the Party transmitting Digital Data (“**TRANSMITTING PARTY**”):  
(Name, address, and contact information, including electronic addresses)

« SHP »  
« 312 Plum Street, Suite 700 »  
« Cincinnati, Ohio 45202 »

and the Party receiving the Digital Data (“**RECEIVING PARTY**”):  
(Name, address, and contact information, including electronic addresses)

« »  
« »  
« »  
« »

for the following **PROJECT**:  
(Name and location or address of the Project)

« »  
« »

for the following Digital Data (“**DIGITAL DATA**”):  
(Identify below, in detail, the information created or stored in digital form that the Parties intend to be subject to this Agreement.)

« Revit Building Information Model, which will be provided in a .RVT format for Autodesk Revit format version;  
and/or AutoCAD files in a .DWG format;  
and/ or any other electronic data provided by the Transmitting Party to the Receiving Party»

The Transmitting Party and Receiving Party agree as follows.

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**  
The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.



**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 TRANSMISSION AND OWNERSHIP OF DIGITAL DATA
- 3 AUTHORIZED USE
- 4 LICENSING FEE OR OTHER COMPENSATION
- 5 OTHER TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 This Agreement provides for the establishment of protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of Digital Data solely and exclusively for the Project.

§ 1.2 This Agreement is the entire and integrated Agreement between the Parties. Except where specifically set forth herein, this Agreement does not create any other contractual relationship between the Parties.

#### § 1.3 Definitions

§ 1.3.1 **Authorized Use.** The term “Authorized Use” refers to the permitted use of digital or electronic data established pursuant to the terms of this Agreement.

§ 1.3.2 **Building Information Model.** A Building Information Model is a digital representation of the Project, or a portion of the Project, and is referred to in this Agreement as the “Model,” which term may be used herein to describe a Model element, a single model or multiple models used in the aggregate.

§ 1.3.3 **Digital Data.** Digital Data is information, including communications, drawings, specifications and designs, created or stored for the Project in digital form. Unless otherwise stated, the term Digital Data includes the Building Information Model.

§ 1.3.3.1 **Confidential Digital Data.** Confidential Digital Data is Digital Data containing confidential or business proprietary information that the Transmitting Party designates and clearly marks as “confidential.”

§ 1.3.4 **Project Participant.** A Project Participant is an entity (or individual) providing services, work, equipment or materials on the Project.

§ 1.3.5 **Receiving Party.** The Receiving Party shall mean the individual or entity receiving the Digital Data from the Transmitting Party and includes the Receiving Party’s employees, officers, consultants, subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to the Authorized Use of the Digital Data in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement. The Receiving Party shall be solely responsible for ensuring its transmission, disbursement, modification and use of the Digital Data is permissible under the terms of this Agreement. The Receiving Party shall be solely responsible/liable for the access and use of the Digital Data by its employees, officers, consultants, subcontractors, and others with whom it has provided access and use.

§ 1.3.6 **Transmitting Party.** The Transmitting Party shall mean the individual or entity transmitting the Digital Data. The Transmitting Party attests it is the copyright owner of the Digital Data, or otherwise has permission to transmit the Digital Data to the Receiving Party for its use on the Project in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

### ARTICLE 2 TRANSMISSION AND OWNERSHIP OF DIGITAL DATA

§ 2.1 The Transmitting Party grants to the Receiving Party a nonexclusive limited license to use the Digital Data solely and exclusively for the Project and in accordance with the Authorized Use defined in Article 3.

§ 2.2 Only the Receiving Party is permitted to access and use the Digital Data. Unlicensed and unauthorized access or use by third parties is strictly prohibited except as set forth in Section 2.4.1.

§ 2.3 The Transmitting Party attests it is the copyright owner of the Digital Data, or otherwise has permission to transmit the Digital Data to the Receiving Party for its use on the Project in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

§ 2.4 Where the Transmitting Party has designated information furnished pursuant to this Agreement as “confidential,” the Receiving Party shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person or entity except as set forth in Section 2.4.1.

§ 2.4.1 The Receiving Party may disclose Confidential Digital Data after seven (7) days’ notice to the Transmitting Party where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order.

§ 2.5 By transmitting Digital Data, the Transmitting Party does not convey any ownership right in the Digital Data or in the software used to generate the Digital Data. Unless otherwise granted in a separate license, the Receiving Party’s right to use, modify, or further transmit Digital Data is specifically limited to those uses, and in accordance with the terms, set forth in Article 3.

§ 2.6 Transmission of the Digital Data does not abridge or extinguish the Transmitting Party’s rights, including, to the extent applicable, exclusive ownership interest, in such information under all applicable state, federal, and international laws including, without limitation, laws governing the protection of copyrights and intellectual property.

### ARTICLE 3 AUTHORIZED USE

§ 3.1 The Receiving Party’s nonexclusive limited license to access and use the Digital Data is solely and exclusively limited to designing, constructing, using, maintaining, altering and adding to the Project, consistent with the terms of this Agreement, and nothing contained in this Agreement conveys any other right to use the Digital Data for any other purpose. Upon completion of the Project, the Digital Data received by Receiving Party should be safeguarded from any further use.

§ 3.2 The Digital Data is transmitted solely for the Receiving Party’s information and convenience. The Receiving Party acknowledges that any use of the Digital Data shall be at Receiving Party’s sole risk. The Receiving Party accepts the Digital Data “as is” without any warranty or representations from the Transmitting Party as to whether the Digital Data is accurate, complete, or fit for use as intended by the Receiving Party.

§ 3.3 The Receiving Party’s access and use of the Digital Data shall in no way alter or modify the Receiving Party’s contractual obligations with the Transmitting Party, or other third-party Project Participants, made under separate Agreement.

### ARTICLE 4 LICENSING FEE OR OTHER COMPENSATION

[Not Used.]

### ARTICLE 5 OTHER TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Other terms and conditions related to the transmission and use of Digital Data are as follows:

« § 5.1 **Indemnification.** The Receiving Party shall indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the Transmitting Party, its employees, officers, and consultants, from and against any claims, suits, demands, causes of action, losses, damages or expenses (including all attorney’s fees and litigation expenses) attributed to errors or defects in data, information or documents, including drawings and specifications, resulting from the Receiving Party’s use or reliance on the Digital Data. The Receiving Party waives all claims against the Transmitting Party, its employees, officers and consultants for any and all damages, losses, or expenses Receiving Party incurs from defects or errors in the electronic documents.

§ 5.2 **Governing Law.** This Agreement is to be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Ohio.

§ 5.3 **No Third-Party Beneficiary.** With exception to the Transmitting Party’s right to assert a cause of action against any party related to the protection of its copyrights and intellectual property, or the copyright and intellectual



property of its consultants, nothing contained in this Agreement shall create a contractual relationship with, or a cause of action in favor of, a third party against either the Transmitting Party or the Receiving Party.

**§ 5.4 Dispute Resolution.** Any claim, dispute or other matter in question arising out of or related to this Agreement shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution. Any subsequent action brought under this Agreement, or any remedy with respect hereto, shall be brought in a Court of Common Pleas in the Ohio county where the project is located, or Hamilton County, Ohio. The Parties' consent to the exclusive jurisdiction of such courts, agree to accept service of process by mail, and hereby waive any jurisdictional or venue defenses otherwise available to them. Each party hereby expressly waives the right to remove any litigation arising out of this Agreement to federal court.

**§ 5.5 Modification.** No modification or waiver of any of the terms of this Agreement shall be effective against a party unless set forth in writing and signed by both parties. Under no circumstances will forbearance, including the failure or repeated failure to insist upon compliance with the terms of this Agreement, constitute the waiver or modification of any such terms. The parties acknowledge that no person has authority to modify this Agreement or to waive any of its terms, except as expressly provided in this Agreement.

**§ 5.6 Severability.** The invalidity of any provision of the Agreement shall not invalidate the Agreement or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Agreement violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Agreement shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Agreement.

**§ 5.7 Notices.** A Notice is any written notice to either Party. Written Notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered (i) in-person to a representative identified in this Agreement; or (ii) sent by registered, certified or electronic mail, return and/or read receipt requested, to the last known business address of the representative identified in this Agreement. »

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written above.

\_\_\_\_\_  
**SHP**  
**TRANSMITTING PARTY** *(Signature)*

« \_\_\_\_\_ »  
*(Printed name and title)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
**TBD**  
**RECEIVING PARTY** *(Signature)*

« \_\_\_\_\_ »  
*(Printed name and title)*



# AIA® Document A201® – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:  
(Name and location or address)

**THE OWNER:**  
(Name, legal status and address)

**THE ARCHITECT:**  
(Name, legal status and address)

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

Init.

/

AIA Document A201 © 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. The American Institute of Architects, American Institute of Architects, AIA, the AIA Logo, and AIA Contract Documents are registered trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 15:32:02 ET on 05/24/2023 under Order No.3104238047 which expires on 02/27/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail [docinfo@aiacontracts.com](mailto:docinfo@aiacontracts.com).

User Notes:

(879646586)

## 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

## 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

#### Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

#### Access to Work

**3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5,  
10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

#### Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

#### Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

#### Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

#### Allowances

**3.8**

#### Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,

3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

#### Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

### ARCHITECT

**4**

Architect, Definition of

**4.1.1**

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2,  
9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1,  
13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2,  
9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1,  
13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16,  
3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5,  
9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

#### Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

**5.2**

### Basic Definitions

**1.1**

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5,  
15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

#### Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**

Init.

## **Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

### **1.8**

Building Permit

3.7.1

## **Capitalization**

### **1.3**

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

## **Certificates for Payment**

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
13.4.4

Certificates of Insurance

9.10.2

## **Change Orders**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, 7.2, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

Change Orders, Definition of

7.2.1

## **CHANGES IN THE WORK**

2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

Claims, Definition of

15.1.1

Claims, Notice of

1.6.2, 15.1.3

## **CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, 15, 15.4

Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims

15.4.1

## **Claims for Additional Cost**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

## **Claims for Additional Time**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, 15.1.6

## **Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for**

3.7.4

Claims for Damages

3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3,

11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Claims Subject to Arbitration

15.4.1

## **Cleaning Up**

3.15, 6.3

Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to

2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, 15.1.5

Commencement of the Work, Definition of

8.1.2

## **Communications**

3.9.1, 4.2.4

Completion, Conditions Relating to

3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2

## **COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND**

**9**

Completion, Substantial

3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

Compliance with Laws

2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

Concealed or Unknown Conditions

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written

3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2

## **Consolidation or Joinder**

15.4.4

## **CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

1.1.4, 6

Construction Change Directive, Definition of

7.3.1

## **Construction Change Directives**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, 7.3, 9.3.1.1

Construction Schedules, Contractor's

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

## **Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

5.4, 14.2.2.2

## **Continuing Contract Performance**

15.1.4

Contract, Definition of

1.1.2

## **CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE**

5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, 14

Contract Administration

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of

1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

Contract Documents, Definition of

1.1.1

## **Contract Sum**

2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, 9.1, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5

Contract Sum, Definition of

9.1

Contract Time

1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

Contract Time, Definition of

8.1.1

Init.

AIA Document A201 © 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. The American Institute of Architects, American Institute of Architects, AIA, the AIA Logo, and AIA Contract Documents are registered trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 15:32:02 ET on 05/24/2023 under Order No.3104238047 which expires on 02/27/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@alacontracts.com.

User Notes:

(879646586)

## CONTRACTOR

### 3

Contractor, Definition of

#### 3.1, 6.1.2

Contractor [ ] Construction and Submittal Schedules

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contractor [ ] Employees

2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Contractor [ ] Liability Insurance

#### 11.1

Contractor [ ] Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner [ ] Forces

3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4

Contractor [ ] Relationship with Subcontractors

1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4

Contractor [ ] Relationship with the Architect

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Contractor [ ] Representations

3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2

Contractor [ ] Responsibility for Those Performing the Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8

Contractor [ ] Review of Contract Documents

#### 3.2

Contractor [ ] Right to Stop the Work

2.2.2, 9.7

Contractor [ ] Right to Terminate the Contract

#### 14.1

Contractor [ ] Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Contractor [ ] Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

Contractor [ ] Supervision and Construction Procedures

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Coordination and Correlation

1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1

Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications

1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11

Copyrights

1.5, 3.17

Correction of Work

2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, 12.2, 12.3, 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1

Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

#### 1.2

Cost, Definition of

#### 7.3.4

Costs

2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14

Cutting and Patching

#### 3.14, 6.2.5

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors

3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work

3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damages, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Damages for Delay

6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2

Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of

#### 8.1.2

Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of

#### 8.1.3

Day, Definition of

#### 8.1.4

Decisions of the Architect

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2

Decisions to Withhold Certification

9.4.1, 9.5, 9.7, 14.1.1.3

Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of

2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1

Definitions

1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1

Delays and Extensions of Time

3.2, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Digital Data Use and Transmission

#### 1.7

Disputes

6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2

Documents and Samples at the Site

#### 3.11

Drawings, Definition of

#### 1.1.5

Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of

#### 3.11

Effective Date of Insurance

#### 8.2.2

Emergencies

#### 10.4, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.5

Employees, Contractor [ ]

3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Equipment, Labor, or Materials  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,  
9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2  
Execution and Progress of the Work  
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1,  
3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1,  
9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4  
Extensions of Time  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2,  
10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**

#### **Failure of Payment**

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

#### **Faulty Work**

(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)

#### **Final Completion and Final Payment**

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### **Financial Arrangements, Owner's**

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

### **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

#### **1**

#### **Governing Law**

##### **13.1**

Guarantees (See Warranty)

#### **Hazardous Materials and Substances**

##### **10.2.4, 10.3**

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers

##### **5.2.1**

#### **Indemnification**

3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

#### **Information and Services Required of the Owner**

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,  
9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,  
14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### **Initial Decision**

##### **15.2**

#### **Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**

1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

#### **Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

##### **10.2.8, 10.4**

#### **Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,  
9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

#### **Instructions to Bidders**

1.1.1

#### **Instructions to the Contractor**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

#### **Instruments of Service, Definition of**

##### **1.1.7**

#### **Insurance**

6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, **11**

Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### **Insurance, Contractor's Liability**

##### **11.1**

Insurance, Effective Date of  
8.2.2, 14.4.2

#### **Insurance, Owner's Liability**

##### **11.2**

#### **Insurance, Property**

**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Insurance, Stored Materials

9.3.2

### **INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **11**

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy  
9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of  
11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

#### **Interest**

##### **13.5**

#### **Interpretation**

1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

#### **Labor and Materials, Equipment**

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,  
10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,  
9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,  
15.4

Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability

3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,  
4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,  
11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1

Limitations of Time

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,  
5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,  
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,  
15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5

#### **Materials, Hazardous**

##### **10.2.4, 10.3**

Materials, Labor, Equipment and

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,  
10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and Procedures of Construction

3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic<sup>3</sup> Lien

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

**Mediation**

8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1

**Minor Changes in the Work**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, 7.4

**MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**13**

**Modifications, Definition of**

**1.1.1**

Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2

**Mutual Responsibility**

**6.2**

**Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of**

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of  
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2

**Notice**

**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1

Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance

11.1.4, 11.2.3

**Notice of Claims**

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.4.1, 13.4.2

Observations, Contractor<sup>3</sup>

3.2, 3.7.4

Occupancy

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

**OWNER**

**2**

**Owner, Definition of**

**2.1.1**

**Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements**

**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

**Owner, Information and Services Required of the**

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

Owner<sup>3</sup> Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1,

7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

**Owner<sup>3</sup> Insurance**

**11.2**

Owner<sup>3</sup> Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

**Owner<sup>3</sup> Right to Carry Out the Work**

**2.5**, 14.2.2

**Owner<sup>3</sup> Right to Clean Up**

**6.3**

**Owner<sup>3</sup> Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**6.1**

**Owner<sup>3</sup> Right to Stop the Work**

**2.4**

Owner<sup>3</sup> Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

Owner<sup>3</sup> Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

**Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service**

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

**Partial Occupancy or Use**

9.6.6, **9.9**

**Patching, Cutting and**

**3.14**, 6.2.5

Patents

3.17

**Payment, Applications for**

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment, Certificates for**

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

**Payment, Failure of**

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment Bond, Performance Bond and**

**7.3.4.4**, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

**Payments, Progress**

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

**PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

**9**

Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

PCB

10.3.1

**Performance Bond and Payment Bond**

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

**Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

**PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF**

**10**

Init.

/

Polychlorinated Biphenyl  
10.3.1  
**Product Data, Definition of**  
**3.12.2**  
**Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings**  
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
**Progress and Completion**  
4.2.2, 8.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4  
**Progress Payments**  
9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4  
**Project, Definition of**  
**1.1.4**  
Project Representatives  
4.2.10  
**Property Insurance**  
10.2.5, 11.2  
**Proposal Requirements**  
1.1.1  
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**  
**10**  
Regulations and Laws  
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,  
10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4  
Rejection of Work  
4.2.6, 12.2.1  
Releases and Waivers of Liens  
9.3.1, 9.10.2  
Representations  
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1  
Representatives  
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1  
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10  
Retainage  
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
**Review of Contract Documents and Field**  
**Conditions by Contractor**  
**3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3**  
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and  
Architect  
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2  
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples  
by Contractor  
3.12  
**Rights and Remedies**  
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,  
6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,  
12.2.4, 13.3, 14, 15.4  
**Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**  
**3.17**  
Rules and Notices for Arbitration  
15.4.1  
**Safety of Persons and Property**  
**10.2, 10.4**  
**Safety Precautions and Programs**  
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4

**Samples, Definition of**  
**3.12.3**  
**Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and**  
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
**Samples at the Site, Documents and**  
**3.11**  
**Schedule of Values**  
**9.2, 9.3.1**  
Schedules, Construction  
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
Separate Contracts and Contractors  
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2  
**Separate Contractors, Definition of**  
**6.1.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Definition of**  
**3.12.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**  
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
**Site, Use of**  
**3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1**  
Site Inspections  
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Site Visits, Architect's  
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Special Inspections and Testing  
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4  
**Specifications, Definition of**  
**1.1.6**  
**Specifications**  
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14  
Statute of Limitations  
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
Stopping the Work  
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1  
Stored Materials  
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4  
**Subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.1**  
**SUBCONTRACTORS**  
**5**  
Subcontractors, Work by  
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2,  
9.6.7  
**Subcontractual Relations**  
**5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1**  
Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8,  
9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Submittal Schedule  
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7  
**Subrogation, Waivers of**  
**6.1.1, 11.3**  
**Substances, Hazardous**  
**10.3**  
**Substantial Completion**  
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2,  
15.1.2

Init.



**Substantial Completion, Definition of****9.8.1**

Substitution of Subcontractors

5.2.3, 5.2.4

Substitution of Architect

2.3.3

Substitutions of Materials

3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8

**Sub-subcontractor, Definition of****5.1.2**

Subsurface Conditions

3.7.4

**Successors and Assigns****13.2****Superintendent****3.9, 10.2.6****Supervision and Construction Procedures**

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Suppliers

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6, 9.10.5, 14.2.1

Surety

5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2, 15.2.7

Surety, Consent of

9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Surveys

1.1.7, 2.3.4

**Suspension by the Owner for Convenience****14.3**

Suspension of the Work

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

Suspension or Termination of the Contract

5.4.1.1, 14

**Taxes**

3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

**Termination by the Contractor**

14.1, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Cause**

5.4.1.1, 14.2, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Convenience****14.4**

Termination of the Architect

2.3.3

Termination of the Contractor Employment

14.2.2

**TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT****14****Tests and Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, 13.4

**TIME****8****Time, Delays and Extensions of**

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4

**Time Limits on Claims**

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work

9.3.2, 9.3.3

**UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK****12****Uncovering of Work****12.1**

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

Unit Prices

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

**Use of Site**

3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

**Values, Schedule of**

9.2, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect

13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor

9.10.5, 13.3.2, 15.1.7

Waiver of Claims by the Owner

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Consequential Damages

14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

**Waivers of Subrogation**

6.1.1, 11.3

**Warranty**

3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 15.1.2

Weather Delays

8.3, 15.1.6.2

**Work, Definition of****1.1.3**

Written Consent

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## **ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **§ 1.1 Basic Definitions**

#### **§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents**

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### **§ 1.1.2 The Contract**

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### **§ 1.1.3 The Work**

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### **§ 1.1.4 The Project**

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### **§ 1.1.5 The Drawings**

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### **§ 1.1.6 The Specifications**

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### **§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service**

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### **§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker**

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### **§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### **§ 1.3 Capitalization**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### **§ 1.4 Interpretation**

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service**

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203 - 2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

### **§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203 - 2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document

G202 □ □2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## **ARTICLE 2 OWNER**

### **§ 2.1 General**

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### **§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 2.3.3 If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

§ 2.3.4 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.3.5 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

§ 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### § 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### § 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

### ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

#### § 3.1 General

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

#### § 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### § 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### § 3.4 Labor and Materials

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### § 3.5 Warranty

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### § 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### § 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### § 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### **§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1** allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2** Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3** whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### **§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

### **§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and

Init.



delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

**§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will

specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### **§ 3.18 Indemnification**

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## **ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT**

### **§ 4.1 General**

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### **§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract**

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

### **§ 4.2.4 Communications**

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### § 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

§ 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

§ 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### **§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

Init.

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

### § 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### § 7.2 Change Orders

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### § 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

§ 7.3.4 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.5 If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

#### § 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

### ARTICLE 8 TIME

#### § 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.



§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

## § 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

## § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### § 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### § 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

### § 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

Init.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

#### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

#### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;

Init.

- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.4 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

## § 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.6.8 Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

## **§ 9.7 Failure of Payment**

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

## **§ 9.8 Substantial Completion**

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

## **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- 1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- 2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- 3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- 4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

### § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

Init.

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will

promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

#### **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

### **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act

or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

## **§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## **§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

## **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**



The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

#### **§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

### **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

#### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

#### **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

##### **§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

##### **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### § 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### § 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### § 13.2 Successors and Assigns

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### § 13.3 Rights and Remedies

§ 13.3.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

### § 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and

approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.4.3 If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

### § 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

### § 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

#### § 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

#### § 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### § 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

## **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

### **§ 15.1 Claims**

#### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

§ 15.1.3.1 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### **§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

§ 15.1.4.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.4.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### **§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost**

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### **§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

§ 15.1.6.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.6.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

### § 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 15.2 Initial Decision

§ 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

§ 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

§ 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

§ 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

§ 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

### § 15.3 Mediation

§ 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.3.4 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

### § 15.4 Arbitration

§ 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

**§ 15.4.4.1** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

**§ 15.4.4.2** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

**§ 15.4.4.3** The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.





## **SECTION 00 73 01 - SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

### **NOTE:**

This section shall serve to supplement, modify, change and/or clarify provisions of the General Conditions (AIA Document A201, 2017 Edition, "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction"). Where an Article of the General Conditions is not modified or a Section is not modified or deleted by these supplements, the unaltered provisions of that Section shall remain in effect. Where items of this section directly conflict with those of the General Conditions, the provisions of this section shall prevail.

### **ARTICLE 1: GENERAL PROVISIONS**

#### **1.1.3 The Work**

(Add the following text to the end of the Section) "The Contractor shall familiarize himself with the Contract Documents and complete the Work intended to be described to the entire satisfaction of the Owner and Architect and shall not avail himself of any manifest error or omission should such exist. The Contractor acknowledges and agrees that the Contract Documents are sufficient to provide for the completion of the Work and include work, whether or not shown or described, which reasonably may be inferred to be required or useful for the completion of the Work in accordance with applicable laws, codes and customary standards of the construction industry."

#### **1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**1.2.4** (Add) "If the Drawings or Specifications conflict, the Contractor is required to provide the greater quantity or higher quality of Work called for. When a duplication of material, equipment or task occurs in the Drawings or Specifications by assignment of work to separate Prime Contracts, each Prime Contractor shall be deemed to have bid on the basis of each providing such material, equipment or task. The Architect will decide which Prime Contractor shall provide the same and which Prime Contract amount shall be adjusted, for not incorporating such into the Project. However it is highly recommended that these discrepancies be brought to the Architect's attention prior to bidding."

**1.2.5** (Add) "It is the intent of the Contract Documents to accomplish a complete and first-grade installation in which there shall be installed new products of the latest and best design and manufacturer, and workmanship shall be thoroughly first class, executed by competent and experienced workmen.

- .1 Details of preparations, construction, installation, and finishing encompassed by the Contract Documents shall conform to the best practices of the respective trades, and that workmanship, construction methods, shall be of quality so as to accomplish a neat and quality finished job.
- .2 Where specific recognized standards are mentioned in the Specifications, it shall be interpreted that such requirements shall be met.
- .3 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all labor, equipment, and materials necessary for the proper and timely execution and completion of the Work, even though such labor, equipment, and materials are not expressly included in the Contract Documents.
- .4 The Contractor will be required to perform all parts of the Work, regardless of whether the parts of the Work are described in the Contract Documents applicable to other trades."

#### **1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

Delete the original text in this section and replace with the following:

**1.7.1** (Add) "The Architect, at the Architect's discretion and without obligation, may make the Contract Documents available for use by Contractors for the purpose of facilitating the coordination process in electronic format. These electronic documents remain the Architect's Instruments of Service and shall be for use solely with respect to this Project, as provided in the Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Architect and Section 1.5 herein. The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document C106-2022 Digital Data Licensing Agreement, as modified, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data."

**1.7.2** (Add) "Where the parties come to agreement per Section 1.7.1, the electronic documents shall be made available in RVT or DWG format, as determined by the Architect. They are available through the Architect's office upon request. A sample of the format will be provided by the Architect upon request by the Contractor, for the purpose of testing the compatibility of the format to Contractor's systems."

### **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 1**

- 1.7.3** (Add) "The Architect reserves the right to strip the files of the Project's name and address, the Architect's and the Architect's consultant's name and address, and any professional licenses indicated on the Contract Documents, and all dimensions, verbiage, and statistical information. Use of these electronic documents is solely at the Contractor's risk, and shall in no way alter the Contractor's Contract for Construction."
- 1.7.4** (Add) "The Architect shall not be responsible or liable for errors, defects, inexactitudes, or anomalies in the data, information, or documents (including Drawings and Specifications) caused by the Architect's or its consultant's computer software or hardware defects or errors; the Architect's or its consultant's electronic or disk transmittal of data, information or documents; or the Architect's or its consultant's reformatting or automated conversion of data, information or documents electronically or disk transmitted from the Architect's consultants to the Architect. The Contractor waives all claims against the Architect, its employees, officers and consultants for any and all damages, losses, or expenses the Contractor incurs from such defects or errors in the electronic documents. Furthermore, the Contractor shall indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the Architect, and its consultants together with their respective employees and officers, harmless from and against any claims, suits, demands, causes of action, losses, damages or expenses (including all attorney fees and litigation expenses) attributed to errors or defects in data, information or documents, including Drawings and Specifications, resulting from the Contractor's distribution of electronic documents to other contractors, persons, or entities."
- 1.8** **Building Information Models Use and Reliance**  
Delete this section in its entirety.

## **ARTICLE 2: OWNER**

### **2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

- 2.3.1** (Delete the text in this section and replace with the following) "Except for permits, fees, design review fees, inspections, meter costs, licensing, taxes, and other service fees that are assigned to the Contractor as enumerated in Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for any additional easements, assessments and charges not specifically assigned to the Contractor."
- 2.3.6** (Add the following text to the end of the section) "The cost of Contractor's reproductions shall be borne by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner."

### **2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

Delete the word "repeatedly" from Section 2.4. (Add the following text to the end of the paragraph) "This right shall be in addition to, and not in limitation of, the Owner's rights under Section 12.2."

### **2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

(Delete the text in this section and replace with the following) "If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work, in any respect, in accordance with the Contract Documents by either (1) failing to commence to correct such default or neglect within 48 hours after receipt of written notice thereof from the Architect or the Owner, (except such period shall be 7 days if the notice is given after final payment), or (2) fails to use its best efforts to continue to correct such default or neglect to the satisfaction of the Owner and Architect, or (3) fails to fully correct such default or neglect within 30 days of such notice to the satisfaction of the Architect and the Owner, then the Owner may, upon written notice of the Contractor and without prejudice to the other remedies the Owner may have, carry out the Work referenced in the written notice to the Contractor; provided that if such default or neglect results in a threat to the safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall immediately commence to correct such default or neglect upon receipt of written or oral notice thereof. If the notice is given before final payment, an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from the payments then or thereafter due the Contractor the costs of correcting such deficiencies, including compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure and the Owner's administrative and legal expense, including the time of the Owner's personnel in dealing with such default. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amount, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The time of the Owner's personnel in dealing with such default will be calculated at the rate of \$65.00 per hour."

## **ARTICLE 3: CONTRACTOR**

### **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

©2023, SHP. No part or portion of this publication may be copied, reprinted, or used without the expressed written consent of SHP. All rights reserved.

**00 73 01-2**

Date this version August 21, 2023

### **3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

- 3.2.5** (Add) "Before ordering material or performing any Work, the Contractor shall verify all measurements at the Project site. Any difference between dimensions on the Drawings and actual measurements shall be brought to the Architect's attention for consideration before the Work proceeds. Where actual measurements require more material and work than the Drawings call for, such material and work shall be supplied at the cost of the Contractor. No extra compensation will be allowed because of difference between actual measurements and dimensions indicated on the Drawings. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility for accuracy of measurements obtained at the work site."
- 3.2.6** (Add) "Mechanical and Electrical Drawings are diagrammatic only. Actual work involved shall be installed from approved Shop Drawings with all measurements obtained at the Project Site by the Contractor."
- 3.2.7** (Add) "Dimensions which are lacking from the Drawings shall be obtained from the Architect. In no case will the Contractor assume that the Drawings are scaled."
- 3.2.8** (Add) "All Contractor inquiries of Owner/Architect shall be in writing and in the form of an RFI (Request for Information). RFI forms can be that of Prime Contractors standard or of a form prepared by the Architect. RFI's are to come direct from the Prime Contractor (not Subcontractor or supplier) and all RFI's are to be numbered and tracked by the Prime Contractor."

### **3.5 Warranty**

- 3.5.1** (Delete the text in this section and replace with the following) "In addition to any other warranties, guarantees, or obligations set forth in the Contract Documents or applicable as a matter of law and not in limitation of the terms of the Contract Documents, the Contractor warrants and guarantees that:
- .1 The Owner will have good title to the Work and materials and equipment incorporated into the Work will be new.
  - .2 The Work and materials and equipment incorporated into the Work will be free from defects, including defects in workmanship or materials.
  - .3 The Work and equipment incorporated into the Work will be fit for the purpose for which they are intended.
  - .4 The Work and materials and equipment incorporated into the Work will be merchantable.
  - .5 The Work and materials and equipment incorporated into the Work will conform in all respects to the Contract Documents.
  - .6 All work performed under the terms of this contract will be guaranteed for a minimum period of one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion.
  - .7 Partial occupancy of the premises use of the equipment shall not constitute the beginning of the guarantee period(s), unless agreed to by the Owner in writing."

**3.5.3** (Add) "Upon notice of the breach of the foregoing warranties or guarantees or other warranties or guarantees under the Contract Documents, the Contractor, in addition to other requirements in the Contract Documents, will commence to correct such breach and damage resulting therefrom within 48 hours after receipt of written notice thereof, thereafter will use its best efforts to correct such breach and damage to the satisfaction of the Owner and, except where an extension of time is granted in writing by the Owner, correct such breach and damage to the satisfaction of the Owner within 30 days of such notice; provided that if such notice is given after final payment hereunder, such 48 hour period shall be extended to 7 days. If the Contractor fails to commence to correct such breach and damage, or correct such breach and damage as provided above, the Owner, upon written notice to the Contractor and without prejudice to its other written notice to the Contractor and without prejudice to his other rights or remedies, may correct the deficiencies. The Contractor upon written notice from the Owner shall pay the Owner, within 10 days after the date of such notice, the Owner's costs and expenses incurred in connection with such correction, including without limitation the Owner's administrative and legal expenses. The foregoing warranties and obligations of the Contractor shall survive the final payment and termination of the Contract."

### **3.6 Taxes**

- 3.6.1** (Delete the text in this section and replace with the following) "Materials purchased for use or consumption with the proposed work will be exempt from the State of Ohio Sales Tax as provided for in Section 5739.02 of the Revised code of Ohio and also from the State of Ohio Use Tax, Section 5741.01. Purchases by the Contractor of expendable items such as form lumber, tools, oils, grease, fuel, or

### **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 3**

equipment rentals, are subject to the application of Ohio Sales or Use Tax.”

### **3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

**3.7.1** (Delete the text in this section and replace with the following:) “The process of reviewing and the subsequent awarding of a Building Permit can take an extended period of time, depending on a Building Department’s current workload. Realizing that a delay in this process may delay the final completion date of the Work if it is not applied for until after the Contractor is awarded the Contract, the Architect shall expedite the Building Permit process by submitting a general Building Permit Application with the required number of Contract Documents to the appropriate Building Department. The submittal for general Building Permit in no way alters the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor, nor does it relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities concerning the terms of General Conditions. The Owner shall pay for the General Building Permit. The Contractor shall secure and pay for all other permits, design review fees, inspections, meter costs, licensing, taxes, and other service fees required by authorities having jurisdiction for work related to each specific Contract unless specifically noted otherwise in Contract Documents. Contractor is responsible for scheduling all inspections and must notify Architect in writing of any design modifications required by local jurisdiction. Contractor shall be responsible for all additional costs resulting out of improper notifications as it relates to Owner, Architect, or other Prime Contractors.”

**3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions**  
Replace “14 days” with “7 days”.

### **3.9 Superintendent**

**3.9.4** (Add) “The Contractor’s superintendent shall be satisfactory to the Architect and the Owner, and the Architect and Owner shall have the right to require the Contractor to remove a superintendent from the Project whose performance is not satisfactory, and to replace the superintendent with a superintendent who is satisfactory to the Architect and Owner. The Contractor shall be required to have a full time superintendent on the Project every day during the course of the Project.”

### **3.10 Contractor’s Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**3.10.4** (Add) “The construction schedule shall be in form as prescribed or approved by the Architect.”

### **3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**3.12.5** (Add the following to the end of this paragraph) “Submittals which are not marked as reviewed for compliance with the Contract Documents and approved by the Contractor may be returned by the Architect without action.”

### **3.18 Indemnification**

**3.18.1** (Delete the text in this section and replace with the following) “To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect’s consultants, and agents and employees of them from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys’ and consultants’ fees and the cost of their staff, arising out of or related to the performance of the Work, including but not limited to claims for bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of or loss of use of real or personal property, claims due to delays in or acceleration of the work of other Contractors, claims for loss of productivity, claims for additional storage and handling charges, claims for escalation of the cost of labor and materials, claims for home office overhead, liens against funds, and claims related to the removal, handling or use of hazardous materials. The Owner may set off an amount equal to the sums for which it is entitled to be indemnified from the amounts otherwise due the Contractor under the Contract Documents. The time of the Owner’s personnel in dealing with such default will be calculated at the rate of \$65.00 per hour.”

**3.18.3** (Add) “The Contractor will be held responsible for all damage to the Work under construction during the performance and until Substantial Completion and acceptance, even though partial payments have been made under the Contract. He will be held answerable for all damages that may occur to persons, to property, animals or vehicles from want of proper shoring, bracing, lighting, watching, boarding, or enclosing; and for any accident arising from defective apparatus or any negligence on the part of himself or his employees. The Contractor covenants and agrees to pay all damages for injury to real or personal

## **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 4**

property or for any injury or death sustained by any person growing out of any act or deed of the Contractor or of his employees or any of his Subcontractors or their employees.”

**3.19 (Add) “Underground Utility Facilities”**

“The Contractor, at least two (2) working days prior to commencing construction in an area which may involve underground utility facilities, shall give notice to the Owner, to the registered underground utility protection services, and the Owners of underground utility facilities shown on the Drawings and Specifications. The Contractor shall immediately alert the Owner, the occupants of any premises near the Work, and the Architect as to any emergency that it may create or discover. The Contractor shall notify the Owner, the operator of the underground facility, and the Architect of any break or leak in the utility lines or any dent, gouge, groove, or other damage to such lines or to their rating or cathodic protection, made or discovered in the course of excavation.”

**3.20 (Add) “Lien Waivers and Notices of Commencement”**

“The Contractor will obtain from all its Subcontractors and suppliers, regardless of tier, a lien waiver, at the time they submit for final payment for all labor, materials, equipment, and/or supplies provided for the Project, of all lien rights they have with respect to the Project in the form of the Lien Waiver included in the Contract Documents or in such other form requested by the Architect and immediately deliver a copy of the executed lien waivers to the Architect with Final Request for Payment. The Contractor will provide all Subcontractors and suppliers a copy of its Bid Guaranty and Performance Bond/Contract Bond. By entering into an agreement to provide labor, materials, equipment and/or supplies for the Project, such Subcontractors and suppliers agree to provide such lien waiver to the Contractor. Upon receipt of Notices of Furnishing, the Contractor will deliver copies of the Notices of Furnishing to the Owner.”

**ARTICLE 4: ARCHITECT**

**4.2.1** (Add the following text to the end of the first sentence) “...and with the Owner’s concurrence, from time to time during the one-year period for correction of Work described in Article 12.”

**4.2.4** Delete the last sentence of this paragraph.

**4.2.10** Add the following at the end of the last sentence: “as set forth in the Owner-Architect Agreement.”

**ARTICLE 5: SUBCONTRACTORS**

**5.3.1** (Add) “All subcontracts are to be in writing, and the Contractor shall be responsible to forward copies to the Owner upon request.”

**ARTICLE 6: CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

**6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

**6.2.3** (Delete the second sentence and replace with the following) “Claims and other disputes and matters in question between the Contractor and other Contractors shall be subject to the provisions of Article 15. If such other Contractors initiate legal or other proceedings against the Owner on account of damage alleged to have been caused by the Contractor, the Owner shall notify the Contractor who shall defend such proceedings at its own expense, and if judgment or award against the Owner arises therefrom, the Contractor shall pay or satisfy it and shall reimburse the Owner for attorneys’ fees and court or other costs which the Owner has incurred over and above those paid for directly by the Contractor. The Contractor, by execution of this Contract, agrees and fully understands the risks and responsibilities associated with this mutual responsibility and has bid accordingly. All costs incurred by the Owner and/or Architect resulting from Contractors filing claims against the Owner for damages caused by another Contractor, shall be borne by that Contractor filing claim.”

**6.2.4** Delete the word . . . “wrongfully” . . . in this section.

**ARTICLE 7: CHANGES IN THE WORK**

**7.2.2** (Add) “Change orders shall be executed on AIA Document G701-2017. Methods used in determining adjustments to the Contract Sum shall be those listed in Section 7.3.3.”

**SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 5**

- 7.3.5** (Revise the Section 7.3.5 to read as follows) . . . "If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15."
- 7.3.8** (Revise the last sentence of Section 7.3.8 to read as follows) . . . "When both additions and deletions are involved in any one change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase or decrease, if any, with respect to that change."
- 7.3.15** (Add) "In order to facilitate review of quotations for additions or deducts, proposals, except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials, and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also. In no case will a change involving over \$500 be approved without such itemization. The Contractor shall submit same to the Architect within 14 days after receipt of proposal request."

## **ARTICLE 8: TIME**

### **8.2 Progress and Completion**

- 8.2.4** (Add) "If the Architect determines that the Contractor is not cooperating or coordinating its work properly with other Contractors, not supplying sufficient skilled workers, not cleaning up the Project, not furnishing the necessary materials, equipment, or any temporary services or facilities to perform the Work in strict conformance with the Contract Documents or the Contractor is not on schedule, or is not otherwise performing its obligations under the Contract Documents, THE CONTRACTOR WILL IMMEDIATELY, AND IN NOT MORE THAN FORTY-EIGHT HOURS AFTER RECEIPT OF NOTICE OF SUCH DETERMINATION, OR SUCH OTHER TIME AS MAY BE PROVIDED IN THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, (1) COMMENCE SUCH ACTION AS IS NECESSARY TO CORRECT THE DEFICIENCIES NOTED BY THE ARCHITECT, (2) PROCEED TO USE ITS BEST EFFORTS TO CORRECT SUCH DEFICIENCIES TO THE SATISFACTION OF THE ARCHITECT AND THE OWNER, AND (3) IF THE ARCHITECT INSTRUCTS THE CONTRACTOR TO TAKE SPECIFIED CORRECTIVE ACTION, THE CONTRACTOR IMMEDIATELY WILL TAKE SUCH CORRECTIVE ACTION, including, but not limited to, increasing the number of skilled workers, providing temporary services or facilities, and cleaning up the Project. Such action will be taken and continued uninterrupted without waiting to initiate any dispute under the General and Supplementary General Conditions of the Contract for the Project or the resolution of any dispute initiated thereunder."
- 8.2.5** (Add) "The Contractor, (1) will cooperate with the Architect by providing timely information for the scheduling of the times and sequence of the operations required for the Work to be substantially complete as required by the Contract Documents, (2) will continuously monitor the current progress schedule so as to be fully familiar with the timing, phasing, and sequence of the operations of the Work and to the other Work on the Project, and (3) will execute the Work in accordance with the requirements of the current progress schedule."

### **8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time**

- 8.3.1** (Delete the text in this paragraph and replace with the following) "If the Contractor is delayed at any time in its progress of the Work by one of the delays for which an extension of time is permitted and gives the Architect written notice specifically describing the delay within 48 hours of its commencement, the date for the Substantial Completion of the Work will be extended by Change Order for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine. The failure to give such notice will constitute an irrevocable waiver of the Contractor's right to seek an extension for such delay. The only delays for which the Contractor will be entitled to an extension of the time for completion will be delays caused by the, (1) Architect or the Owner, (2) physical damage to the Project over which the Contractor has no control, (3) labor disputes beyond the control of the Contractor, and (4) unusually severe weather conditions not reasonably anticipatable (temperature, rain, or other precipitation within a range of twenty percent of normal amounts for the time of the year covered by the Agreement shall not be considered unusually severe weather conditions). Extensions of time will only be granted pursuant to the procedures for Change Orders set forth in the General Conditions. The Contractor agrees to not make claims for compensation for delays or acceleration in the performance of the Work resulting from acts or failure to act by the Owner, the Architect, or the employees, agents, or representatives of the Owner, or the Architect and agrees that such claim shall be fully compensated by an extension of time to complete the Work, regardless of when

## **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01-6**

granted.”

**8.3.3** (Delete the text in this paragraph and replace with the following) “The Contractor’s sole remedy in the event of a delay shall be an extension of time, and in such event, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any damages.”

**8.4** (Add) “**Completion of Work and Liquidated Damages**”

**8.4.1** (Add) “Damages for Delays for Substantial Completion and for Final Completion shall be in accordance with Article 8 and the following provisions: (The length of time for each is noted in the Bid Form).”

**8.4.2** (Add) “Substantial Completion: If the Contractor shall neglect, fail, or refuse to achieve Substantial Completion as herein specified, or fail to secure an extension of time for delays from the Owner, then the Contractor does hereby agree, as a part consideration for the awarding of the Contract, to pay the Owner the amount specified in the Table of Liquidated Damages, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of Contract as hereinafter shall be in default after the time stipulated in the Contract for completing the work.”

**8.4.3** (Add) “Final Completion: Inasmuch as failure to complete Final Completion within the time fixed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion (45 calendar days maximum) will result in substantial injury to the Owner, and as damages arising from such failure cannot be calculated with any degree of certainty, it is hereby agreed that if the Project is not fully and finally completed according to the requirements issued in the Certificate of Substantial Completion including all listed work (punch list) attached to the Certificate and including all project closeout documents listed in the Project Manual, the Contractor shall pay to the Owner the amount specified in the Table of Liquidated Damages, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of Contract as hereinafter shall be in default after the time stipulated in the Contract and Bid Form for completing Final Completion.”

**8.4.4** (Add) “Final Completion liquidated damages shall be paid in addition to any other liquidated damages, penalties, excess expenses or costs payable by the Contractor to the Owner under the provisions of the General Conditions, and shall not exclude the recovery of damages by the Owner under other provisions of the Contract Documents except for Contractor’s delay. This provision of liquidated damages for Final Completion delay shall in no manner affect the Owner’s right to terminate the Contract as provided in the General Conditions or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner’s exercise of the right to terminate shall not release the Contractor from his obligation to pay said liquidated damages in the amounts set forth in the Table of Liquidated Damages up to the point of termination.”

**8.4.5** (Add) “It is further agreed that the Owner may deduct from the balance retained by the Owner, under the provisions above, all liquidated damages stipulated herein for delay or termination, as the case may be, or such portions thereof as the said retained balance will cover.”

**8.4.6** (Add) “The said amount is fixed and agreed upon by and between the Contractor and the Owner would in such event sustain, and said amount is agreed to be the amount of damages which the Owner would sustain and said amount shall be deducted from any payment due or to become due to the Contractor.”

**8.4.7** (Add) “Table of Liquidated Damages is as follows:

**Table of Liquidated Damages**

<u>Total Contract Amount at time of Substantial Completion</u>	<u>Dollars per Day Substantial Completion Delay</u>	<u>Dollars per day Final Completion Delay</u>
\$ 1.00 to \$ 50,000.00	\$ 200.00	\$ 1,000.00
\$ 50,000.01 to \$ 150,000.00	\$ 350.00	\$ 1,000.00
\$ 150,000.01 to \$ 500,000.00	\$ 500.00	\$ 1,000.00
\$ 500,000.01 to \$ 2,000,000.00	\$ 1,000.00	\$ 1,000.00
\$ 2,000,000.01 to \$ 5,000,000.00	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 1,000.00

**SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 7**

\$ 5,000,000.01 to \$ 10,000,000.00	\$ 2,500.00	\$ 1,000.00
\$ 10,000,000.01 or more	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 1,000.00

**ARTICLE 9: PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

**9.2 Schedule of Values**

(Add the following to the end of this paragraph) "Progress payments and retainage provisions shall be in accordance with the provisions of the Ohio Revised Code pertaining to this matter. The form of the Contractors' Applications for Payment shall be as approved by the Owner."

**9.3 Applications for Payment**

**9.3.1** (Delete the text in this paragraph and replace with the following) "Applications for Payment shall be made at approximately 30 day intervals in accordance with the dates established in the Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor. At least 15 days before each progress payment falls due, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect, in triplicate, an itemized Application for Payment, notarized, and supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or the Architect may require. The form of Application for Payment shall be AIA Document G702-1992 - Application and Certificate for Payment, supported by AIA Document G703-1992 - Continuation Sheet. No other forms of Application for Payment will be acceptable. Continuation Sheet (G703) shall be prepared the same as in the Schedule of Values submitted by the Contractor. Provided the Contractor's payment application has been submitted on a timely basis and is complete, the Owner will pay the Contractor within thirty (30) days after the Contractor's payment application is approved by the Architect. The Contractor will only be entitled to payment to the extent such approval is given. Payment and retainage shall be as described in the Owner-Contractor Agreement. Such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work which have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives but not yet included in Change Orders."

**9.3.1.1** (Delete the text in this paragraph, and replace with the following) "Upon request, the Contractor shall submit with each monthly Application for Payment, 1) an Affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the previous Application, was submitted and the Owner or his property might in any way be responsible, have been paid or otherwise satisfied, and 2) release or waivers of liens arising out of the Contract from each Subcontractor, materialmen, supplier, and laborer of the Contractor in the form of Partial Lien Waiver or such other form as the Architect may require."

**9.3.1.2** (Delete the text in this paragraph, and replace with the following) "Upon request, the Contractor immediately will supply the Architect with such information as may be requested so as to verify the amounts due the Contractor including, but not limited to, original invoices for materials and equipment and documents showing that the Contractor has paid for such materials and equipment, and so as to verify that amounts due laborers, Subcontractors, and materialmen have been paid to them."

**9.3.2** (Add the following to the end of this paragraph) "Payment to Contractor for materials stored off site is discouraged. Where circumstances indicate that the Owner's best interest is served by off-site storage, the Contractor shall make written request to the Architect for approval to include such material costs in his next progress payment. The Contractor's request shall include the following information:

- .1 A list of the fabricated materials consigned to the Project (which shall be clearly identified), giving the place of storage, together with copies of invoices and reasons why materials cannot be delivered to the site.
- .2 Certification that items have been tagged for delivery to the Project and that they will not be used for another purpose.
- .3 A letter from the Bonding Company indicating agreement to the arrangements and that payment to the Contractor shall not relieve either party or their responsibility to complete the Work.
- .4 Evidence of adequate insurance covering the material in storage, which shall name the Owner as additionally insured.
- .5 Evidence that the Architect has visited the Contractor's place of storage and checked all items on the Contractor's certificate. Costs incurred by the Architect to inspect material in off-site storage shall be paid by the Contractor.
- .6 Subsequent Applications for Payment shall itemize the materials and their cost which were

**SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 8**



- approved on previous Applications for Payment and remain in off-site storage.
- .7 When a partial payment is allowed on account of material delivered on the site of the Work or in the vicinity thereof or under possession and control of the Contractor but not yet incorporated therein, such material shall become the property of the Owner, but if such material is stolen, destroyed, or damaged by casualty before being used, the Contractor will be required to replace it at his own expense.
- .a Subsequent Applications for Payment shall itemize the materials and their cost which were approved on previous Applications for Payment and remain in off-site storage.
- .8 Contractors Application for Payment shall reflect an equal percentage amount (within 2 - 3 percent) for labor and materials for Work completed. The Architect may adjust applications where labor exceeds materials or where materials exceed labor quantities in the Work completed columns.
- .9 If the Contractor disputes a determination by Architect with regard to Applications for Payment, and during any related dispute resolution, litigation, or other proceeding, the Contractor nevertheless shall continue to prosecute the Work."

## **9.8 Substantial Completion**

**9.8.1** After the words "Contract Documents", insert the following: ...."and when all required occupancy permits, if any, have been issued".....

**9.8.3** (Add the following at the end of this paragraph) "At the time the Architect commences the Substantial Completion inspection, if the Architect discovers excessive additional items requiring completion or correction, the Architect may decline to continue the inspection, instructing the Contractor as to the general classification of deficiencies which must be corrected before the Architect will resume the Substantial Completion inspection. If the Contractor fails to pursue the Work so as to make it ready for Substantial Completion inspection in a timely fashion, the Architect shall, after notifying the Contractor, conduct inspections and develop a list of items to be completed or corrected. This list of items shall be furnished to the Contractor who shall proceed to correct such items within 14 days. The Architect will conduct additional inspections as required to determine that the Work is ready for Substantial Completion inspection. The Architect will invoice the Owner for (1) The cost of inspections between the termination of the initial Substantial Completion inspection and the commencement of the satisfactory Substantial Completion inspection, (2) The cost of inspection or review after the 14 day period established for the completion of the list by the Contractor. The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for such cost, and the Owner may offset the amounts payable to the Architect for such services from the amounts due the Contractor under the Contract Documents."

**9.8.4** (Add the following at the end of this section) "The Architect shall stipulate the time for the Contractor to complete all items on the list accompanying the Certificate of Substantial Completion, such time shall not be greater than the number of days in Section 01 10 00 and the Bid Form. The Contractor shall complete items on the list within the stipulated period. If the Contractor fails to do so, the Owner in its discretion may perform the Work by itself or others and the cost thereof shall be charged against the Contractor. If more than one inspection by the Architect for the purpose of evaluating corrected work is required by the subject list of items to be completed or corrected, it will be performed at the Contractor's expense. In addition, liquidated damages shall accrue as stipulated in Sections 8.4.1 through 8.4.7."

**9.8.6** (Add) "The Contractor shall guarantee all work performed under terms of this Contract for a minimum period of one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion of the Work."

## **9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment**

**9.10.2** (Add the following at the end of this paragraph) "The Contractor shall furnish such evidence as may be necessary to show that any out-of-state Subcontractor or supplier has fully met the requirements of payment of taxes as established in any law of the State or local subdivision thereof which may be in effect at the time of final payment. The Owner will require the submission of such proof or evidence before final payment will be approved or made. The following must be submitted to the Architect before approval of final payment:

- .1 Affidavit of payment as required under this Paragraph shall be in the form of AIA Document G706-1994 - Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debt and Claims.
- .2 Release of liens as required under this Paragraph shall be in the form of AIA Document G706A-1994 - Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens.
- .3 Consent of Surety as required under this Paragraph shall be in the form of AIA Document G707-1994 - Consent of Surety to Final Payment.

## **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01-9**

- .4 Submit releases and final unconditional waivers of lien from major Subcontractor and supplier.
- .5 Submit certification stating that no materials containing asbestos were incorporated into the Work.
- .6 Submit certification that all punch list items have been completed."

## **ARTICLE 10: PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

### **10.2 Safety of Persons and Property**

- 10.2.1** (Add the following after Paragraph 10.2.1, subparagraph .3):
- .4 Protect excavations, trenches, buildings, and grounds from water damage of any sort. Furnish necessary equipment to provide this protection during the life of the Contract. Construct and maintain necessary temporary drainage to keep excavations free of water.
  - .5 Provide protection for the Work against wind, storms, cold, or heat. At the end of each day's work, cover new work likely to be damaged. If low temperatures make it impossible to continue operations safely in spite of cold weather precautions, cease work and notify the Architect.
  - .6 Provide shoring and bracing required for safety and for the proper execution of the Work and have same removed when the Work is completed.
  - .7 Protect, maintain, and restore benchmarks, monuments, and other reference points affected by this work. If benchmarks, monuments, or other reference points are displaced or destroyed, the benchmarks, monuments, and/or reference points shall be re-established and markers reset under the supervision of a licensed surveyor, who shall furnish certificates of his work."
- 10.2.9** (Add) "The Contractor acknowledges that the safety of the Owner's students, employees, and guests is of the utmost importance. The Contractor will take no action which would jeopardize the safety of the Owner's students, employees, or guests and, without the Owner's written approval, shall take no action which would interfere with the Owner's activities."
- 10.2.10** (Add) "The structure is designed to be self-supporting and stable after the Work is fully completed. Except as otherwise provided in Section 3.3.1 with respect to certain sequencing, it is solely the Contractor's responsibility to determine erection procedures and sequence, and to insure the safety of the building and its component parts during erection. This includes, but is not limited to, the addition of whatever temporary bracing, guys, or tie-downs might be necessary. Such material shall be removed and remain the Contractor's property after completion of the Work."
- 10.2.11** (Add) "Asbestos products of any kind are not allowed in this Project."
- 10.5** (Add) "**Project Safety Program**"
- 10.5.1** (Add) "Each Contractor will develop a written safety and health plan for the Project ("Plan"), applicable to all Contractors and their Subcontractors and suppliers, regardless of tier, and will designate an individual on its staff, who will have responsibility to implement the Plan ("Project Safety Coordinator"). Such implementation will include inspections of the Project Site at least once each week during major construction activity, and notification of employers of hazardous conditions and noncompliance with the Plan. The Plan will conform to all OSHA statutory or regulatory requirements now or hereafter in effect. Each Contractor will provide a copy of the Plan to the Architect for reference."

## **ARTICLE 11: INSURANCE AND BONDS**

### **11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

- 11.1.1** After the word "companies" in Line 4, add the following Phrase. . . "Rated A++, A+, A, or A- by Best's Insurance Reports and ". . .
- 11.1.1** (After the phrase "Contract Documents" in Line 6 add the following:)
- .1 Liability insurance shall include all major divisions of coverage and be on a comprehensive basis including:
    - a. Premises' Operations (including X, C, and U coverages as applicable)
    - b. Products and Completed Operations
    - c. Contractual - including specific provisions for the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18
    - d. Any owned, non-owned, and hired motor vehicles
    - e. Broad Form Property Damage including Completed Operations

## **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 10**

- f. Personal Injury Liability, coverages A, B, and C, with Fellow Employee Exclusion deleted
  - g. Stopgap liability for \$100,000.00 limit.
  - h. Umbrella Excess Liability. Minimum limit of \$2,000,000.00, except that if the initial Contract Sum is \$300,000 or less, the Contractor does not have to provide umbrella excess liability coverage.
  - i. An endorsement (CG2010) including the Owner as an additional insured.
- .2 The Contractor's Commercial Liability Insurance shall be written on an occurrence basis, if reasonable available. However, if the general liability coverages are provided by a Commercial Liability policy on a claims-made basis, the policy date or retroactive date shall predate the contract; the termination date of the policy or applicable extended reporting period shall be no earlier than two years after the termination date of coverages required to be maintained after Final Payment, certified in accordance with Section 9.10.2.
- .3 The Contractor shall furnish to the Owner copies of any endorsements that are subsequently issued amending coverage or limits."
- .4 "The insurance required by Section 11.1.1 shall be written for not less than the following, or as required by law, whichever is greater."
- .1 Workers' Compensation:
    - a. State: Statutory
    - b. Applicable Federal (e.g., Longshoremen's): Statutory
    - c. Employer's Liability: Statutory
  - .2 COMPREHENSIVE GENERAL LIABILITY INSURANCE INCLUDING CONTRACTUAL LIABILITY INSURANCE AGAINST THE LIABILITY ASSUMED HEREIN ABOVE, and including CONTRACTORS' PROTECTIVE LIABILITY INSURANCE if the Contractor sublets to another all or any portion of the Work, with the following minimum limits:
    - a. \$1,000,000 single limit / \$2,000,000.00 aggregate limit.
  - .3 COMPREHENSIVE AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY INSURANCE covering all owned, non-owned, and hired automobiles used in connection with the Work, with the following minimum limits:
    - a. Bodily injury (including death) and property damage with a combined single limit of \$1,000,000.00.
    - b. The Contractor shall maintain the foregoing coverage for not less than the duration of the warranty period. The foregoing policy limits may be provided in conjunction with an umbrella policy. The Contractor shall continue to provide evidence of coverage to the Owner on an annual basis during the aforementioned period."
- .5 "The Contractor shall submit to the Architect a copy of Certificate of Insurance for the Architect's review and the Owner's approval prior to commencement of the Work, and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance. The form of certificate preferred is AIA Document G715, Supplemental Attachment for ACORD Certificate of Insurance. Certificates shall include each and every type of coverage specified. Such certificates shall name the Owner, the Architect, their respective board members, employees, agents, and consultants (and their consultants employees and agents) as additional insureds, and shall contain the following statement: It is hereby agreed that the Owner and the Architect will be notified 60 days prior to the cancellation of, expiration of, material alteration of, and/or the election not to renew any insurance policy evidenced by this certificate."
- .6 "The Contractor shall require all Subcontractors to provide Workers' Compensation, Comprehensive General Liability, and Automobile Liability Insurance with the same minimum limits specified herein."
- .7 "The Contractor shall not commence work under the Contract until he has obtained all insurance required under this heading and such insurance has been approved by the Owner; no such work shall be commenced until the Contractor has filed with the Architect two copies of the necessary certificates evidencing that all required insurance in the requisite amounts, placed with satisfactory carriers, has been obtained. Should any coverage approach expiration during the contract period, it shall be renewed prior to its expiration date and certificates again filed with the Architect. Failure to renew and file new certificates with the Architect shall be just cause to withhold periodic payment request until these requirements are met. All insurance shall be maintained in full force and effect until the Contract has been fully and completely performed."

**11.1.2.1** (Add) "All performance bonds, if required, shall name the Owner as Obligee and shall include the following conditions:

- .1 Each selected Bidder shall provide a bond covering the faithful performance of the Contract. Bond shall be in the amount of 100% of the Principal's bid plus accepted alternates stated in dollars and cents. A percentage is NOT acceptable.

**SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 11**

- .2 For bidders who provided the Bid Guaranty and Contract Bond with their bid, their form of bond shall be the Bid Guaranty and Contract Bond as described in the Supplementary Instructions to Bidders. (Bid Guaranty and Contract Bond Form is attached).
- .3 Bidders who provided a certified check, cashier's check, or irrevocable letter of credit as bid security shall furnish and pay for a Contract Bond in accordance with Ohio Revised Code Section 153.57. The Owner shall be named as Obligee on the Contract Bond.
- .4 Contract Bond shall be supported by credentials showing the power of attorney for the attorney-in-fact of the Surety.
- .5 The Bid Guaranty and Contract Bond and, if used, the Contract Bond, shall be signed by an authorized agent of an acceptable surety bonding company and by the bidder. The bond shall be issued by a surety company authorized by the Ohio Department of Insurance to transact business in the State of Ohio. Provide certification as described in the Instructions to Bidders. It is essential that the bond be issued by a surety company which can adequately demonstrate a record of competent underwriting, efficient management, adequate reserves, and soundness of investments.
- .6 Bond(s) shall be executed on a form specifically meeting all provisions of the Ohio Revised Code Section 153.57 and others as applicable. Said conformance shall be specifically noted clearly on face of the bond.
- .7 Furnish, along with the Bond, a Certificate of Compliance from the Ohio Department of Insurance certifying that the surety is authorized to transact business in the State of Ohio."

## **11.2 Owner's Insurance**

- 11.2.1.1** (Add) "Unless specifically stated otherwise in the Agreement or other Contract Documents, the Owner shall maintain property insurance on the Project. The Owner also shall maintain all-risk "Builder's Risk" insurance, in an amount of 100 percent of the insurable value of the entire structure, on which the Work of this Contract is to be done, against "loss or damage." Such insurance shall be on the "estimated completed value form" including items of labor and materials connected therewith, including materials in place or stored on the site of the structure insured, which are to be used as part of the permanent construction including surplus materials, shanties, protective fences, or temporary structure, miscellaneous materials and supplies, incident to the work and such scaffolding, staging, towers, forms, and equipment as are now owned or rented by the Contractor, the cost of which is included in the cost of the Work. The policy shall insure the Owners and shall also include the interest of the Contractors during course of construction until completed and accepted by the Owners. The Owner will make the property insurance policy available for inspection and copying by the Contractor. This insurance is not intended to cover and will not cover machinery, tools, and equipment which will not be a permanent part of the Project. The Contractor shall bear the entire risk of loss with respect to such machinery, tools, and equipment. Any loss insured under Paragraph 11.2 is to be adjusted with the Owner and made payable to the Owner as trustee for the insureds, as their interests may appear. The Owner, as trustee, will have the power to adjust and settle any loss with its insurers."
- 11.2.1.2** (Add:) "The above policies in Section 11.2 shall carry a deductible up to a maximum of \$5,000 and the deductible shall be paid for by the Contractor."
- 11.2.1.3** (Add) "The above policies in Section 11.2 shall name the following as additionally insured:  
.1 Architect, its employees, its consultants, and their employees."

## **ARTICLE 12: UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

### **12.2.1 Before Or After Substantial Completion**

(Rename Section heading and delete the text in this Section and replace with the following) "Within 48 hours after written notice from the Architect or the Owner (except such period shall be seven days when notice is given after Final Payment) that the Work does not conform to the Contract Documents, or immediately upon oral notice, if the non-conformance constitutes a threat to the safety of persons or property, the Contractor, without waiting for the resolution of disputes that may exist, 1) shall commence to correct such non-conformance, 2) shall thereafter use its best efforts to correct such non-conformance to the satisfaction of the Architect and the Owner, and 3) except where an extension of time is granted in writing by the Owner, shall complete necessary corrections so that the non-conformance is eliminated to the satisfaction of the Architect, and the Owner within seven days of such notice. The Contractor shall bear all costs of correcting the non-conformance, including additional testing and inspections and additional service fees of the Architect. The notice provided for in this Section 12.2.1 may be given at any time. It is

## **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 12**

the intent that the obligations under this Section 12.2.1 shall continue to apply after Final Completion and Final Payment."

**12.2.2 After Substantial Completion** (Delete this heading and Section 12.2.2.1 in its entirety).

**12.2.2.2** Renumber this section to 12.2.1.2.

**12.2.2.3** Renumber this section to 12.2.1.3

### **ARTICLE 13: MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

#### **13.1 Governing Law**

**13.1.2** (Add) "Jurisdiction. Any suit, which may be brought to enforce any provision of this Agreement or any remedy with respect hereto, shall be brought in the Common Pleas Court, Montgomery County, Ohio, and each party hereby expressly consents to the jurisdiction of such court."

#### **13.4 Tests and Inspections**

**13.4.4** (Delete the text in this section and replace with the following) "Certificates of inspection, testing, or approval, as required by Sections 13.4.1 or 13.4.2, shall be secured by the Contractor using an independent agency, subject to the approval of the Architect and Owner. The independent agency shall complete field work, testing, and prepare the test reports, logs, and certificates promptly; and deliver the required number of copies directly to the Architect."

**13.5 Interest** (Delete this Paragraph in its entirety. References to Paragraph 13.5 elsewhere in the Contract Documents shall also be deleted).

#### **13.6 (Add) "Construction"**

**13.6.1** (Add) "The parties acknowledge that each party has reviewed this Agreement and the other Contract Documents and voluntarily entered into this Agreement."

#### **13.7 (Add) "Approvals"**

**13.7.1** (Add) "Except as may be expressly provided herein, the approvals and determinations of the Owner or Architect will be subject to the sole discretion of the respective person and be valid and binding on the Contractor, provided only that they be made in good faith, i.e., honestly. If the Contractor challenges any such approval or determination, the Contractor will have the burden of proving that it was not made in good faith by a preponderance of the evidence."

#### **13.8 (Add) "Partial Invalidity"**

**13.8.1** (Add) "If any term or provision of this Agreement is found to be illegal, unenforceable or in violation of any laws, statutes, ordinances, or regulations of any public authority having jurisdiction, then, notwithstanding such term or provision, this Agreement will remain in full force and effect and such term will be deemed stricken; provided this Agreement will be interpreted, when possible, so as to reflect the intentions of the parties as indicated by any such stricken term or provision."

#### **13.9 (Add) "Delinquent Personal Property Tax Affidavit"**

**13.9.1** (Add) "The Contractor's affidavit given under Section 5719.024, Ohio Revised Code, is incorporated herein."

#### **13.10 (Add) "Entire Agreement"**

**13.10.1** (Add) "This Agreement and the other Contract Documents constitute the entire agreement among the parties with respect to their subject matter and supersede all prior and contemporaneous, oral or written, agreements, negotiations, communications, representations, and understandings with respect to such subject matter, and no person is justified in relying on such agreements, negotiations, communications, representations, or understandings."

### **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 13**

**13.11 (Add) "School District Resolution"**

**13.11.1 (Add) "No alcohol, drugs, firearms or smoking is permitted on property owned by the School District. Compliance with all Owner policies covering these items is mandatory."**

**ARTICLE 14: TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

(Delete the entire contents of this Article (14.1 through 14.4) and replace with the following:

**14.1 (Add) "Default of the Contractor"**

**14.1.1 (Add) "Events of Default: Each of the following constitutes an event of default of the Contractor:**

- .1 The failure of the Contractor, (1) to perform its obligation under the Contract Documents or under the Contract Documents pertaining to other agreement which the Contractor may have with the Owner and to proceed to commence to correct such failure within 48 hours after written notice thereof from the Owner, or the Architect or such lesser time as is provided in the Contract Documents, or (2) thereafter to use its best efforts to correct such failure to the satisfaction of the Owner, or, (3) except where an extension of time is granted in writing by the Owner, to correct such failure within 30 days after written notice thereof.
- .2 The failure of the Contractor to pay its obligations as they become due, or the insolvency of the Contractor."

**14.1.2 (Add) "Owner's Remedies: Upon the occurrence of an event of default the Owner will have the following remedies, which will be cumulative:**

- .1 To order the Contractor to stop the Work or part of it, in which case the Contractor will do so immediately;
- .2 To perform through others all or part of the Work remaining to be done and to deduct the cost thereof from the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .3 To terminate this Agreement and take possession, for the purpose of completing the Work or part of it, materials, equipment, scaffolds, tools, appliances, and other items belonging to or possessed by the Contractor, of which the Contractor hereby transfers and assigns to the Owner for such purpose, and to employ a person or persons to complete the Work, including the Contractor's employees, and the Contractor will not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is completed;
- .4 Other remedies which the Owner may have at law or in equity or otherwise under the Contract Documents."

**14.1.3 (Add) "Payments Due Contractor: If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds the cost of finishing the Work, including compensation of the Architect's additional services and costs, expenses, or damages incurred by the Owner as a result of the event of default, including attorney's fees and the administrative expense of the Owner's staff, such excess will be paid by the Contractor. If such costs exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor will pay the difference to the Owner. The amounts to be paid by the Owner or the Contractor will be certified by the Architect, and such certification will be the final determination of the amount owed, except for sums coming due thereafter. The obligations under this paragraph will survive the termination of this Agreement."**

**14.2 (Add) "Default of the Owner"**

**14.2.1 (Add) "Events of Default: Except for the failure to pay the Contractor which will be subject to the terms of the General Conditions and Supplementary General Conditions of the Contract, the following constitutes the exclusive event of default of the Owner:**

- .1 The failure of the Owner to perform its obligations under the Contract Documents and to correct such failure within 90 days after written notice thereof from the Contractor."

**14.2.2 (Add) "Contractor's Remedies: Upon the occurrence of an event of default by the Owner, unless the Owner admits in writing that it is in default, except as expressly provided in the General Conditions or the Supplementary General Conditions of the Contract, the Contractor's sole and exclusive remedy will be to submit the dispute to the Architect for its decision under Article 4.2 of the General and Supplementary General Conditions of the Contract for the Project, and then provided the Contractor is entitled to do so under the terms of the Contract Documents to litigate the dispute. If the Owner admits in writing that it is in default, then the Contractor will be entitled to remedies which it would otherwise have at law or in equity."**

**SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 14**

- 14.3 (Add) "Termination for the Convenience of the Owner"**
- 14.3.1 (Add)** "The Owner may, in its discretion and without cause, by written notice to the Contractor terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience."
- 14.3.2 (Add)** "Upon receipt of a written notice from the Owner terminating the Contract without cause and for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor will (1) immediately cease performing the Work, unless otherwise directed by the Owner, in which case the Contractor will take the action directed by the Owner, (2) take reasonable and necessary action to protect and preserve the Work, and (3) unless otherwise directed by the Owner, terminate agreements with Subcontractors and suppliers."
- 14.3.3 (Add)** "If the Contract is terminated without cause and for the Owner's convenience and there exists no event of the Contractor's default, as defined in Section 14.1 of these Supplementary General Conditions, the Owner will pay the Contractor, (1) for Work performed under the Contract up to the date the notice of termination is received by the Contractor at the rates for Work performed under the Contract, including overhead and profit up to the date of termination, (2) for Work performed at the direction of the Owner on and after the date on which the notice of termination is received by the Contractor, as determined by the procedures applicable to Change Orders under Section 7.3.3, (3) for Work necessary to protect and preserve the Work, as determined by the procedures applicable to Change Orders under Section 7.3.3, (4) the reasonable and necessary costs of terminating the Contractor's agreements with Subcontractors and suppliers, and other costs incurred by the Contractor directly as a result of the termination of the Contract."
- 14.3.4 (Add)** "If the Contract is terminated without cause and for the Owner's convenience and there exists an event of the Contractor's default, as defined in Section 14.2 of these Supplementary General Conditions, the Contractor will be entitled to receive only such sums as it would be entitled to receive following the occurrence of an event of default under Section 14.2."
- 14.3.5 (Add)** "The termination of the Contract shall be with or without prejudice to rights or remedies which exist at the time of termination."

#### **ARTICLE 15: CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

##### **15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

- 15.1.6.1 (Delete the text in this paragraph and replace with the following)** "If claims for additional time are submitted by the Contractor and are substantiated as per Contract requirements, a Change Order extending Contract Time only will be issued by the Architect. However, under no circumstances will the Contractor be entitled to any damages or additional compensation related to or for Contract Time extensions or delays."
- 15.1.6.2 (Delete the text in this paragraph and replace with the following)** "Claims for additional time based on adverse weather conditions will be considered only if the Contractor provides evidence that monthly precipitation and temperature averages vary significantly from those of the norm. The norm shall be defined as those monthly precipitation and temperature averages indicated by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration averaged over the past 30 years, at the location closest to the site. Weather conditions will be considered for all months affecting the critical path, and determined once the critical path is no longer affected by weather conditions. Both, months with conditions better than the norm, and those with adverse conditions will be considered in summation of the delay. Notifications of delay to be in accord with related articles of General Conditions."
- 15.2.6 (Delete this section in its entirety and replace with the following)** "Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, make a demand in writing for mediation. If such a demand is not made by either party with 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision."
- 15.2.6.1 Delete this section in its entirety.**
- 15.4 Arbitration**  
Delete Section 15.4 in its entirety. Arbitration is not applicable to this Project.

#### **(Add) "ARTICLE 16: EQUAL OPPORTUNITY"**

#### **SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**00 73 01- 15**

**16.1 (Add) "Policies of Employment"**

**16.1.1** (Add) "The Contractor shall not, and it will ensure that its Subcontractors, regardless of tier, shall not discriminate against employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, sex, or national origin. The Contractor shall take affirmative action to insure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, religion, color, sex, or national origin. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the policies of non-discrimination."

**16.1.2** (Add) "The Contractor shall not, and it will ensure that its Subcontractors, regardless of tier, shall, in solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by them or on their behalf, state that qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, religion, color, sex, or national origin."

**END OF SECTION 00 73 01**



**DOCUMENT 00 73 03 - DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE CERTIFICATION**

(1) Contractor is required to be enrolled and in good standing in the Ohio Bureau of Workers' Compensation (BWC) Drug-Free Workplace Program (DFWP) or an equivalent BWC approved DFWP throughout the entire Project, in accordance with Ohio Revised Code Section 153.03-153.031, including the placement of its employees in a pool with a random drug testing rate of at least 5%.

(2) Each contractor shall require all subcontractors with whom the contractor is in contract for the public improvement to be enrolled in and be in good standing in the Bureau of Workers' Compensation's Drug-Free Workplace Program or a comparable program approved by the Bureau that meets the requirements specified in Section 153.03 of the Ohio Revised Code, including the placement of its employees in a pool with a random drug testing rate of at least 5%, prior to a subcontractor providing labor at the project site of the public improvement.

(3) Each subcontractor shall require all lower-tier subcontractors with whom the subcontractor is in contract for the public improvement to be enrolled in and be in good standing in the Bureau of Workers' Compensation's Drug-Free Workplace Program or a comparable program approved by the Bureau that meets the requirements specified in Section 153.03 of the Ohio Revised Code, including the placement of its employees in a pool with a random drug testing rate of at least 5%, prior to a lower-tier subcontractor providing labor at the project site of the public improvement.

(4) Failure of a contractor to require a subcontractor to be enrolled in and be in good standing in the Bureau of Workers' Compensation's Drug-Free Workplace Program or a comparable program approved by the Bureau that meets the requirements specified in Section 153.03 of the Ohio Revised Code, including the placement of its employees in a pool with a random drug testing rate of at least 5%, prior to the time that the subcontractor provides labor at the project site, will result in the contractor being found in breach of the contract and that breach shall be used in the responsibility analysis of that contractor or the subcontractor who was not enrolled in a program for future contracts with the state for five years after the date of the breach."

(5) Failure of a subcontractor to require a lower-tier subcontractor to be enrolled in and be in good standing in the Bureau of Workers' Compensation's Drug-Free Workplace Program or a comparable program approved by the Bureau that meets the requirements specified in Section 153.03 of the Ohio Revised Code, including the placement of its employees in a pool with a random drug testing rate of at least 5%, prior to the time that the lower-tier subcontractor provides labor at the project site will result in the subcontractor being found in breach of the contract and that breach shall be used in the responsibility analysis of that subcontractor or the lower-tier subcontractor who was not enrolled in a program for future contracts with the state for five years after the date of the breach.

Complete and submit certification form on next page:

---

**DRUG FREE WORKPLACE PROGRAM CERTIFICATION**

---

Project Name and Location: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

The above referenced Contractor hereby certifies that it is enrolled and in good standing in the Ohio Bureau of Workers' Compensation (BWC) Drug-Free Workplace Program (DFWP) or an equivalent BWC approved DFWP in accordance with the requirements of Ohio Revised Code Section 153.03-153.031, including the placement of its employees in a pool with a random drug testing rate of at least 5%.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name/Title (Print or Type)

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 73 03**

**DOCUMENT 00 73 04 - WAIVER OF ESCROW AGREEMENT**

The undersigned Contractor has entered into a contract with the **Board of Education of the Jefferson Township Local School District** (the "School District") for certain improvements as described in the Owner-Contractor Agreement. In connection therewith, the Contractor and the School District acknowledge that the School District is obligated by Sections 153.12, 153.13 and 153.14 of the Ohio Revised Code to retain (withhold) a certain percentage of funds that would otherwise be paid to the Contractor for labor performed and materials and equipment supplied for the Project, and further deposit any retained funds into a separate escrow account. With full understanding of the above obligations, the Contractor hereby waives any and all rights that it may have relating to the establishment of a separate escrow account for the deposit of the retained funds. The Contractor also waives any and all claims it may have to interest on that separate escrow account under Section 153.63 of the Revised Code or other provisions of law. In consideration of the waivers herein contained, the School District shall maintain a separate accounting for the Project and retained funds, and shall pay such funds to the Contractor when they become due and payable under the terms of the Owner-Contractor Agreement.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name of Contractor

\_\_\_\_\_  
Bid Package

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature and Title of Authorized Officer

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contract Date

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

**BOARD OF EDUCATION JEFFERSON TOWNSHIP LOCAL SCHOOL DISTRICT**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Treasurer, Board of Education

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 73 04**

**DOCUMENT 00 73 42 - CONTRACT PROVISIONS FOR NON-FEDERAL ENTITY CONTRACTS UNDER FEDERAL AWARDS**

The Education Department of General Administrative Regulations (EDGAR) are the federal regulations that govern all federal grants awarded by the U.S. Department of Education on or after December 26, 2014 to local districts (LEAs) and charters including State-administered programs. All recipients of federal grant dollars must comply with these rules. All provisions provided below are hereby incorporated by reference into the Owner-Contractor Agreement ("Agreement") and by entering into this Agreement, Contractor certifies the following:

**Appendix II to Part 200 Contract Provisions for Non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards**

(A) Contracts for more than the simplified acquisition threshold, currently set at \$250,000, which is the inflation adjusted amount determined by the Civilian Agency Acquisition Council and the Defense Acquisition Regulations Council (Councils) as authorized by 41 U.S.C. 1908, must address administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as appropriate.

*Pursuant to Rule (A) above, the Owner reserves all rights and privileges under the applicable laws and regulations with respect to this procurement process in the event of breach of contract by either party.*

(B) All contracts in excess of \$10,000 must address termination for cause and for convenience by the non-Federal entity including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement.

*Pursuant to Rule (B) above, Owner reserves the right to terminate any agreement resulting from this procurement process pursuant to Article 14 of Section 00 73 01 - Supplementary General Conditions.*

(C) Equal Employment Opportunity. Except as otherwise provided under 41 CFR Part 60, all contracts that meet the definition of "federally assisted construction contract" in 41 CFR Part 60-1.3 must include the equal opportunity clause provided under 41 CFR 60-1.4(b), in accordance with Executive Order 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity" (30 FR 12319, 12935, 3 CFR Part, 1964-1965 Comp., p. 339), as amended by Executive Order 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," and implementing regulations at 41 CFR part 60, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor."

*Pursuant to Rule (C) above, this provision is hereby incorporated by reference into the Agreement.*

(D) Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148). When required by Federal program legislation, all prime construction contracts in excess of \$2,000 awarded by non-Federal entities must include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141-3144, and 3146-3148) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5, "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Covering Federally Financed and Assisted Construction"). In accordance with the statute, contractors must be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the prevailing wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors must be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The non-Federal entity must place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation. The decision to award a contract or subcontract must be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency. The contracts must also include a provision for compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (40 U.S.C. 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States"). The Act provides that each contractor or sub-recipient must be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he or she is otherwise entitled. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

*Pursuant to Rule (D) above, Contractor will follow all applicable Davis-Bacon Act provisions.*

(E) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701-3708). Where applicable, all contracts awarded by the non-Federal entity in excess of \$100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. The requirements of 40 U.S.C. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission

of intelligence.

*Pursuant to Rule (E) above, Contractor certifies that Contractor will follow all applicable provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act during the term of the Agreement.*

(F) Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement. If the Federal award meets the definition of "funding agreement" under 37 CFR § 401.2 (a) and the recipient or sub-recipient wishes to enter into a contract with a small business firm or nonprofit organization regarding the substitution of parties, assignment or performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under that "funding agreement," the recipient or sub-recipient must comply with the requirements of 37 CFR Part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.

*Pursuant to Rule (F) above, Contractor certifies that during the term of the Agreement, Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable requirements referenced in Rule (F) above.*

(G) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387), as amended - Contracts and sub-grants of amounts in excess of \$150,000 must contain a provision that requires the non-Federal award to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

*Pursuant to Rule (G) above, Contractor certifies that during the term of the Agreement, Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable requirements as referenced in Rule (G) above.*

(H) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689) - A contract award (see 2 CFR 180.220) must not be made to parties listed on the government wide exclusions in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 CFR 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR part 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR part 1989 Comp., p. 235), "Debarment and Suspension." SAM Exclusions contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, as well as parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Order 12549.

*Pursuant to Rule (H) above, Contractor certifies that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation by any federal department or agency.*

(I) Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352) - Contractors that apply or bid for an award exceeding \$100,000 must file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the non-Federal award.

*Pursuant to Rule (I) above, as applicable, Contractor agrees to file all certifications and disclosures required by, and otherwise comply with, the Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 USC 1352).*

### **Record Retention Requirements**

*Contractor certifies that during the term of the Agreement, Contractor will comply with the record retention requirements detailed in 2 CFR § 200.333. The Contractor further certifies that all records will be retained as required by 2 CFR § 200.333 for a period of three years after grantees or sub-grantees submit final expenditure reports or quarterly or annual financial reports, as applicable, and all other pending matters are closed.*

### **Energy Policy and Conservation Act Compliance**

*To the extent applicable, Contractor certifies that during the term of the Agreement, Contractor will comply with the mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.*

### **Buy American Provisions Compliance**

*To the extent Contractor has agreed to comply with applicable provisions of the Buy American Act with a particular public entity, Contractor certifies that Contractor is in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Buy American Act. Purchases made in accordance with the Buy American Act shall follow the applicable procurement rules calling for free and open competition.*

**Recovered Materials (2 C.F.R. § 200.322)**

*Contractor agrees to the extent practical it complies with section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.*

**Access to Records (2 C.F.R. § 200.336)**

*Contractor agrees that duly authorized representatives of the Agency shall have access to any books, documents, papers and records of Contractor that are directly pertinent to Contractor's discharge of its obligations under the Contract for the purpose of making audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcriptions. The right also includes timely and reasonable access to Contractor's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion relating to such documents.*

**Prohibition on Certain Telecommunications and Video Surveillance Services or Equipment**

*Contractor, nor its subcontractors shall provide or install equipment, services, or systems that uses "covered telecommunications equipment or services" as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology as part of any system. As described in Public Law 115-232, section 889, "covered telecommunications equipment" is telecommunications equipment produced by Huawei Technologies Company or ZTE Corporation (or any subsidiary or affiliate of such entities); video surveillance and telecommunications equipment produced by Hytera Communications Corporation, Hangzhou Hikvision Digital Technology Company, or Dahua Technology Company (or any subsidiary or affiliate of such entities); telecommunications or video surveillance services provided by such entities or using such equipment; or telecommunications or video surveillance equipment or services produced or provided by an entity that the Secretary of Defense, in consultation with the Director of the National Intelligence or the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, reasonably believes to be an entity owned or controlled by, or otherwise connected to, the government of a covered foreign country.*

**Complying with Federal, State, and Local Laws**

*Contractor agrees to comply with federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances, as applicable. It is further acknowledged that Contractor certifies compliance with provisions, laws, acts, regulations, etc. as noted above.*

*This certification shall be effective through the term of the Contractor's Agreement.*

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 73 42**

## DOCUMENT 00 73 43 – DAVIS-BACON CONTRACT PROVISIONS

In accordance with 29 CFR Part 5, the following Definitions and Contract Provisions are applicable to the Agreement and are hereby incorporated into the Contract Documents. In the event of a conflict between these Definitions and Contract Provisions and any other provision of the Agreement, the stricter requirement applies.

### Definitions

The definitions set forth in 29 C.F.R. § 5.2 apply to the Contract Provisions contained herein. Such definitions are to be read in addition to, and not in exclusion of, any definitions set forth in the Agreement, General Conditions, or other Contract Documents.

### Contract Provisions

(a) The following clauses are hereby incorporated into the Agreement:

(1) Minimum wages.

- (i) All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 C.F.R. Part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics. Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph (a)(1)(iv) of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in §5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, that the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under paragraph (a)(1)(ii) of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.
- (ii) (A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:
  - (1) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and
  - (2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and
  - (3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.
- (B) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (C) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of

the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

- (D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs (a)(1)(ii) (B) or (C) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.
- (iii) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.
- (iv) If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.
- (2) Withholding. The Federal Agency or Owner shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), all or part of the wages required by the contract, the Federal Agency may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.
- (3) Payrolls and basic records.
- (i) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937, or under the Housing Act of 1949, in the construction or development of the project). Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 C.F.R. § 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.
- (ii) (A) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the Federal Agency if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the contractor will submit the payrolls to the applicant, sponsor, or owner, as the case may be, for transmission to the Federal Agency. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 C.F.R. § 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (e.g., the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site at <http://www.dot.gov/esa/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm> or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the Federal Agency if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the contractor will submit them to the applicant, sponsor, or



owner, as the case may be, for transmission to the Federal Agency, the contractor, or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the sponsoring government agency (or the applicant, sponsor, or owner).

- (B) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:
- (1) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under §5.5 (a)(3)(ii) of Regulations, 29 C.F.R. Part 5, the appropriate information is being maintained under §5.5 (a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 C.F.R. Part 5, and that such information is correct and complete;
  - (2) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 C.F.R. Part 3;
  - (3) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.
- (C) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph (a)(3)(ii)(B) of this section.
- (D) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.
- (iii) The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph (a)(3)(i) of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the Federal Agency or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the Federal Agency may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 C.F.R. § 5.12.
- (4) Apprentices and trainees.
- (i) Apprentices. Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid

- in accordance with that determination. In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- (ii) Trainees. Except as provided in 29 C.F.R. § 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
  - (iii) Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 C.F.R. Part 30.
- (5) Compliance with Copeland Act requirements. The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 C.F.R. Part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.
  - (6) Subcontracts. The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses contained in 29 C.F.R. § 5.5(a)(1) through (10) and such other clauses as the Federal Agency may by appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 C.F.R. § 5.5.
  - (7) Contract termination: debarment. A breach of the contract clauses in 29 C.F.R. § 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 C.F.R. § 5.12.
  - (8) Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements. All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 C.F.R. Parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
  - (9) Disputes concerning labor standards. Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 C.F.R. Parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
  - (10) Certification of eligibility.
    - (i) By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 C.F.R. § 5.12(a)(1).
    - (ii) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 C.F.R. § 5.12(a)(1).
    - (iii) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.
  - (b) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. If the Contract Sum is in an amount in excess of \$100,000, and the Work is subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, the following provisions shall apply. Additionally, the Construction Manager shall include these provisions in full in all Subcontracts in excess of \$100,000 which are subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. The provisions in these clauses are in addition to the clauses provided above in subsection (a). As used in this paragraph, the terms laborers and mechanics include watchmen and guards.

- (1) Overtime requirements. No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.
  - (2) Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages. In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, in the sum of \$27 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.
  - (3) Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages. The Federal Agency or the Owner shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.
  - (4) Subcontracts. The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraph (b)(1) through (4) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (b)(1) through (4) of this section.
- (c) In addition to the clauses contained in paragraph (b), in any contract subject only to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act and not to any of the other statutes cited in 29 C.F.R. § 5.1, the Construction Manager and its Subcontractors shall maintain payrolls and basic payroll records during the course of the work and shall preserve them for a period of three years from the completion of the contract for all laborers and mechanics, including guards and watchmen, working on the contract. Such records shall contain the name and address of each such employee, social security number, correct classifications, hourly rates of wages paid, daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made, and actual wages paid. Further, the records to be maintained under this paragraph shall be made available by the Construction Manager and its Subcontractors for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the Federal Agency and the Department of Labor, and the contractor or subcontractor will permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job.
  - (d) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251- 1387), as amended—Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
  - (e) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689)—Contractor warrants that it is not listed on the government wide exclusions in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 CFR 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR part 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR part 1989 Comp., p. 235), "Debarment and Suspension." SAM Exclusions contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, as well as parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Order 12549.
  - (f) Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)—Contractor and any subcontractors certify to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the non-Federal award.

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 73 43**

"General Decision Number: OH20240093 03/08/2024

Superseded General Decision Number: OH20230093

State: Ohio

Construction Type: Building

County: Montgomery County in Ohio.

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (does not include single family homes or apartments up to and including 4 stories).

Note: Contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act are generally required to pay at least the applicable minimum wage rate required under Executive Order 14026 or Executive Order 13658. Please note that these Executive Orders apply to covered contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but do not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(1).

If the contract is entered into on or after January 30, 2022, or the contract is renewed or extended (e.g., an option is exercised) on or after January 30, 2022:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>. Executive Order 14026 generally applies to the contract.</li><li>. The contractor must pay all covered workers at least \$17.20 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract in 2024.</li></ul>
If the contract was awarded on or between January 1, 2015 and January 29, 2022, and the contract is not renewed or extended on or after January 30, 2022:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>. Executive Order 13658 generally applies to the contract.</li><li>. The contractor must pay all covered workers at least \$12.90 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on that contract in 2024.</li></ul>

The applicable Executive Order minimum wage rate will be

adjusted annually. If this contract is covered by one of the Executive Orders and a classification considered necessary for performance of work on the contract does not appear on this wage determination, the contractor must still submit a conformance request.

Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the Executive Orders is available at <http://www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts>.

Modification Number	Publication Date
0	01/05/2024
1	03/08/2024

ASBE0008-010 03/01/2023

	Rates	Fringes
ASBESTOS WORKER/HEAT & FROST INSULATOR.....	\$ 33.08	20.69

-----  
 BROH0022-005 06/01/2022

	Rates	Fringes
BRICKLAYER.....	\$ 30.15	16.91

-----  
 BROH0022-011 07/01/2022

	Rates	Fringes
TILE FINISHER.....	\$ 26.36	9.97

-----  
 \* ELEC0082-004 12/04/2023

	Rates	Fringes
ELECTRICIAN.....	\$ 36.00	21.99

-----  
 \* ELEV0011-002 01/01/2024

	Rates	Fringes
ELEVATOR MECHANIC.....	\$ 55.01	37.885+a+b

PAID HOLIDAYS:

- a. New Year's Day, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Vetern's Day, Thanksgiving Day, the Friday after

Thanksgiving, and Christmas Day.

b. Employer contributes 8% of regular hourly rate to vacation pay credit for employee who has worked in business more than 5 years; 6% for less than 5 years' service.

-----  
ENGI0018-034 05/01/2018

	Rates	Fringes
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATOR		
Crane.....	\$ 35.89	15.09

-----  
ENGI0066-045 06/01/2017

	Rates	Fringes
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATOR		
Forklift.....	\$ 28.87	19.66
Grader/Blade.....	\$ 32.42	19.66
Mechanic.....	\$ 32.92	19.66

-----  
IRON0044-020 06/01/2023

	Rates	Fringes
IRONWORKER, ORNAMENTAL.....	\$ 32.37	23.30

-----  
IRON0290-006 06/01/2023

	Rates	Fringes
IRONWORKER (Reinforcing and Structural).....	\$ 32.69	24.05

-----  
LAB01410-005 04/05/2023

	Rates	Fringes
LABORER		
Asbestos Abatement (Removal from Ceilings, Floors, and Walls).....	\$ 30.35	12.65
Mason Tender - Brick.....	\$ 30.95	12.65

-----  
\* PAIN0249-005 11/01/2023

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

PAINTER (Brush and Roller).....\$ 25.60 13.52

-----  
\* PAIN0387-002 11/01/2023

Rates Fringes

GLAZIER.....\$ 31.95 18.20

-----  
\* PLUM0050-009 07/03/2023

Rates Fringes

PIPEFITTER (Excludes HVAC  
Pipe Installation).....\$ 47.15 30.21

-----  
\* PLUM0162-008 06/01/2023

Rates Fringes

PLUMBER (HVAC Pipe  
Installation Only).....\$ 40.00 26.87

-----  
ROOF0042-001 08/01/2023

Rates Fringes

ROOFER.....\$ 32.00 19.00

-----  
\* SFOH0669-009 01/01/2024

Rates Fringes

SPRINKLER FITTER (Fire  
Sprinklers).....\$ 43.08 27.49

-----  
\* UAVG-OH-0021 01/01/2019

Rates Fringes

OPERATOR: Oiler.....\$ 27.56 16.37

-----  
\* UAVG-OH-0025 01/01/2018

Rates Fringes

SHEET METAL WORKER, Excludes  
HVAC Duct and Unit  
Installation.....\$ 28.10 23.41

-----  
\* UAVG-OH-0031 01/01/2018

	Rates	Fringes
BRICKLAYER: TILE SETTER.....	\$ 26.09	12.30

-----  
 SUOH2012-095 08/29/2014

	Rates	Fringes
CARPENTER.....	\$ 21.59	5.70
CEMENT MASON/CONCRETE FINISHER...	\$ 26.07	12.34
DRYWALL HANGER AND METAL STUD INSTALLER.....	\$ 21.02	4.21
FORM WORKER.....	\$ 22.41	9.01
LABORER: Common or General.....	\$ 20.87	5.92
LABORER: Mason Tender - Cement/Concrete.....	\$ 22.95	8.60
LABORER: Pipelayer.....	\$ 23.98	8.58
OPERATOR: Backhoe/Excavator/Trackhoe.....	\$ 33.36	6.13
OPERATOR: Bobcat/Skid Steer/Skid Loader.....	\$ 30.26	12.58
OPERATOR: Bulldozer.....	\$ 26.01	4.95
OPERATOR: Loader.....	\$ 29.99	12.80
OPERATOR: Paver (Asphalt, Aggregate, and Concrete).....	\$ 30.28	13.29
OPERATOR: Roller.....	\$ 28.25	12.61
PAINTER: Spray.....	\$ 22.78	12.40
PLUMBER, Excludes HVAC Pipe Installation.....	\$ 26.21	12.51
SHEET METAL WORKER (HVAC Duct and HVAC Unit Installation Only).....	\$ 24.28	10.50
TRUCK DRIVER: Dump (All Types)...	\$ 22.08	11.51



-----  
WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

=====  
Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at <https://www.dol.gov/agencies/whd/government-contracts>.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29CFR 5.5 (a) (1) (iii)).

-----  
The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of ""identifiers"" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

#### Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than ""SU"" or ""UAVG"" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example:

PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

#### Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the ""SU"" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

#### Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

-----

WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- \* an existing published wage determination
- \* a survey underlying a wage determination
- \* a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- \* a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour National Office because National Office has responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations  
Wage and Hour Division  
U.S. Department of Labor  
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, DC 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator  
U.S. Department of Labor  
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, DC 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative

Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board  
U.S. Department of Labor  
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, DC 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

=====

END OF GENERAL DECISION"

**SECTION 01 10 00 - SUMMARY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Completion times and milestone dates.
4. Contractor's use of site and premises.
5. Coordination with occupants.
6. Work restrictions.
7. Specification and Drawing conventions.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

**1.2 PROJECT INFORMATION**

**A. Project Identification: Jefferson Twp. LSD-HS Ag Ed Facility.**

1. Project Location: Jefferson Jr/Sr High School, 2701 South Union Road, Dayton, OH 45417.

**B. Owner: Jefferson Township Local School District.**

1. Owner Location: 2625 South Union Road, Dayton, OH 45417.
2. Telephone: (937) 835-5682.
3. Website: <https://www.jeffersontwp.k12.oh.us/>

**C. Architect: SHP.**

1. Architect's Location: 312 Plum Street, Suite 700, Cincinnati, Ohio 45202.
2. Architect's Construction Representative: Tim Riffle
3. Telephone: (614) 384-5015.
4. Website: [www.shp.com](http://www.shp.com)

**1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

**A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:**

1. Work includes the renovation of classroom space in the existing High School into an Agriculture Education shop. The work also includes the construction of a new Greenhouse and Livestock Barn with supporting site improvements and other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.

**B. Type of Contract.**

1. The project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

**1.4 COMPLETION TIMES AND MILESTONE DATES**

- A. The following dates have been established for the Project. Contractors shall meet all dates, except for adjustments and extensions of time granted by the Owner under the provisions of the Contract Conditions. All Contractor dates are predicated on Notice to Proceed being issued by the Owner on or before May 16, 2024; if Notice to Proceed is issued later than this date, all subsequent dates shall be adjusted by negotiation with all contracts.**

Start of Work at Project Site .....	May 20, 2024
Substantial Completion-Renovation (15 weeks).....	August 30, 2024
Substantial Completion-Barn, Greenhouse, and Site (17 weeks).....	September 13, 2024
Final Completion- Renovation .....	September 13, 2024
Final Completion-Barn, Greenhouse, and Site .....	September 27, 2024

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Restricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.
- B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to Work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
  - 1. Driveways, Walkways, and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
    - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
    - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.
- D. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.6 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy site and adjacent building(s) during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Notify Owner not less than 72 hours in advance of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Work shall be generally performed during normal daylight working hours Monday through Friday. Saturday work is permitted if Contractor determines this necessary to attain the indicated schedule and shall be considered part of the Work without claim for extra compensation. Sunday and Holiday work may be permitted with advance request and approval.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
- E. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Owner's property is not permitted.
- F. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

**1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS**

- A. **Specification Content:** The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  2. **Text Color:** Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
  3. **Hypertext:** Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
  4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. **Division 00 Contracting Requirements:** General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. **Division 01 General Requirements:** Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. **Drawing Coordination:** Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
1. **Terminology:** Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  2. **Abbreviations:** Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 10 00**

## **SECTION 01 23 00 – ALTERNATES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### **1.3 CLARIFICATIONS**

- A. Extent of work for each alternate is indicated on the drawings and/or in the associated technical specification sections; in case of any uncertainty request clarification from Architect before bidding, in time for addendum preparation.

#### **1.4 PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to alternates.
- C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- D. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each alternate with related materials and installation under other subcontracts to ensure each item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work of same and other contracts and all costs for such integration are included in the alternate Work amount.

#### **3.2 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES**

- A. Alternate No.1: Each bidder is requested to state the change in cost to provide sealed concrete in lieu of Vinyl Sheet Flooring in Rooms 1102 CLASSROOM, 1103 SMALL GROUP ROOM, and 1104 OFFICE per drawing sheet A701.
- B. Alternate No. 2: Each bidder is requested to state the change in cost to provide sealed concrete in lieu of Resinous Flooring in Rooms 1101 AG ED LAB and 1106 MECH TECH LAB per drawing sheet A701.



- C. Alternate No. 3: Each bidder is requested to state the addition in cost to provide 225A Rated Busway in lieu of electric drops in Rooms 1101 AG ED LAB per drawing sheet E200.
- D. Alternate No. 4: Each bidder is requested to state the deduction in cost by deleting the Barn and Manure Storage structure from the Scope of Work. Installation of the paving, water line, electric, and conduit for IT up to within five feet of the barn will remain in the Base Bid Scope of Work.
- E. Alternate No. 5: Each bidder is requested to state the addition in cost to provide ceiling fans in Room 2001 Small Animal Barn per drawing sheet E201.

**END OF SECTION 01 23 00**

## SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for **Substitution requests**.
  - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for **Comparable Product requests**.
- B. Request Form
  - 1. Form that must be used for initiating a Substitution request or a Comparable Product request is included at the end of this Section; the use of any other form or format or process for considering a product change will be rejected without review.
    - a. **READ AND FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE OF THIS FORM!**
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements applicable to products to be selected for use on the Project including those listed in individual specification Sections and those proposed by the Contractor as comparable products.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. **Substitutions:** Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. **Substitutions for Cause:** Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms. Changes proposed by Contractor that offer Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume.
  - 2. **Substitutions for Convenience:** Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.
- B. **Comparable Product:** Product that is demonstrated and approved, through the substitution process, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of a specified product.
- C. **Request for Substitution and Comparable Product Request:** Written request from the Contractor to the Architect seeking the use of a product, material, equipment, or method of construction that differs from the one indicated in the Construction Documents.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. **Substitution for Cause, Substitutions for Convenience, and Comparable Product Requests.**
  - 1. Submit fully executed request form and all substantiation documentation of each request for consideration. Do not combine multiple requests on one form.
- B. **Request Form:** Use copy of the form provided in Part 4 of this Section only; no other form will be accepted.
- C. **Documentation:** Type and format required to completely prove equality to specified products, materials and systems. Reference to the proposed product manufacturer's website or catalog will not be considered responsive to this requirement.
- D. **Submission of a Substitution for Convenience Request or a Comparable Product Request does not mandate its review or approval.** Architect has no obligation to justify or explain acceptance or rejection of any product change request; Contractor shall not protest Architect's decision relative to this project but may discuss the proposed product with the Architect for consideration on future projects.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Failure to Procure: The failure of the Contractor to procure a product or material on schedule will not be considered adequate reason for submitting a substitution request or a comparable product request unless the time required for procuring such product or material by reasonable means exceeds the time available at the Contractor's earliest opportunity to order.
  - 1. Contractor's failure to make submittals in a timely manner to attain a favorable review shall not be considered justification to extend Contractor's 'earliest opportunity'.
- B. Compatibility of Substitutions and Comparable Products: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution and comparable product with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.
- C. Product Change after Award of Contracts: Regardless of Architect's review and acceptance, all changes and associated cost or schedule effects required to associated materials caused by a product change after Award of Contract are the responsibility of the contractor initiating the product change. Submitter of product change request after Award of Contracts is responsible for notifying all associated work contractors of the change and for negotiating with them all differences and costs in their work.

#### 1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust all affected Work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions and comparable products.

#### 1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS FOR CAUSE REQUESTS

- A. Substitutions for Cause:
  - 1. Will be considered after Award of Contract but no later than 30 days prior to the time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 2. Will be considered only if submitted by a Prime Contractor.
  - 3. Will be considered only when accompanied by the fully executed form required (see Part 4 of this Section) and with all substantiating documentation provided by the Contractor.
    - a. Reference to the proposed product manufacturer's website or catalog will not be considered responsive to this requirement.
- B. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution for cause when a preponderance of the following conditions are satisfied. If applicable conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements.
  - 1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - 2. Equal product available for lesser cost, in which case the savings to Owner shall be indicated.
  - 3. Specified product not available due to discontinuance or other circumstance beyond the Contractor's control.
  - 4. Specified product not recommended or warranted by manufacturer for intended application.
  - 5. Specified product not approved for use by federal, state, or local authorities having jurisdiction; provide documentation or written statement of the authority.
  - 6. None of the products specified meet performance or warranty requirements specified.
  - 7. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  - 8. Requested substitution is consistent with the design intent and the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - 9. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Project Construction Schedule.
  - 10. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 11. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - 12. Requested substitution provides specified performance and warranty.
  - 13. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- C. Documentation: In addition to information requirements stated in the form included in Part 4, provide greater detail about the following:

1. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
  2. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work including that of separate Prime Contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - a. Failure to document changes that will be required to other work will result in the cost of such changes being back-charged to the contractor submitting the request.
  3. Detailed side-by-side comparison listing significant qualities of proposed substitution and those of the Work specified as indicated in the Form in Part 4. Provide a separate sheet if the form does not provide enough spaces. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - a. Attach product data and, if applicable, drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures of the proposed substitution and the same information of at least one of those named in the specifications, for comparison and substantiation of the data listed in the form.
  4. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  5. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  6. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
  7. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  8. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  9. Detailed comparison of Project construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  10. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  11. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  12. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- D. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within 15 days of receipt of a request for substitution for cause. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
1. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
- E. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
1. Regardless of any conflicting statement elsewhere in the Project Manual, Architect shall not be obligated to justify either a favorable or an unfavorable review decision.
- 1.7 SUBSTITUTION FOR CONVENIENCE REQUESTS
- A. Substitutions for Convenience (see separate paragraph for comparable product requests):
1. Will be considered only prior to Bidding.
  2. Will be considered only if submitted by a Prime Contract Bidder.
  3. Will be considered only when received in time for a thorough review by the Architect before deadline for issuance of an addendum is reached.
  4. Will be considered only when accompanied by the form required (see Part 4 of this Section) and with all substantiating documentation provided by the Contractor.
    - a. Reference to the proposed product manufacturer's website or catalog will not be considered responsive to this requirement.
- B. Conditions: Architect may consider Contractor's request for substitution for convenience when one or more of the following conditions are satisfied. If applicable conditions are not satisfied, Architect will take no action or may return requests without action except to record noncompliance with requirements.

1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume.
    - a. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  2. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  3. Requested substitution is consistent with the design intent and the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  4. Requested substitution will not adversely affect the Project Construction Schedule.
  5. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  6. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  7. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- C. Documentation: In addition to information requirements stated in the form included in Part 4, provide the following:
1. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation is being proposed.
  2. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work including that of separate Prime Contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - a. Failure to document changes that will be required to other work will result in the cost of such changes being back-charged to the Contractor submitting the request.
  3. Detailed side-by-side comparison listing significant qualities of proposed substitution and those of the Work specified as indicated in the Form in Part 4. Provide a separate sheet if the form does not provide enough spaces. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - a. Attach product data and, if applicable, drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures of the proposed substitution and the same information of at least one of those named in the specifications, for comparison and substantiation of the data listed in the form.
  4. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  5. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of substitution to produce indicated results.
- D. Architect's Action:
1. If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation.
  2. Form of Acceptance: Inclusion of the requested product, material, or method in an addendum issued to all bidders prior to Bidding.
  3. Regardless of any conflicting statement elsewhere in the Project Manual, Architect shall not be obligated to justify either a favorable or an unfavorable review decision.
- E. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
- 1.8 COMPARABLE PRODUCT REQUESTS
- A. Comparable Product Requests:
1. Will be considered only prior to Bidding.
  2. Will be considered only when received in time for a thorough review by the Architect before deadline for issuance of an addendum is reached;
  3. **Will be considered only when accompanied by the fully executed form required** (see Part 4 of this Section) and with all substantiating documentation provided by the Contractor.
    - a. Reference to the proposed product manufacturers website or catalog will not be considered responsive to this requirement.
  4. Submit a separate request package for consideration of each individual comparable product desired.
- B. Conditions: Architect may consider Contractor's request for comparable product when one or more of the following conditions is satisfied. If applicable conditions are not satisfied, Architect will take no action or may return requests without action except to record noncompliance with requirements.

1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents, including the work of others, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  2. Documentation that comparable product will not adversely affect any sustainable design credit being sought for the Project.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranties.
- C. Architect's Action:
1. If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation.
  2. Form of Acceptance: Inclusion of the requested product, material, or method in an addendum issued to all bidders prior to Bidding.
  3. Regardless of any conflicting statement elsewhere in the Project Manual, Architect shall not be obligated to justify either a favorable or an unfavorable review decision.
- D. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**PART 4 - FORMS**

- A. Form begins on the next page. Use separate additional pages if necessary to list all performance criteria.
- B. Use a separate form for each individual Product for which consideration of a change is being requested. Any written justifications, reasons, explanations, or statements relative to the request shall be provided on the Contractor's letterhead, dated and signed.
- C. DIRECTIONS for use of Form:
1. Contractor must submit a side-by side comparison of all pertinent specification criteria listing the performance criteria of one of the specified products along side of the same criteria of the product the Contractor would like to use instead. Use the form.
    - a. In the first column, re-state the performance requirements given in the specification. List all performance, strength, size, thickness, material, warranty requirements, sustainable design contribution, selection options, and so forth specified; not just one or two.
    - b. In the second column, select one of the products named in the specification section and list the corresponding performance values of that product.
    - c. In the third column, list the corresponding performance values of the product being submitted for consideration.
  2. Architect will review Requests for Substitution for Cause, Requests for Substitution for Convenience, and for use of Comparable Products only when submitted using this form and with all supporting documentation included.
  3. Regardless of any conflicting statement elsewhere in the Project Manual, Architect shall not be obligated to justify either a favorable or an unfavorable review decision.

*continued*

**SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM**

Project: \_\_\_\_\_

SHP Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_ date \_\_\_\_\_

**NOTE:**

*This form is to be used for Substitutions and Comparable Product Requests during bidding. Substitution-for-Cause Requests after bidding will be considered only for extreme justification and substantial benefit to the Owner as described elsewhere in the Documents, and with compensation to the Architect for evaluation time.*

We hereby request the following be considered as an acceptable product / material / manufacturer for the above referenced project.

Section and Paragraph No.	Specified Manufacturer and Product	Proposed Substitution
_____	_____	_____

**DIRECTIONS:** List **all specified performance criteria of one of the products named** in the specification and then the corresponding criteria of the proposed substitution product. Include performance criteria, referenced standards, codes, color / texture selection availabilities, sustainable design criteria, and warranty data. Provide a separate form for each product to be considered.

Criteria Description	Specified Product Provides / Meets	Proposed Product Provides / Meets
1 _____	_____	_____
2 _____	_____	_____
3 _____	_____	_____
4 _____	_____	_____
5 _____	_____	_____
6 _____	_____	_____
7 _____	_____	_____
8 _____	_____	_____
9 _____	_____	_____
10 _____	_____	_____
11 _____	_____	_____
12 _____	_____	_____

It is understood and expressly agreed that the submitter has investigated the potential effects of the use of the comparable product / substitution and accepts full responsibility for all consequential affects including but not necessarily limited to the following relative to the use of the proposed item:

- Effects on other construction including other Contracts; Effects on the Project Construction Schedule; Fitness for the use intended; Equivalency to that specified; Acceptability by authorities having jurisdiction; Safety when used as indicated.

In submitting this form, Contractor understands and agrees that the Architect has no obligation to justify or explain acceptance or rejection of a substitution or comparable product request.

For Requests considered after Award of Contract, the Contractor's responsibility includes but is not necessarily limited to: Cost of adjustments to other Work including modifications to work in place; compensation for construction delays, compensation for evaluations by the Architect, consultants and other contractors. *(Complete entire Substitution Request Form)*

Justification: *For Request after bidding list at least three significant reasons and Owner benefits for why the proposed substitution should be considered; Architect may request additional justifications:*

1 \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2 \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Include with this form all additional product literature and information necessary for the Architect to verify data stated in this form and to properly compare the requested product with the specified product. The Architect will not be responsible for delays caused by lack of information. Architect makes no assurances that proposed comparable product will be evaluated in time to be included in the Project by Addendum; Bid Date will not be extended for comparable product / substitution request consideration.*

Submitted by:

\_\_\_\_\_ Company

\_\_\_\_\_ Address 1

\_\_\_\_\_ Address 2

\_\_\_\_\_ Phone

\_\_\_\_\_ Fax

\_\_\_\_\_ E-mail

\_\_\_\_\_ Name and Signature

SHP ACTION:

Approved  Rejected

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Note:

Regardless of action indicated, return or non-return of this form to the submitter has no legal bearing on acceptance or rejection of a proposed product, manufacturer, or method. Proposed changes are officially accepted for use in the Project only when included in the Contract during bidding by Addendum or (after award) in the Contract by Change Order.



## **SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

#### **1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710-2017, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

#### **1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- A. **Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests:** Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. **Contractor-Initiated Proposals:** If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.

#### **1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. **Allowance Adjustment:** See Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. **Unit-Price Adjustment:** See Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. Comply with requirements of Division 00 Section "General Conditions" article 7 as amended by Supplementary General Conditions. <SHP specific requirement; do not delete.>
- B. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 26 00**

## **SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### **1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
  - 4. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Owner's name.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Architect's project number.
    - e. Contractor's name and address.
    - f. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
  - 4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. Include evidence of insurance or bonded warehousing if required.
  - 5. Overhead Costs, Proportional Distribution: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
  - 6. Overhead Costs, Separate Line Items: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
  - 7. In addition to the Contractor's construction activities, the Contract Cost Breakdown must include the following line items with the associated percentage of the contract value allocated to that activity.
    - a. Progress Meeting Attendance - 0.5% of the Contract.
    - b. Record Drawing Updates.
    - c. Allowances.

- d. Temporary Facilities.
  - e. Correction of punchlist items - 0.5% of the Contract.
  - f. Specified Training – 1% of the Contract.
  - g. Bonds: Insurance, permits and tests.
  - h. Mobilization.
  - i. Demobilization.
  - j. Submittals in the amount of 2% of the Contract; however, not less than \$1,000.00 nor more than \$10,000.00.
  - k. Daily clean up.
  - l. Final Cleaning.
  - m. Closeout costs in an amount equal to 1% of the Contract amount; however, not less than \$500.00 or more than \$10,000.00.
8. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
9. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

#### 1.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
- 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
- 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit one signed and notarized original copy of each Application for Payment to Architect by e-mail by agreed upon monthly submittal date. Include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required. *<Paragraph includes SHP specific language; do not delete.>*
- 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

- G. **Waivers of Mechanic's Lien:** With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. **Initial Application for Payment:** Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. Executed contract.
  2. List of subcontractors.
  3. Schedule of values.
  4. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  6. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  9. Copies of building permits.
  10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  11. Initial progress report.
  12. Report of preconstruction conference.
  13. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  14. Performance and payment bonds.
- I. **Application for Payment at Substantial Completion:** After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. **Final Payment Application:** After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
  3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  5. AIA Document G706-1994, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  6. AIA Document G706A-1994, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  7. AIA Document G707-1994, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
  11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
  12. Waivers and releases.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 29 00**

## **SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Project meetings.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
  
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and in prominent location inbuilt facility. Keep list current at all times.

#### **1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
  - 4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair of all components, including mechanical and electrical.
  
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

## 1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
    - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
    - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
    - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
    - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
    - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
    - g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling, raised access floor, and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.



- c. Panel board, switchboard, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
      - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
    - 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
      - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
    - 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
  - C. Coordination Drawing Process: Prepare coordination drawings in the following manner:
    - 1. Schedule submittal and review of Fire Sprinkler, Plumbing, HVAC, and Electrical Shop Drawings to make required changes prior to preparation of coordination drawings.
    - 2. Commence routing of coordination drawing files with HVAC Installer, who will provide drawing plan files denoting approved ductwork. HVAC Installer will locate ductwork and piping on a single layer, using orange color. Forward drawings to Plumbing Installer.
    - 3. Plumbing Installer will locate plumbing and equipment on a single layer, using blue color.
    - 4. Fire Sprinkler Installer will locate piping and equipment, using red color. Fire Sprinkler Installer shall forward drawing files to Electrical Installer.
    - 5. Electrical Installer will indicate service and feeder conduit runs and equipment in green color. Electrical Installer shall forward drawing files to Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer.
    - 6. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer will indicate cable trays and cabling runs and equipment in purple color. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer shall forward completed drawing files to Contractor.
    - 7. Contractor shall perform the final coordination review. As each coordination drawing is completed, Contractor will meet with Architect to review and resolve conflicts on the coordination drawings.
  - D. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
    - 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
- 1.6 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFIs)
  - A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
    - 1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
    - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
  - B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
    - 1. Project name.
    - 2. Owner name
    - 3. Name of Architect.
    - 4. Architect's Project number.
    - 5. Date.
    - 6. Name of Contractor.
    - 7. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
    - 8. RFI subject.
    - 9. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
    - 10. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - 11. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
    - 12. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's solution(s) impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
    - 13. Contractor's signature.
    - 14. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
      - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow three working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Include the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
  8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within three days if Contractor disagrees with response.

#### 1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of seven days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.

- f. Lines of communications.
  - g. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
  - h. Procedures for RFIs.
  - i. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
  - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
  - k. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
  - l. Submittal procedures.
  - m. Preparation of Record Documents.
  - n. Use of the premises and existing building.
  - o. Work restrictions.
  - p. Working hours.
  - q. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - r. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
  - s. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
  - t. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
  - u. Construction waste management and recycling.
  - v. Parking availability.
  - w. Office, work, and storage areas.
  - x. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
  - y. First aid.
  - z. Security.
  - aa. Progress cleaning.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Review of mockups.
    - i. Possible conflicts.
    - j. Compatibility requirements.
    - k. Time schedules.
    - l. Weather limitations.
    - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - n. Warranty requirements.
    - o. Compatibility of materials.
    - p. Acceptability of substrates.
    - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - r. Space and access limitations.
    - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - u. Installation procedures.
    - v. Coordination with other work.
    - w. Required performance results.
    - x. Protection of adjacent work.
    - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
  - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

- D. **Project Closeout Conference:** Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 30 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. **Attendees:** Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. **Agenda:** Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Submittal of written warranties.
    - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - i. Submittal procedures.
    - j. Coordination of separate contracts.
    - k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
    - l. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
    - m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  4. **Minutes:** Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. **Progress Meetings:** Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. **Attendees:** In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. **Agenda:** Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. **Contractor's Construction Schedule:** Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site use.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Progress cleaning.
      - 10) Quality and work standards.
      - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 12) Field observations.
      - 13) Status of RFIs.
      - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
      - 15) Pending changes.
      - 16) Status of Change Orders.
      - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
      - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
  4. **Minutes:** Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.

- a. **Schedule Updating:** Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. **Coordination Meetings:** Conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. **Attendees:** In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. **Agenda:** Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. **Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule:** Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. **Schedule Updating:** Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    - c. **Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:**
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site use.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Work hours.
      - 10) Hazards and risks.
      - 11) Progress cleaning.
      - 12) Quality and work standards.
      - 13) Status of RFIs.
      - 14) Proposal Requests.
      - 15) Change Orders.
      - 16) Pending changes.
  3. **Reporting:** Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 31 00**

## SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Daily construction reports.
  - 3. Site condition reports.
  - 4. Unusual event reports.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF file.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
  - 1. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

#### 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work to date of Final Completion.
  - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities:
  - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  - 2. Temporary Facilities: Indicate start and completion dates for the following as applicable:
    - a. Securing of approvals and permits required for performance of the Work.
    - b. Regulatory agency approvals.
    - c. Punch list.

3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion
- E. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  2. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- F. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- G. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
- 1.6 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 15 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
1. For construction activities that require two months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.
- 1.7 REPORTS
- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  2. Material deliveries.
  3. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  4. Testing and inspection.
  5. Accidents.
  6. Unusual events.
  7. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  8. Equipment or system tests and startups.
- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between existing conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- C. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 32 00**



## **SECTION 01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.
  - 2. Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing" for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

#### **1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
  - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Name of Contractor.
    - d. Date photograph was taken.
    - e. Description of location, vantage point, and direction.
    - f. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

#### **1.3 RIGHTS**

- A. Ownership and copyright privileges of photographic images belong to the Owner and the Architect. Under penalty of Law, the Contractor shall not provide or transmit in any manner construction photographs to any entities except the Owner and the Architect without written authorization from the Architect.

#### **1.4 FORMATS AND MEDIA**

- A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- C. Metadata: Record accurate date and time from camera.
- D. File Names: Name media files with date, Project area, and sequential numbering suffix.

#### **1.5 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.
  - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points.
  - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.

2. Take photographs of existing buildings on property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
3. Take photographs of existing pavements, landscaping, and lawn areas to accurately record physical conditions, especially settlement or cracking, at start of construction.
4. Take photographs of existing building at roof access locations to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 32 33**

## **SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.
2. Web-based file sharing system.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
2. Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings.
3. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
4. Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting preconstruction photographs, periodic construction photographs, and Final Completion construction photographs.
5. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports.
6. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
7. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
8. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Action Submittals:** Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals:** Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. ShareFile:** Web-based file sharing site, owned by Citrix Systems, which will be utilized to organize and exchange submittals. Access to ShareFile is available through Architect at no cost.
- D. Submittal Schedule:** Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  3. All initial shop drawings / action submittals are required to be submitted within 90 days of Notice to Proceed.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.

### 1.3 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Transmittal: Include the following information on transmittal form:
1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of Architect.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier.
    - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Maintain a single numeric sequence regardless of whether an individual submittal is physical or electronic.
    - 2) Resubmittals shall include an alphanumeric suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.R1).
  8. Category and type of submittal.
  9. Submittal purpose and description.
  10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  14. Other necessary identification.
  15. Remarks.
  16. Signature of transmitter.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

### 1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Web-Based File Sharing: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based file sharing website. Enter required data in web-based file sharing site to fully identify submittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Processing time starts when related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows.
1. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal whether physically delivered to Architect's office or electronically delivered to ShareFile.
  2. Review time concludes upon Architect's date of return-transmittal form whether physically delivered to Contractor or electronically delivered to ShareFile.
  3. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  4. Required processing times are as follows regardless of any conflicting statement made elsewhere:
    - a. Initial Review: Allow 14 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.

- 1) Color selections: For submittals that require a color or texture selection by the Architect, submit physical samples in advance of electronic submission.
  - b. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - c. Resubmittal Review: Allow 14 days for review of each resubmittal.
  - d. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. **Repetitious resubmittals** not complying with previous submittal annotations will result in back-charges against the Contractor for excessive Architect / Consultant review time.
    - a. This applies whenever a resubmittal must be revised and resubmitted due to non-compliance with a previous annotation. If there is any question about an annotation that the submitter feels cannot be followed, the submitter must initiate discussion with the Architect, not simply ignore the annotation.
    - b. Back-charges assessed for these reasons must be paid directly to the reviewing entity in advance of the Contractor's next partial Application for Payment or payment request will not be processed.
- E. Processing Electronic Submittals:
1. Assemble all documents of a submittal, including transmittal, into a single PDF. Do not combine multiple submittals into the same PDF. Before creating PDF, ensure the following:
    - a. Documentation is complete and in compliance with the Contract Documents.
    - b. Product selections and options intended to be provided are *clearly* selected and identified in the submittal.
      - 1) Failure to identify selections may result in rejection of the submittal without further review.
    - c. Where Architect selections are needed, ensure the available selections are clearly identified in the submittal; where color or texture selections by the Architect are needed, Contractor is required to submit actual physical samples; no color will be selected from electronic submissions.
    - d. Contractor has stamped, signed, and dated their confirmation that the submittal is correct, complete, and in compliance with Contract Documents.
  2. Ensure PDF is legible in both electronic (screen) version AND printed version.
    - a. In general, create PDF from an original electronic file rather than from a scanning process.
    - b. Illegible PDFs will be returned to Contractor without review.
    - c. No change in Contract Time will be authorized for Contractor's failure to provide actionable PDF submittals.
  3. Upload PDF to designated folder on ShareFile website and email Architect accordingly. Architect will email Contractor when submittal review is complete and ready for Contractor's download. Architect will provide ShareFile access instructions and detailed submittal routing procedures at pre-construction meeting.
  4. Retrieve completed submittals from the ShareFile website, maintain its own electronic file of all completed submittals, and shall provide paper copies of submittals as may be needed for field installation or its own purposes.
- F. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
1. For Construction: Provide paper copies of shop drawings, wiring diagrams, and other submittals containing installation requirements for use on the project site.
    - a. Provide additional sets or partial sets needed by the Contractor's own workers while performing the installation. Do not perform installation without having paper copy of final shop drawings present in the work area.
    - b. Use only final submittals bearing the stamp mark of the Architect indicating that the submittal is acceptable for construction use under the conditions indicated.
  2. For Authorities having Jurisdiction: For Contractor-obtained permits and other Contractor-provided information required by authorities having jurisdiction, assemble complete documentation, drawings, and forms for the submission into a single PDF as required by the authority for electronic submission. Attach a signed transmittal form or cover letter on Contractor's letterhead addressed to the authority; include information on method of payment of fees where applicable. Transmit to authority electronically with copy to Architect unless:

- a. If Authority requires submission be made by the Architect or engineer of record: Provide to Architect who will review the submittal and then forward it (including Contractor's cover letter) to the Authority under Architect's transmittal form.
  - b. If Authority requires hardcopies: Provide number of physical copies required by the authority and process direct or via Architect as indicated above.
3. For Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Provide 'clean' paper copies of all electronic submittals required and integrate with documents that were processed originally as physical submittals. Do not provide paper copies that have been damaged or marked-up by construction use.
- a. Additionally, for all submittals that were processed electronically, include all final submittals on a CD, cataloged in the same order as required for the physical O&M manual, and furnish to Owner as part of the Manual.

## 1.5 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - c. Color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Processing:
    - a. Submit actual-material Samples, with transmittal, to Architect for review and action.
    - b. Upload PDF of transmittal to ShareFile website including digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
    - c. Architect will transmit review action to Contractor through ShareFile.

4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit two sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample set; remainder will be returned to jobsite.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
      - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- H. Test and Research Reports:

1. **Compatibility Test Reports:** Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
  2. **Field Test Reports:** Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  3. **Material Test Reports:** Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  4. **Preconstruction Test Reports:** Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. **Product Test Reports:** Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  6. **Research Reports:** Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
    - a. Name of evaluation organization.
    - b. Date of evaluation.
    - c. Time period when report is in effect.
    - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
    - e. Description of product.
    - f. Test procedures and results.
    - g. Limitations of use.
- I. **Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs):** Submit information directly to Owner; do not submit to Architect.
1. Architect will not review submittals that include MSDSs and will return the entire submittal for resubmittal to proper entity.

#### 1.6 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. **Performance and Design Criteria:** Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. **Delegated-Design Services Certification:** In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. **Action Submittals and Informational Submittals:** Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
1. Do not process submittals that do not comply with requirements.
  2. Do not process submittals that are not clearly marked to indicate the specific products and specific product options.
- B. **Contractor's Approval:** Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.



1.8 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Requirements of this Section are intended to supplement requirements of the General Conditions and Supplementary General Conditions. Any reference herein, in the General Conditions, or elsewhere in the Project Manual, to Architect's "Approval" of any submittal shall not be construed as the Architect assuming any responsibility of the Contractor or any other entity, nor acceptance of any product or work not in conformance with the Contract Documents.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- E. Incomplete submittals, including submittals that do not highlight specific product choices or options, are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.
- G. Submittal of un-named products when a Section includes a list of acceptable products will be returned by Architect without review. Comply with Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for *consideration* of substitutions and comparable products.
- H. Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them 'rejected' without further action.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 33 00**

## SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
  - 1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
    - a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
    - b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
    - c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
    - d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and systems.
    - e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
  - 2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
  - 3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).

- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" shall have the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

### 1.3 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- C. During construction, Contractor will be instructed to provide the greater quantity or quality. No increase in the Contract Amount will be considered for Contractor bidding the lower quality and lesser quantity instead of seeking clarification during bidding.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- C. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.

5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
6. Number of tests and inspections required.
7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

D. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.

E. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.6 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.

B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.

1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.

C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.

D. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

E. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspection.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.

2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
1. Contractor's Responsibilities:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    - e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies; do not reuse products on Project.
  2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups of size indicated.
  2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
    - a. Construct mockups showing exterior elements in an open, unshaded area with the finish side of the mockup facing south.
  3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
  5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  6. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
  8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed, unless otherwise indicated.
- 1.9 QUALITY CONTROL <Revise "Owner" to "Architect" in paragraphs A and B when SHP is paying for these services.>
- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
  2. Payment for these services will be made by the Owner.
  3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.

5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- 1.10 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS <Revise "Owner" to "Architect" in paragraph A and A.6 when SHP is paying for these services.>
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Where tests reveal non-compliant work, Owner's testing agency will perform retesting and reinspection of corrected Work at Contractor's expense. *<SHP specific requirement; do not delete.>*

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG**

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's and authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.
  1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

**3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION 01 40 00**



## SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For standards referenced by applicable building codes, comply with dates of standards as listed in building codes.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project must be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity or to resolve any construction activity uncertainty or dispute, Contractor shall immediately obtain copies of the relevant standard directly from publication source and keep on site for reference by all entities.

#### 1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."

- B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
  2. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
  3. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).
- C. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CPSC - U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
  2. DOC - U.S. Department of Commerce; [www.commerce.gov](http://www.commerce.gov).
  3. DOD - U.S. Department of Defense; [www.defense.gov](http://www.defense.gov).
  4. DOE - U.S. Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
  5. DOJ - U.S. Department of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
  6. DOS - U.S. Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
  7. EPA - United States Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
  8. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
  9. GPO - U.S. Government Publishing Office; [www.gpo.gov](http://www.gpo.gov).
  10. GSA - U.S. General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  11. HUD - U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
  12. LBNL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Energy Technologies Area; [www.lbl.gov/](http://www.lbl.gov/).
  13. NIST - National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
  14. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
  15. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
  16. USACE - U.S. Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
  17. USDA - U.S. Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
  18. USDA - U.S. Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
  19. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
  20. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).
- D. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from U.S. Government Publishing Office; [www.govinfo.gov](http://www.govinfo.gov).
  2. DOD - U.S. Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/](http://www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/).
  3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (see FS).
  4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (see FS).
  5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/](http://www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/).
    - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
    - b. Available from U.S. General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
    - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org](http://www.wbdg.org).
  6. MILSPEC - Military Specifications and Standards; (see DOD).
  7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).
  8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (see USAB).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 42 00**

## **SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### **1.2 USE CHARGES**

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service from Existing System: 120 volt electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- D. No other public utilities are provided on the site; all other utilities required for construction shall be provided by the Contractor as temporary facilities.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- C. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold. Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
  - 1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and requirements for replacing water-damaged Work.
  - 2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  - 3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- D. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation.
- E. Noise and Vibration Control Plan: Identify construction activities that may impact the occupancy and use of existing spaces within the building or adjacent existing buildings, whether occupied by others, or occupied by the Owner. Include the following:
  - 1. Indicate activities that may disturb building occupants and that are planned to be performed during non-standard working hours as coordinated with the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete or galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. General: Contractor is responsible for all temporary facilities needed including but not limited to:
1. Installation, operation, maintenance, and removal of each temporary facility necessary for its own normal construction activity, and costs and use charges associated with each facility, except as otherwise provided for in this Section.
  2. Plug-in electric power cords and extension cords, supplementary plug-in task lighting, and special lighting necessary exclusively for its own activities.
  3. Hoses for water to location needed.
  4. Storage and fabrication sheds.
  5. All safety devices and precautions necessary for operations and work.
  6. Provide, maintain and perform protection and prevention of fires or fire hazards during the construction period for its construction material and personnel in accordance with Federal, State and Local laws and regulations. This includes but is not limited to fire extinguishers, special signs and removal of combustible materials.
  7. Staging and scaffolding for its own construction activities.
  8. Waste disposal facilities, including collection and legal disposal of its own waste materials. Daily cleanup of Contractor's trash & debris is mandatory for this project and is included in the Contract.
  9. Secure lockup of tools, materials, and equipment.
  10. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities necessary exclusively for construction activities.
  11. Means and methods of construction and jobsite safety.
  12. Contractor is similarly responsible for the activities of its subcontractors.
- B. Common-Use Field Office is contractor option; progress meetings may be held in the existing building in lieu of on-site if scheduled in advance with the Owner; or may be held on site in the open. If provided, office trailer shall be of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel, inspectors, architect, and contractor's office activities and to accommodate Project meetings. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
1. Location: Parking lot; position as approved by Owner.
  2. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  3. Provide secure location for copy of reviewed submittals, permits, permit drawing sets and other official documents, and for as-built markup drawings and specification sets.
  4. Provide tackboard for posting required documents, project information, telephone lists including emergency numbers for fire, police and life squad, safety posters and the like.
  5. Desks for contractor.
  6. Area of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals.
  7. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  8. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide and maintain temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- D. Sanitary Facilities within Existing Building is Contractor option: Owner will designate toilet rooms and drinking water within the building for use by construction personnel. Contractor will be responsible to clean and maintain the space in an orderly fashion and, at the end of the project, to leave the space in the condition it was originally found.
- E. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Remove trash from

site daily or provide dumpster adequate for all waste material and debris at end of each day; service as required.

1. Allow no loose material piles or fenced debris containment areas.
- F. Enclosure Fence: Contractor option to enclose staging area. Use portable chain link fencing that does not penetrate or damage pavement.
- G. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Provide safety devices and protections as required by work or by authorities having jurisdiction including but not limited to structurally adequate barricades, fences, warning signs and lighting.
- H. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Contractor may provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for their construction operations.
1. Store combustible materials apart from building.
  2. Locate as directed by Construction Coordinator.
- I. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- J. First Aid: Maintain first aid kit adequate for all common construction needs and injuries. Kit must be unlocked and accessible for quick retrieval at all times construction is underway.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 01 10 00 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

#### **3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
- B. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- D. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations if requirements exceed the capacity of Owner's existing 120 volt electric power service. Maintain Owner's existing power equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.

#### **3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Temporary Use of Existing Permanent Drives, Walks, and Paved Areas: Photo-document condition of existing driveways, parking lots and sidewalks used for construction purposes and access. Show in particular any condition that may later be interpreted as construction damage.
1. Maintain paved areas in good undamaged condition. Review conditions daily and immediately assess any inadvertent damage and identify cause / responsible contractor.
  2. Contractor shall provide protective means they deem necessary to protect against pavement damage from their operations.
- B. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.

- C. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- D. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
  - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- C. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- D. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- E. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

### 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
- C. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

**END OF SECTION 01 50 00**

## SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project.
  2. Product delivery, storage, and handling.
  3. Manufacturers' standard warranties on products.
  4. Special warranties.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for requests to submit consideration of **comparable products**.
  2. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for **substitutions**.
  3. Section 01 42 00 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
  4. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
1. **Named Products:** Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, which is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  2. **New Products:** Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
  3. **Comparable Product:** Product that is demonstrated and approved through Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of a specified product.
    - a. Comparable products are allowed only under conditions and processes described in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures".
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product Specification:** Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design" product, including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating equivalent features of products of other manufacturers named in the specification.
1. Designating one product or manufacturer as the "Basis-of-Design" does not either directly or unintentionally establish a proprietary specification. It is fully expected that the other named manufacturers have standard or modified products, with or without accessory and supplementary items or methods of installation that provide equivalent utility, function, properties and design intent to the basis of design.
  2. Any Contractor needing clarification about the acceptability of a product or method of installation of one of the other named manufacturers shall seek clarification from the architect during bidding by submitting complete documentation for the intended product and a written statement of intent. Submit full substantiating documents in time for Architect's review and analysis before the cutoff date for issuing an Addendum.
  3. If clarification is not requested as required during bidding, comply with the Architect's instructions during Submittals Process that establish other named manufacturer product equivalency to the basis-of-design product; or provide the basis-of-design product.
- C. **Subject to Compliance with Requirements:** Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications.

### 1.3 SUBSTITUTIONS / COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Contractor substitution requests for convenience or for cause; and requests to use comparable products, will be considered only when presented in compliance with Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures".
- B. Failure to process or order in a timely manner:
  - 1. Failure to process product submittals or to order materials, in time to meet construction schedule requirements is not justification for providing any product or method that differs from the Construction Documents.
  - 2. IF a substitution for cause is acceptable to the Architect, any and all costs associated with the substitution including but not limited to, providing a superior product to the one specified, expedited deliveries, special production runs, custom modifications or finishes, and adjustments to other Work in place or yet to be installed, shall be paid by the Contractor who's failure to process or order in a timely manner has caused the change. In no case shall any cost be passed on to the Owner for such failure.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
  - 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other Contractors. Date of Architect's favorable review shall be the date used in determining precedence.
  - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used. Provide products determined by architect with no additional cost to Owner.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
  - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.
    - e. Ratings.
  - 3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

### 1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  - 1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
  - 2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.



3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
1. **Manufacturer's Warranty:** Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. **Special Warranty:** Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  3. Warranty initiation date shall be the date indicated in the applicable specification section. Contractor shall obtain any additional, supplemental, or extended insurance necessary to cover insurances for the time period indicated if manufacturer-provided insurance does not cover the full timeframe required.
  4. There shall be no delay in the initial start and continuation in effect of any warranty required by the Specifications for any cause, including but not limited to any obligations of performance or payment of fee(s), or other requirement between the Contractor and the product manufacturer / warranty provider.
    - a. Where a fee is required to initiate and bring into effect or to maintain a Warranty, the Contractor shall pay such fee(s) as part of the Work and shall provide proof of payment of fees and proof of initiation of Warranty before Final Payment request will be processed.
  5. Warranties shall not be suspended, terminated, or revoked due to any failure of the Contractor or their sub-contractor to pay premiums or initiation-of-warranty fees.
  6. For the full duration of the warranty period, an executed warranty as delivered to the Owner shall not be suspended, terminated or revoked by the manufacturer or Contractor without written documentation signed by an officer of the manufacturer and delivered to the Owner by registered mail.
  7. **Manufacturer Direct Inspections for Warranty Continuance:** All fees for the product manufacturer's inspections required to maintain a warranty in full force and effect throughout the warranty period shall be waived or be pre-paid and included as part of the construction Work; this applies whether the manufacturer uses their own forces or contracts with an inspection agency. This does not apply to regular maintenance inspections and service obligations of the Owner.
  8. Contractor is responsible to pay all fees and to obtain any and all additional warranties or warranty extensions necessary to fulfill the requirements of this section and of specific Product Section warranties including but not limited to warranty initiation date, warranty initiation fee payments, periodic inspection costs if required by the warranty, warranty termination date, and warranty work coverage, as part of the Work without additional cost to the Owner.
- B. **Special Warranties:** Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms, dates, and identification, ready for execution.
1. **Manufacturer's Standard Form:** Modified or appended to include Project-specific information and requirements, properly executed.
    - a. Modifications of standard form to be initialed by all parties to the agreement.
    - b. Appended documents to be referenced by modification to the standard form and both documents to be cross-referenced by title and date.
  2. **Specified Form:** When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
  3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. **Submittal Time:**
1. **Sample Warranty / Form:** un-executed, but with terms clearly indicated, when listed in a specification Section under Part 1 article "Informational Submittals".

2. Executed Warranty / Form: Comply with requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

D. Product Warranty Prerequisite: Specified warranties are as much a requirement of products as performance criteria. Do not submit products that cannot be covered by the specified warranty whether or not listed in the specification section; seek clarification from Architect in advance. See Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures".

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Provide anchorage devices suited to conditions and that will maintain strength throughout the life of the installation without loosening, failure, deterioration, rust or staining.
  3. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  4. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
  5. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  6. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is Architect's; or Architect will advise specific location / criteria to be matched.
  7. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  8. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" to obtain approval for use of a particular unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
  2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
  3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
  4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
  5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
  6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.

- a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
  - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named.
- a. Any contractor needing clarification about the acceptability of a product or method of installation of one of the other named manufacturers shall seek clarification from the Architect during bidding by submitting complete documentation for the intended product and a written statement of intent.
    - 1) Submit full substantiating documents in time for Architect's review and analysis before the cutoff date for issuing an addendum.
    - 2) If clarification is not requested as required during bidding, comply with the Architect's instructions during the Submittals Process that establish other named manufacturer product equivalency to the basis-of-design product; or provide the basis-of-design product.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample" including to "match an established sample or element of an existing building" provide a product that complies with requirements and also matches Architect's sample or indicated element. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of another product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected from manufacturer's 'Standard', 'Full', or 'Industry' range of colors, patterns, textures" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with other specified requirements and the following:
1. Standard Range: Or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include premium items / finishes.
  2. Full Range: Or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items / finishes.
  3. Industry Range: Or similar phrase, Architect will select a product from the manufacturer indicated and that is a regular offering in the industry even if it may be a special offering by the named manufacturer.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: ONLY as indicated and following the processes stated in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 60 00**

## SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Construction layout.
  2. Field engineering and surveying.
  3. Installation of the Work.
  4. Cutting and patching procedures applicable to **ALL Divisions of the Work**.
  5. Progress cleaning.
  6. Starting and adjusting.
  7. Protection of installed construction.
  8. Correction of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
  2. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- C. "Cutting and patching" is performed for coordination of the work, to uncover work for access or inspection, to obtain samples for testing, to permit alterations to be performed, and for other similar purposes.
- D. Cutting and patching performed during the manufacturer of products or during the initial fabrication, erection, or installation processes is not considered to be "cutting and patching" under this definition. Drilling of holes to install fasteners and similar operations are also not considered to be "cutting and patching".

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting and patching work. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
    - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
    - d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affected by cutting and patching operations.
  2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- B. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Prior to establishing layout of new perimeter and structural column grid(s), review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Professional surveyor responsible for performing Project surveying and layout.

- c. Professional surveyor responsible for performing site survey serving as basis for Project design.
2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor and delegated design engineer.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor, certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
  1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
  2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
  3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
  4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
    - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.
- D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
    - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
    - b. Fire separation assemblies.
    - c. Air or smoke barriers.
    - d. Fire-suppression systems.
    - e. Plumbing piping systems.
    - f. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
    - g. Control systems.
    - h. Communication systems.
    - i. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
    - j. Electrical wiring systems.
    - k. Operating systems of special construction.
  3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to

perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:

- a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  - b. Membranes and flashings.
  - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
  - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
  - e. Equipment supports.
  - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Existing site survey, topography, and subsurface conditions: Existing conditions presented in drawing, report or specification form are believed accurate within normal industry tolerances but are not guaranteed. Investigate, survey, confirm and verify all conditions bearing on the Work by any means necessary before starting any Work that changes existing conditions. Report any unacceptable discrepancies to the Architect in writing before beginning operations.
1. Written claims of difference shall be accompanied by all substantiating evidence necessary to document such claim.
  2. Claims of difference shall be resolved, including determination of quantities and costs and methods of contract modification, before work that alters such existing conditions is started.
  3. Initiation of site-clearing, soil-moving operations, demolition or other activity that alters existing conditions shall be evidence that Contractor has made all investigations and evaluations it deems necessary and has accepted all existing conditions present whether or not they conform exactly to the Contract Documents.
  4. Without advance written notification of unacceptable discrepancy, no claim for extra will be considered for a claim of difference between documents and actual conditions after the contractor has altered existing conditions.
- B. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- C. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- D. **Written Report:** Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
  2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  4. Recommended corrections.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.
- F. **Concealed Conditions:** Concealed conditions that the Contractor believes to differ substantially from Contract requirements, that change the products or performance requirements indicated, or that otherwise have a time / cost impact on the Contractor's work shall be brought to the attention of the Architect immediately upon discovery.
1. Verbal or written claims of difference shall be accompanied by all substantiating evidence necessary to document such claim. Verbal claims shall be documented in writing by the Contractor following discussions including full description of claim and points of understanding.
  2. Claims of difference shall be resolved in writing, including determination of quantities and costs and methods of contract modification, before work that alters such existing conditions is started.
    - a. When actual quantities remain concealed at time of discovery, the unknown quantities shall be estimated and a unit price agreed upon; as work progresses, Contractor shall track and document actual quantities to the Architect daily and shall not exceed estimated quantities without specific notification and further discussion.
  3. Without such written agreement no claim for extra will be considered for a claim of difference between documents and actual conditions after the Contractor has altered existing conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. **Existing Utility Information:** Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. **Field Measurements:** Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. **Space Requirements:** Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. **Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions:** Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."
- E. **Drawings:**
1. Although Drawings are grouped and identified by classification of the Work, Contractors are responsible for their Work as it may be indicated on any and all of the Drawings regardless of drawing number prefix.
  2. Although the majority of the Drawings are "to scale," Contractors are directed to use indicated written dimensions along with their own field measurements and verifications for determining locations, material quantities and for other reasons.
    - a. Most plan drawings have a one-inch 'reference line' left of the title block box containing the sheet number. Be aware that if this reference line does not measure exactly one inch in length, the sheet has not been reproduced at a correct size.

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- C. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.



3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 108 inches in occupied spaces and 96 inches in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
  - C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
  - D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
  - E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
  - F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
  - G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
  - H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
    1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
    2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
    3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
  - I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching with Owner.
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.

- G. **Cutting:** Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  2. **Finished Surfaces:** Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. **Concrete and Masonry:** Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. **Excavating and Backfilling:** Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. **Mechanical and Electrical Services:** Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. **Patching:** Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. **Inspection:** Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  2. **Exposed Finishes:** Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  3. **Floors and Walls:** Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, corner to corner of wall and edge to edge of ceiling. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. **Ceilings:** Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. **Exterior Building Enclosure:** Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. **Cleaning:** Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. **General:** Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
  5. Contractors failing to clean their work areas as indicated and directed will be back-charged costs for having the work performed
- B. **Site:** Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. **Work Areas:** Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.

2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

- D. **Installed Work:** Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. **Concealed Spaces:** Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. **Exposed Surfaces:** Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. **Waste Disposal:** Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways.
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. **Limiting Exposures:** Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. **Manufacturer's Field Service:** Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

### 3.9 PROTECTION AND REPAIR OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. **Protection of Existing Items:** Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

### 3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.

- C. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- D. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- E. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.

**END OF SECTION 01 73 00**

## **SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. List of incomplete items.
  - 4. Submittal of Project warranties.
  - 5. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
  - 2. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 3. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 4. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

#### **1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

#### **1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES**

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.

2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, and similar final record information.
  3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner's signature for receipt of submittals.
  5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.
- 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES
- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

## 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
  - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor, listed by room or space number.
  - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.
  - 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
    - a. PDF Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.

## 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  - 1. Submit by uploading to web-based project software site.
- E. Provide one paper copy of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.

- d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
- e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
- f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
- g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
- h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- i. Vacuum and mop concrete.
- j. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
- k. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
- l. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
- n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
- o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
- p. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
  - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA ACR. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
- q. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
- r. Clean strainers.
- s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 01 73 00 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 01 77 00**



## **SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### **1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. Submit by uploading to web-based project software site. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
  - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### **1.4 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the

system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

- B. **Manuals, Paper Copy:** Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. **Binders:** Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with the applicable printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  2. **Dividers:** Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  3. **Protective Plastic Sleeves:** Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
  4. **Supplementary Text:** Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
  5. **Drawings:** Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

#### 1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. **Organization of Manuals:** Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. **Title Page:** Include the following information:
1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Architect.
  7. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  8. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  9. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. **Table of Contents:** List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. **Manual Contents:** Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. **Identification:** In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
  - 1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
  - 2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
  - 3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

1.7 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  - 1. Type of emergency.
  - 2. Emergency instructions.
  - 3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  - 1. Fire.
  - 2. Flood.
  - 3. Gas leak.
  - 4. Water leak.
  - 5. Power failure.
  - 6. Water outage.
  - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - 8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Instructions on stopping.
  - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

1.8 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  - 3. Operating standards.
  - 4. Operating procedures.
  - 5. Operating logs.
  - 6. Wiring diagrams.

7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

C. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.

C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
  2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.
- 1.10 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS
- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  4. Material and chemical composition.
  5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
  2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.

3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 78 23**

## **SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 2. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### **1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned Record Prints. Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.

#### **1.3 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.

5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

- B. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.

#### 1.4 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

#### 1.5 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 78 39**



## **SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.

#### **1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Instruction Program: Submit two copies of outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
- B. Qualification Data: For instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- B. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

#### **1.4 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

#### **1.5 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM**

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.

- e. Equipment function.
- f. Operating characteristics.
- g. Limiting conditions.
- h. Performance curves.
- 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
  - a. Emergency manuals.
  - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - d. Product maintenance manuals.
  - e. Project Record Documents.
  - f. Identification systems.
  - g. Warranties and bonds.
  - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
- 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
- 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

#### 1.6 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.7 INSTRUCTION

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- D. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (not used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 79 00**

**SECTION 04 20 00 - UNIT MASONRY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
2. Clay face brick.
3. Mortar and grout.
4. Steel reinforcing bars.
5. Ties and anchors.
6. Embedded flashing.
7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

**B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:**

1. Anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame and steel lintels, installed under Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications."

**C. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section:**

1. Hollow-metal frames in unit masonry openings furnished under Section 08 11 13 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."

**D. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation" for cavity wall insulation.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

**A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).**

**B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.**

**1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

**A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.**

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data: For each type of product.**

**B. Shop Drawings: For the following:**

1. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
2. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

**C. Samples for Initial Selection:**

- 1.
2. Weep holes/cavity vents.

**D. Samples for Verification and subject to final acceptance as part of mock-up panel review: For each type and color of the following:**

1. Weep holes and cavity vents.

**1.5 Clay face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:**

1. Masonry units.
  - a. Include data on material properties.
  - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
  - c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C67.

- d. For masonry units, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C109 for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91 for air content.
  - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- C. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.
- B. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
  - 1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness.
  - 2. Build sample panels facing south.
  - 3. Clean one-half of exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
  - 4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
  - 5. Architect's review of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 6. Demolish and remove sample panel only when authorized by Architect.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store packaged cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store masonry sand on protective membrane that separates sand from the ground moisture and contaminants and does not retain water.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
  - 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
  - 3. If covering is temporarily removed to perform certain wall operations, restore complete covering as soon as operations are complete and at end of workday; allow NO water intrusion into the masonry or the cavity.

- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

### **2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL**

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.

### **2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  - 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C90.
  - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
  - 2. Density Classification:
    - a. Lightweight, maximum density not more than 105 lbs. per cubic foot, typical throughout building for interior work.
    - b. Normal weight for below grade work and work exposed to the exterior.
  - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
  - 4. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture.

## 2.4 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
  2. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
  3. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
  4. Provide 100% solid units at outside corners at soldier courses.
- B. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C216, Grade SW, Type FBS or better.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3350 psi.
  2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 20 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67.
  3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested in accordance with ASTM C67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  4. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 3-5/8 inches high by 11-5/8 inches long.
  5. Brick shall be a minimum 75 percent solid, unless noted otherwise on Drawings.
  6. See Drawings for special shapes.
  7. Application: See Drawings for locations of each brick type. Request clarification from Architect in the case of any uncertainty of brick type intended for a particular location or use.
  8. Clay Face Brick Types.
    - a. Masonry Veneer:
      - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
        - a) Beldin Brick.
        - b) Bowerston Shale Company.
        - c) Taylor Clay Products, Inc.
        - d) Interstate Brick.
      - 2) Color and texture: Match existing building.

## 2.5 MORTAR FOR UNIT MASONRY

- A. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.; Richmortar Masonry Cement.
    - b. Fairborn Cement Company; MIAMI Masonry Cement.
    - c. LafargeHolcim; Masonry Cement.
    - d. Lehigh Hanson HeidelbergCement Group; Lehigh Masonry Cement.
  2. Aggregate for Mortar: Masonry sand, ASTM C144.
  3. Mortar Mixing: Provide one of the following mortar mixes.
    - a. Add masonry cement to mixer in full bag quantities. Measure dry masonry sand in box with volume of one cubic foot as often as necessary to maintain consistent proportions and at least once daily and every 4 hours of mixing. Add water and mix for 3-5 minutes.
    - b. Add preblended, dry mortar mix to the mixer. Furnish dry mortar ingredients (masonry cement and sand) in form of a preblended mix, ASTM C1714. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site. Add water and mix for 3-5 minutes.
  4. Application: Provide for all standard cmu work and where non-pigmented mortar is required.
- B. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C1384 or water-reducing and accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494, Type E, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
1. Use of cold-weather admixtures in mortar is not a substitution for compliance with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 cold weather construction requirements.
  2. Cold-weather admixture (if used) shall be factory blended into the mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Accelguard 80.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies; Morset.
    - c. Spec Mix, LLC; Spec Mix Non-Chloride Accelerator.

- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
  - 1. For all masonry unless otherwise noted, use Type S.
  - 2. For masonry veneer above grade, use Type N.

## 2.6 GROUT FOR UNIT MASONRY

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in grout.
- B. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.
  - 1. Use grout that has been factory pre-blended and delivered to project site.
    - a. On-site field mixing of Portland cement and fine or coarse aggregate will NOT be permitted.
    - b. On-site field mixing of factory pre-blended grout for mixing with water only is acceptable.
  - 2. Use grout of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
    - a. Use fine grout in grout spaces less than 2 inches in horizontal dimension, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Use coarse grout in grout spaces 2 inches or more in least horizontal dimension, for filling bond beams, and for grouting cores of CMU with reinforcing bars.
  - 3. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2500 psi.
- C. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- D. Water: Potable.

## 2.7 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60.

## 2.8 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  - 2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
- C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - 1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
  - 2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire. Where column web ties are indicated, provide 0.187-inch-diameter x 12-inches long ties made from hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors for Connecting to Cold-Formed Metal Framing:
  - 1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.075-inch-thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
  - 3. Fabricate wire ties from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire unless otherwise indicated.



4. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a corrosion-resistant, self-drilling, eye-screw designed to receive wire tie. Eye-screw has spacer that seats directly against framing and is same thickness as sheathing and insulation and has gasketed washer head that covers hole in insulation.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.; #75 Original Pos-I-Tie with Triangle Wire Tie.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; 2-Seal Tie with 2-Seal Byna-Lok Wire.
      - 3) Wire-Bond; #4520 SureTie, #4590 Thermal Grip Washer, and #4510 SureTie Triangle.
  5. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No. 10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117.
- E. Wire Mesh Ties: 1/2-inch mesh, 16 gage steel wire, hot dip galvanized.

## 2.9 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following:
1. Stainless Steel-Laminated Flashing: 2 mil, Type 304 stainless-steel sheet bonded to a polymeric fabric on one face. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
    - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Mighty-Flash SS Fabric Flashing.
      - 2) Wire-Bond; Bond-N-Flash.
      - 3) York Flashings; Multi-Flash SS.
  2. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 3-oz./sq. ft. copper sheet bonded to a polymeric fabric on both faces. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
    - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc., Copper Sealtite 2000.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Copper-Fabric NA Copper Fabric Flashing.
      - 3) Wire-Bond; Copper Seal Flashing.
      - 4) York Flashings; Multi-Flash 500.
  3. Unitized Flashing and Cavity Drainage System: Masonry cavity wall flashing system consisting of a stainless steel- or copper-laminated flashing (meeting requirements for flashings in preceding paragraphs), mortar dropping collection drainage mat, and drainage mesh weep tabs factory-assembled into a single unit in lieu of individual components.
    - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Mortar Net Solutions; TotalFlash Roll Masonry Cavity Wall Drainage Solution.
      - 2) York Flashings; Flash-Vent.
- B. Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Bond-Breaker Strips: Dense neoprene rubber (ASTM D2000, Grade BC610) bearing pad; 1/8-inch thick. Use at steel wide flange beam and precast concrete / masonry lintel bearing end coinciding with control joint location.
- C. Weep/Cavity Vent Products:
1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Maze Weep Vents.
      - 2) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; #85 Cell Vent.
      - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; QV - Quadro-Vent.
      - 4) Wire-Bond; #3601 Cell Vent.

- D. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
    - b. CavClear/Archovations Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
    - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Mortar Web.
    - d. Keene Building Products; Driwall Mortar Deflection.
    - e. Mortar Net Solutions; MortarNet.
    - f. Wire-Bond; Cavity Net.
  2. Configuration: Provide one of the following:
    - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail-shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
    - b. Strips, not less than 3/4 inch thick and 10 inches high, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.
    - c. Provide thinner strips where required at reduced cavity widths and no thicker than cavity width less 1/4 inch.
- E. Adhesive Anchor: Injectable, two-component epoxy adhesive, complying with ICC-ES AC308 for use in cracked concrete, for installation of reinforcing steel dowels into concrete, ONLY when doweling into footing was not completed per plan or misaligned.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. DeWalt "PURE110+".
    - b. Hilti, Inc. "HIT-RE 500-V3".
    - c. ITW Red Head "G5+ High Strength Epoxy".
    - d. Simpson Strong-Tie Company Inc.; "SET-3G".

## 2.11 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.; a Hohmann & Barnard company.
    - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
    - c. ProSoCo, Inc.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.

- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

#### A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

- 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

#### B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

#### C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
  - 1. Exterior Veneer: One-third running bond for utility-sized units.
  - 2. Interior CMU: Standard running bond.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Maintain a one-inch joint between partition and penetrating structural framing. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. Laterally brace partitions with brace-formed metal angles as detailed.
  - 3. At fire-rated and smoke rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above and between partitions and penetrating structural framing to comply with Drawings.
- J. Grout solid all cores of CMU below floor line, and grout solid all collar joints in CMU work below floor line, whether or not indicated on drawings.
- K. Ease the exterior corners of all square-edged CMU walls and partitions in occupied rooms and corridors, by rubbing with an abrasive stone, removing sharp corners and providing an approximate 1/4-inch radius.

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
  - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry and veneer units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush where indicated to cavity wall insulation unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 COMPOSITE MASONRY

- A. Bond wythes of composite masonry together as follows:
  - 1. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes.
- B. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units as well as masonry bonding.

- C. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
  - 1. Provide individual wire mesh ties not more than 16 inches o.c. as detailed on Drawings.

### 3.7 CAVITY WALLS

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together as follows:
  - 1. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    - a. Use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
  - 2. Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- C. Seal all openings between cavity and building interior with masonry, mortar, joint sealant, or tightly-packed mineral-wool insulation (in that order of preference). Maintain specified clearances at structural members and fill openings with mineral-wool insulation.
  - 1. Tightly pack mineral-wool insulation into steel tube and other hollow sections penetrating cavity walls. Insulation plug shall extend from face of cavity wall insulation a minimum distance of 6 inches towards building interior.

### 3.8 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to CFMF wall framing with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
  - 2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints.
  - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 24 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 16 inches vertically, around perimeter.
- B. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

### 3.9 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- D. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, and other special conditions.

### 3.10 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:
  - 1. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
  - 2. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
  - 3. Install sealant and backer rod, specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants", at interior face of cavity wall CMU wythe full height from floor slab to underside of deck above, including above-ceiling portions of joints and joints concealed in pipe chases or similar inaccessible spaces.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
  - 1. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.11 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on bed of sealant and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. Allow no penetrations through flashings. Coordinate in advance with all trades to ensure placement of all wall-penetrating work to be above or below flashings. Do not flash and/or seal around such items if discovered when installing flashings; notify Architect and have such work relocated.
  - 3. At cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of backup wythe at least 8 inches. Fasten upper edge of flashing to backup wythe through termination bar.
  - 4. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches. Where applicable, tuck under water-resistive barrier, lapping at least 4 inches. Fasten upper edge of flexible flashing to sheathing through termination bar.
  - 5. At lintels, extend flashing full length of lintel bearing into masonry at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
  - 6. At sills, where skyward facing joints between units are exposed, install flashing one course below sill and extend through outer wythe, across air space behind veneer, and up face of backup wythe at least 8 inches. Fasten upper edge of flashing to backup wythe through termination bar.
  - 7. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
  - 8. Special condition for flashing of walls above adjacent roof, roof edges and parapets:
    - a. Extend all through-wall flashings located above roof lines at least 6-inches beyond the roof edge and not less distance than the projection of roof edge metal trim, fascia, coping, or gutter.
    - b. Overlap flashing steps 6-inches minimum.
    - c. Do not terminate through wall flashings or provide a flashing step at inside or outside wall corners; wrap around corners at least 6-inches.
    - d. At abutting parapet walls, step through-wall flashings around and above parapet in a manner that enables proper roof membrane flashing and termination.
- C. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
  - 1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
  - 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. at modular- and utility-sized units and 32 inches o.c. at monarch-sized units.
  - 3. Provide a minimum of two weeps above openings.
- D. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
- E. Install cavity vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing to match weeps. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form cavity vents.
- F. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

- G. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 56 inches.

**3.12 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
  - 6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.

**3.13 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL**

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 04 20 00**

## SECTION 05 52 13 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Steel tube guardrails and handrails.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Handrail brackets.
  - 2. Metal finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 2. Infill of Guards:
    - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.



- b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

## 2.2 PIPE AND TUBE HANDRAILS AND GUARDRAILS

- A. Manufacturers of Components: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Steel Tube: Any major domestic steel pipe producer.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Pipe: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products from any one major domestic manufacturer including the following:
    - a. Blum, Julius & Co., Inc.
    - b. Sterling Dula Architectural Products, Inc; Div. of Kane Manufacturing.
    - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
    - d. Tuttle Railing Systems.
    - e. Wagner, R & B, Inc.
  - 3. Handrail Brackets:
    - a. Stainless Steel Handrail Brackets:
      - 1) Wall Brackets: Stainless-steel with predrilled hole for exposed decorative bolt anchorage with round saddle. Subject to compliance with requirements provide one of the following:
        - a) Blum, Julius & Co., Inc.; bracket - catalog No. 217.
        - b) Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
        - c) Wagner, R & B, Inc.; bracket – catalog No. ER9001.
        - d) Tuttle Railing Systems.
      - b. Wall Bracket anchors:
        - 1) Comply with requirements for anchor strength, material, and wall substrate conditions for anchorage type.
        - 2) Provide with decorative head or head-covering device for finished, tamper-resistant appearance. Design as approved by Architect in submittals.
      - c. Brackets for attaching handrails to posts of guardrail assemblies: Custom shop fabricated assembly indicated on the drawings or if not indicated, as follows:
        - 1) Plain round steel bar ½-inch diameter formed to a 90-degree tight bend.
        - 2) Horizontal segment length as required to position handrail 1-1/2-inches clear of rail posts or other obstructions. Centerline of vertical stem segment to be at centerline of hand railing.
        - 3) Stem segment to be vertical (not perpendicular to railing) 3-inches minimum height with a shop-welded steel saddle attached to match the slope of the hand railing.
        - 4) Saddle shall be minimum 10-gauge steel 1-1/4-inches wide and approximately 3-inches long formed to match outside diameter curvature of handrail.
          - a) Provide 2 uniformly spaced holes for attaching handrail to bracket. Coordinate hole size with steel anchor to be used for hand rail attachment.
          - b) Saddle may be positioned off-center with the stem if necessary to enable working-space to the anchor on the down-slope side.
        - 5) Uniformly ease all corners and edges, and grind all welds smooth, blended into joined surfaces, free of all burrs, sharp conditions and imperfections.
  - B. Manufacturers of Assembled Railings: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Factory fabricated by one of the national manufacturer indicated above, or;
    - 2. Shop fabricated by experienced company specializing in the production of welded steel railings who has fabricated welded steel railing assemblies similar to those required by this Project and who can comply fully with requirements.

## 2.3 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 STEEL RAILINGS

- A. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed) or ASTM A513/A513M, Type 5.

- B. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railing Components: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
  2. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.
1. Expansion Bolts for handrail brackets at concrete or solid masonry units:
    - a. Products:
      - 1) Hilti; Kwik Bolt 3.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Trubolt.
      - 3) Powers Fasteners; Power-Stud.
    2. Injection Adhesive Anchors for handrail brackets at hollow concrete masonry units:
      - a. Adhesive: Two-component, formulated to include resin, hardener, cement and water to provide optimal curing speed as well as high strength and stiffness.
      - b. Products:
        - 1) Hilti, Inc. "HIT HY 70".
        - 2) Red Head "Epcon A7 Acrylic Adhesive".
        - 3) Powers Fasteners "AC100+ Gold Acrylic Adhesive".
      - c. Provide umbrella inserts where recommended by the manufacturer for use in hollow-core CMU.
      - d. Provide 3/8-inch diameter by minimum 2-inch long bolts.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
1. For stainless steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion, complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- D. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
  2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.

1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- F. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 welds; ornamental quality with no evidence of a welded joint
- H. Form changes in direction by flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.
- I. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- J. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.
- K. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- L. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
1. At brackets and fittings fastened to gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- M. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work.
1. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
  2. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

## 2.8 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.
1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
  2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.

3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.

B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.2 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

### 3.3 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Leave anchorage joint exposed with anchoring material flush with adjacent surface.

### 3.4 ATTACHING RAILINGS TO WALLS

A. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

1. Use type of bracket indicated and approved in submittals.

B. Secure wall brackets to building construction as follows:

1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion bolts.
2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use injection adhesive anchors.
3. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

### 3.5 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

### 3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean stainless steel railings and brackets by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

**END OF SECTION 05 52 13**

## **SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wood blocking and nailers.
  - 2. Wood-preservative-treated lumber.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for plywood sheathing over the wood trusses.
  - 2. Section 06 17 53 "Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses" for wood trusses made from dimension lumber.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Post-installed anchors.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - 3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1, Use categories as follows:
  - 1. UC3A (All Other Commodity Specifications): Coated products excluding sawn products in exterior construction not in contact with ground, exposed to all weather cycles but protected from liquid water. Include the following items:
    - a. Wood nailers.
    - b. Wood sill plates that are installed over concrete masonry units.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Sill plate.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

## 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, ICC-ES AC58, ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

## 2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. MiTek Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
  - 3. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
- B. Anchor Bolts: Stainless steel where embedded in masonry grout.

- C. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those of basis-of-design products. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G60 coating designation.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
  - 1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.
- F. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
  - 1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- G. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to CMU; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- E. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- F. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- I. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).



2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

J. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with indicated fastener patterns where applicable.

2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD SILL PLATES, BLOCKING, AND NAILERS

A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

C. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.

2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION 06 10 00**

**SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof sheathing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing, Walls: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

2.2 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing, Walls: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 40/20.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 19/32 inch.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:

- a. Nail to wood framing.
- b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

**END OF SECTION 06 16 00**

## **SECTION 06 17 53 - SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wood roof trusses.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Trusses: Planar structural units consisting of metal-plate-connected members fabricated from dimension lumber and cut and assembled before delivery to Project site.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For metal-plate connectors, metal truss accessories, and fasteners.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for trusses.
  - 1. Show location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required.
  - 2. Indicate sizes, stress grades, and species of lumber.
  - 3. Indicate locations of permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
  - 4. Indicate locations, sizes, and materials for permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
  - 5. Indicate type, size, material, finish, design values, orientation, and location of metal connector plates.
  - 6. Show splice details and bearing details.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For metal connector-plate manufacturer, professional engineer and fabricator.
- B. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum specific gravity. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and specific gravity.
- C. Product Certificates: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses, signed by officer of truss-fabricating firm.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Metal-plate connectors.
  - 2. Metal truss accessories.

#### **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Metal Connector-Plate Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 for manufacture of connector plates.
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
  - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that participates in a recognized quality-assurance program, complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1, and involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and store trusses to comply with recommendations in SBCA BCSI, "Building Component Safety Information: Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining, & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
  - 1. Store trusses flat, off of ground, and adequately supported to prevent lateral bending.
  - 2. Protect trusses from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
  - 3. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Inspect trusses showing discoloration, corrosion, or other evidence of deterioration. Discard and replace trusses that are damaged or defective.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
- B. Structural Performance: Metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall be capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.
  - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  - 2. Maximum Deflection under Design Loads:
    - a. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of span.
- C. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of TPI 1, TPI DSB, and SBCA BCSI.
- D. Wood Structural Design Standard: Comply with applicable requirements in AF&PA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."

#### 2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee (ALSC) Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S.
  - 4. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- B. Minimum Chord Size for Roof Trusses: 2 by 6 inches nominal for top chords 2 by 4 inches nominal for bottom chords.
- C. Permanent Bracing: Provide wood bracing that complies with requirements for miscellaneous lumber in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

#### 2.3 METAL CONNECTOR PLATES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.; a division of ITW Building Components Group, Inc.
  - 2. Cherokee Metal Products, Inc.; Masengill Machinery Company.
  - 3. Eagle Metal Products.
  - 4. MiTek Industries, Inc.
- B. Fabricate connector plates to comply with TPI 1.

- C. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G60 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
  - 1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, and not less than 0.035 inch thick.
  - 1. Use for exterior locations, wood-preservative-treated lumber, and where indicated.

## 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Provide fasteners for use with metal framing anchors that comply with written recommendations of metal framing manufacturer.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.

## 2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  - 2. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
  - 3. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
- B. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall comply with or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G60 coating designation.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
  - 1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20, with dry film containing a minimum of 92 percent zinc dust by weight.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Cut truss members to accurate lengths, angles, and sizes to produce close-fitting joints.
- B. Fabricate metal connector plates to sizes, configurations, thicknesses, and anchorage details required to withstand design loads for types of joint designs indicated.
- C. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated; use jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly, with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances in TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
  - 1. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances in TPI 1.

- D. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously in both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform special inspections.
  - 1. Provide special inspector with access to fabricator's documentation of detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures that provide a basis for inspection control of the workmanship and the fabricator's ability to conform to approved construction documents and referenced standards.
  - 2. Provide special inspector with access to places where wood trusses are being fabricated to perform inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that special inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
- B. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
- C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
- D. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
- E. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
- F. Space trusses as indicated; adjust and align trusses in location before permanently fastening.
- G. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchors according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
- H. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
  - 1. Anchor trusses to girder trusses as indicated.
- I. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
  - 1. Install bracing to comply with Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry."
- J. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.
- K. Do not alter trusses in field. Do not cut, drill, notch, or remove truss members.
- L. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not comply with requirements.
  - 1. Damaged trusses may be repaired according to truss repair details signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for truss design, when approved by Architect.

### 3.2 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood trusses from weather. If, despite protection, wood trusses become wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces according to ASTM A780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

**3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform special inspections to verify that temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

**END OF SECTION 06 17 53**



## SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
    - a. Perimeter insulation under slabs-on-grade.
  2. Glass-fiber blanket.
  3. Loose-fill insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for insulation installed in behind brick veneer in cavity walls.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
  3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards." Roman numeral designators in ASTM C 578 are assigned in a fixed random sequence, and their numeric order does not reflect increasing strength or other characteristics.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Kingspan Insulation North America.
    - d. Owens Corning.

#### 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. Johns Manville.
  3. Knauf Insulation.
  4. Owens Corning.
- B. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
1. Provide at locations where indicated and where insulation is encapsulated by gypsum.

### 2.3 LOOSE-FILL INSULATION

- A. Glass-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II Type I for pneumatic application or for poured application.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Close all gaps and voids between the interior and the exterior and between the interior and the cavity of exterior cavity wall construction. Ensure that the thermal envelope of the building is completely closed and sealed against thermal leaks.
  - 1. Provide supplemental support system if necessary to assure insulation remains in place for the life of the building.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF PERIMETER AND UNDER-SLAB INSULATION

- A. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches in from exterior walls.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
  - 1. Tape or seal all panel joints.
  - 2. Fill all open gaps in insulation with low-rise, expanding foam compatible with insulation and sheathing.
  - 3. Install air barrier flashings from face of insulation board into all window, door and similar head, jamb and sill openings and at roof to ensure tie-in and complete closure of the whole-building air barrier system.
  - 4. Install air barrier flashings to face of insulation behind metal hat channels where fasteners penetrate insulation.
- C. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

D. Loose-Fill Insulation: Apply in accordance with ASTM C1015 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
2. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with CIMA's Bulletin #2, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."

E. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown and where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:

1. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Thermal Barrier: Apply over exposed spray polyurethane insulation and according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

**END OF SECTION 07 21 00**

**SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wall sheet metal fabrications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for membrane flashing specified as part of masonry work.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans and elevations. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
  - 1. Identify material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
  - 2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
  - 3. Details for fastening, joining, supporting, and anchoring sheet metal flashing and trim, including fasteners, clips, cleats, and attachments to adjoining work.
  - 4. Details of expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. 8-inch square samples of specified sheet materials to be exposed as finished surfaces.

**1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experience Installer who has completed sheet metal flashing and trim work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. SMACNA and NRCA: Except as otherwise indicated, the workmanship of sheet metal work, method for forming joints, thickness requirements, anchoring, cleating, and provisions for expansion shall conform to the standard details and recommendation of the SMACNA - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, Sixth Edition and NRCA – Roofing and Waterproofing Manual. If there is a discrepancy between these references and the project specifications and drawings, the stricter requirements shall govern.

**1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.

- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sheet metal flashing and trim with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leak-proof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Prepainted, Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755.
  - 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40; structural quality.
  - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities, but not less than 40.
  - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

#### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

- B. Fasteners: Same metal as sheet metal flashing or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer designed to withstand design loads.
  - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal by means of factory-applied coating.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

#### 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Shop fabricate items where practicable. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- C. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA recommendations.
- D. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in the Work cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with elastomeric sealant concealed within joints.
- E. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Blind rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- F. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible on exposed-to-view sheet metal flashing and trim.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. Verify wood blocking is in-place, secure and in proper relationship to face of wall below.
- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Coordinate installation fully with roof membrane and membrane flashings; do not install metal trims on irregular, missing, or improper membranes.
- B. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

3. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
  4. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator or manufacturers of dissimilar metals.
1. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.
- D. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
- E. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
1. Prepainted, Metallic-Coated Steel: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- F. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required for watertight construction.
1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Apply sealant manufacturer approved/recommended primer to both sides of metal joint prior to application of sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 62 00**

## **SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Immersible joint sealants.
2. Silyl-terminated polyether joint sealants.
3. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
4. Latex joint sealants.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for sealant installed in control joints in rooms designated to have exposed, sealed concrete floors.

#### **1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:**

1. For each joint-sealant product.
2. Joint-sealant backing materials.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection:** Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

- C. Samples for Verification:** For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

**D. Joint-Sealant Schedule:** Include the following information:

1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
3. Joint-sealant color.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data:** For installer.

- B. Sample warranties.**

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Manufacturers' special warranties.**

- B. Installer's special warranties.**

#### **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications:** Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

#### **1.7 MOCKUPS**

- A. Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.**



1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  2. When joint substrates are wet.
  3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 IMMERSIBLE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Immersible Joint Sealants. Suitable for immersion in liquids; ASTM C1247, Class 1; tested in deionized water unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Urethane, Immersible, M, NS, or P 25, T, NT, I: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T, NT, and I.
1. Applications:
    - a. Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces including tile control and expansion joints;
    - b. All other interior traffic joints not included otherwise.
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASE; MasterSeal NP 150.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; DynaTred.
    - c. Sika Corporation U.S.; Sikaflex 2x NS.
    - d. Tremco; Dymeric 240 FC.

3. Color Selection Range: Standard or custom colors providing minimum wide-range selection from at least 50 choices.

#### 2.4 SILYL-TERMINATED POLYETHER (STPE) JOINT SEALANTS

- A. STPE, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  1. Applications:
    - a. Exterior joints in vertical and overhead surfaces including:
      - 1) Control joints in unit masonry;
      - 2) Window, door frame, storefront, and louver perimeter joints (both interior and exterior side of opening).
      - 3) All other exterior non-traffic joints not included otherwise.
    - b. Interior joints in vertical and overhead surfaces including:
      - 1) Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls (both above and below ceilings);
      - 2) Perimeter joints of exterior openings;
      - 3) Control joints on exposed unit masonry walls.
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF; MasterSeal NP 2.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL Hybrid.
    - c. Soudal USA; SoudaSeal 50LM.
  3. Color Selection Range: Standard or custom colors providing minimum wide-range selection from at least 50 choices.

#### 2.5 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  1. Applications: Interior joints in vertical surfaces of:
    - a. Ceramic tile;
    - b. Non-porous surfaces in areas of moisture and high humidity including toilet rooms, showers and kitchens;
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Performance Silicones; Dowsil 786 Silicone Sealant.
    - b. Momentive Performance Materials Inc./GE Silicones; SCS1700 Sanitary.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 898NST.
    - d. Soudal USA; SoudaSeal RTV2
    - e. Tremco; Tremsil 200.

#### 2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  1. Applications:
    - a. Interior vertical and overhead surfaces at perimeter of wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and borrowed lights.
    - b. Perimeter of gypsum board surfaces where they abut another material.
    - c. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and countertops, backsplashes, fixed equipment, and other elements to produce a finished, cleanable, craftsman-like appearance.
    - d. All other interior nontraffic joints not included otherwise.
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF; MasterSeal NP 520.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; PWC.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 +Silicone.
    - d. Soudal USA; Soudacryl C834.
    - e. Tremco; Tremflex 834.

**2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING**

- A. **General:** Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. **Cylindrical Sealant Backings:** ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. **Bond-Breaker Tape:** Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

**2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. **Primer:** Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. **Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces:** Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. **Masking Tape:** Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. **Surface Cleaning of Joints:** Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. **Joint Priming:** Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. **Masking Tape:** Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

**3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. **General:** Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. **Sealant Installation Standard:** Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

**END OF SECTION 07 92 00**

## **SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Standard hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for installing anchors and grouting frames in masonry construction.
  - 2. Section 08 71 10 "Door Hardware" for door hardware and weather stripping for hollow metal doors and frames.
  - 3. Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" for glass in glazed openings in hollow metal frames.
  - 4. Section 09 91 12 "Painting" for field painting factory-primed hollow metal doors and frames.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door type and frame type.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of anchorages, joints, and connections.
  - 6. Details of accessories.
  - 7. Details of removable stops, and glazing.
- C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.
- D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide hollow metal doors and frames designated on drawings as "HM" by one of the following:
1. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group Co.
  2. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group Co.
  3. Daybar Industries Ltd.
  4. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
  5. Republic Doors and Frames.
  6. Security Metal Products Corp. an Assa Abloy Group Co.
  7. Steelcraft; an Allegion company.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4.
- B. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.55 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.

### 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3.>
1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, **with minimum A60 coating.**
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Core: Vertical steel stiffener **with insulation.**
  2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, **with minimum A60 coating .**
    - b. Construction: Face welded.
  3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

### 2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Provide all hollow metal doors receiving electrified hardware with conduit for field wiring of door by door hardware supplier.
- C. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSSPI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A at exterior openings.
1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A60 coating.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Core: Vertical steel stiffener with insulation.
  2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A60 coating.
    - b. Construction: Face welded.
  3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch thick, and as follows:
  - 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- C. Frame Anchors: ASTM A879, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008 or ASTM A1011, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C143.
- F. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors:
  - 1. Steel-Stiffened Door Cores: Provide minimum thickness 0.026 inch, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than 6 inches apart. Spot weld to face sheets not more than 5 inches o.c. Fill spaces between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
  - 2. Fire Door Cores: As required to provide fire-protection ratings indicated.
  - 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Provide beveled or square edges at manufacturer's discretion.
  - 4. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with inverted closures, except provide flush closures at exterior doors of same material as face sheets.
  - 5. Bottom Edge Closures: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
  - 6. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
  - 7. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
  - 8. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
- C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.

1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
  2. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
  3. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Fill fastener head and recess with metal filler and sand smooth.
  4. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
  5. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor.
  6. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
    - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
      - 1) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
      - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
      - 3) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
    - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
      - 1) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
      - 2) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
      - 3) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
      - 4) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
  7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
  8. Integrated electrical junction boxes, conduit / wiring pathways for hollow metal E-frames shall be fully assembled in the factory and provided with nylon pull string through all conduit between all junction boxes
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
  3. For all E-frames, shop-fit frames with conduit system providing internal boxes for wiring installation to all current or potential future electric hardware and door monitoring positions and include 'pigtail' conduit with the system of adequate length to extend 2-feet above the nearest accessible ceiling space.
    - a. Note this is required whether or not the door is currently indicated to have electric hardware or security monitoring devices.
  4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections.
- F. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work unless noted otherwise on Drawings.
  2. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
  3. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
  4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
- 2.8 STEEL FINISHES
- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.



1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
  1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
    - a. Coordinate frame installation with electrical and technologies contractors for connection of conduit to electrical junction boxes of all frames with integrated electrical conduit/wiring pathways.
    - b. Place frames before construction of enclosing walls and ceilings.
    - c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
    - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
    - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
    - f. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
    - g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames, including EMT conduit and wiring boxes, that are filled with grout. Allow coating to set before grouting frame.
  2. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
  3. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
  4. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

#### **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- B. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- C. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 08 11 13**

## **SECTION 08 36 13 - SECTIONAL OVERHEAD STEEL DOORS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 08 71 10 "Door Hardware" for lock cylinders and keying.
  - 2. Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" for insulated glazing units at door panels.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory. Include the following:
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish samples on actual material(s) to be provided showing full range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes. Note: printed and photographic representations of colors are not acceptable; actual product samples are required.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranty and finish warranty.

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Finish warranty.

#### **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities" and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
  - b. Faulty operation of hardware.
  - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
  - d. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.
2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS, GENERAL**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.
1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Provide sectional doors that comply with performance requirements specified without failure from defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction and without requiring temporary installation of reinforcing components.
- B. Structural Performance: Capable of withstanding the design wind loads.
1. Design Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward and outward.
  2. Testing: In accordance with ASTM E330 or DASMA 108 for garage doors and complying with DASMA 108 acceptance criteria.
  3. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
    - a. Deflection of door sections in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed 1/120 of door width.
    - b. Deflection of horizontal track assembly shall not exceed 1/240 of door height.

### **2.3 SECTIONAL-DOOR ASSEMBLY**

- A. Steel Sectional Door: Provide sectional door formed with hinged sections and fabricated so that finished door assembly is rigid and aligned with tight hairline joints; free of warp, twist, and deformation; and complies with requirements in DASMA 102.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Clopay Building Products; a Griffon company.
    - b. Overhead Door Corporation.
    - c. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 20,000 operation cycles. One operation cycle is complete when door is opened from closed position to the open position and returned to closed position.
- C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 0.4 cfm/sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 or DASMA 105.
- D. U-Value: 0.052 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F
- E. Steel Door Sections: ASTM A653, zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled, commercial steel sheet with G90 zinc coating.
1. Door-Section Thickness: 1-3/4 inches minimum.
  2. Section Faces:
    - a. Thermal-Break Construction: Provide sections with continuous thermal-break construction separating the exterior and interior faces of door.
    - b. Exterior Face: Fabricated from single sheets, not more than 24 inches) high; with horizontal meeting edges rolled to continuous, interlocking, keyed, rabbeted, shiplap, or tongue-in-groove, weather- and pinch-resistant seals and reinforcing flange return.
      - 1) Steel Sheet Thickness: 0.040-inch nominal coated thickness.
      - 2) Surface: Manufacturer's standard, flat.

- c. Interior Face: Enclose insulation completely within steel exterior facing and interior facing material, with no exposed insulation. Provide the following interior-facing material:
            - 1) Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: With minimum nominal coated thickness of 0.028 inch.
  - 3. End Stiles and Intermediate Stiles: Enclose open ends of sections with channel end stiles formed from galvanized-steel sheet not less than 0.064-inch- nominal coated thickness and welded to door section.
  - 4. Intermediate stiles formed from not less than 0.064-inch- thick galvanized-steel sheet, cut to door section profile, and welded in place. Space stiles not more than 48 inches apart.
  - 5. Reinforce sections with continuous horizontal and diagonal reinforcement, as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Provide galvanized-steel bars, struts, trusses, or strip steel, formed to depth and bolted or welded in place. Ensure that reinforcement does not obstruct vision lites.
    - a. Bottom Section: Reinforce bottom section with a continuous channel or angle conforming to bottom-section profile.
    - b. Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
  - 6. Thermal Insulation: Insulate interior of steel sections with door manufacturer's standard thermal insulation of type indicated below:
    - a. Board Insulation: Polystyrene or polyurethane, secured to exterior face sheet.
    - b. Foamed-in-Place Insulation: Polyurethane, foamed in place to completely fill interior of section and pressure bonded to face sheets to prevent delamination under wind load.
    - c. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, in accordance with ASTM E84.
- F. Tracks: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel track system of configuration indicated, sized for door size and weight, designed for lift type indicated and clearances shown on Drawings. Provide complete track assembly including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement for rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides for required door type and size.
- 1. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A653, minimum G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
  - 2. Size: As recommended in writing by manufacturer for door size, weight, track configuration and door clearances indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Provide galvanized-steel members to support track without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors. Slot vertical sections of track spaced 2 inches (51 mm) apart for door-drop safety device.
    - a. Vertical Track Assembly: Incline vertical track to ensure weathertight closure at jambs. Provide continuous angle attached to track and attached to wall with jamb brackets.
    - b. Horizontal Track: Provide continuous reinforcing angle from curve in track to end of track, attached to track and supported at points by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members.
- G. Weatherseals: Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene fitted to bottom and top of sectional door unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Windows: Manufacturer's standard window units of shape and size and in locations indicated on Drawings. Set glazing in vinyl, rubber, or neoprene glazing channel. Provide removable stops of same material as door-section frames. Provide the following glazing:
- 1. Refer to Section 08 80 00 for glazing requirements.
- I. Hardware: Provide heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
- 1. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than 0.079-inch- nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, according to manufacturer's written recommendations for door size. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is not possible. Provide double-end hinges where required, for doors over 16 feet wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer.
    - a. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is impossible.
    - b. Provide double-end hinges where required for doors more than 16 ft. (4.88 m) wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer in writing.
  - 2. Rollers: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. Match roller-tire diameter to track width.
    - a. Roller-Tire Material: Manufacturer's standard

Push/Pull Handles: Equip each door with galvanized-steel lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.

- J. Locking Device:
1. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on single-jamb side, operable from inside only.
  2. Locking Device Assembly: Fabricate with cylinder lock, spring-loaded deadbolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.
    - a. Lock Cylinders: Cylinders complying with Section 087100 "Door Hardware" requirements.
    - b. Keying: Keyed to building keying system.
    - c. Keys: Two for each cylinder.
  3. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.
- K. Counterbalance Mechanism
1. Torsion Spring: Counterbalance mechanism consisting of adjustable-tension torsion springs fabricated from steel-spring wire complying with ASTM A 229/A 229M, mounted on torsion shaft made of solid steel. Provide springs designed for number of operation cycles indicated.
  2. Cable Drums and Shaft for Doors: Cast-aluminum or gray-iron casting cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised.
    - a. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft.
    - b. Provide one additional midpoint bracket for shafts up to 16 feet long and two additional brackets at one-third points to support shafts more than 16 feet long unless closer spacing is recommended by door manufacturer.
  3. Cables: Galvanized-steel lifting cables with cable safety factor of at least 7 to 1.
  4. Cable Safety Device: Include a spring-loaded steel or spring-loaded bronze cam mounted to bottom door roller assembly on each side and designed to automatically stop door if either lifting cable breaks.
  5. Bracket: Provide anchor support bracket as required to connect stationary end of spring to the wall and to level the shaft and prevent sag.
  6. Bumper: Provide a spring bumper at each horizontal track to cushion door at end of opening operation.
- L. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- M. Steel And Galvanized-Steel Finishes
1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.

- B. Tracks:
  - 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing, spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
  - 2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
  - 3. Repair galvanized coating on tracks according to ASTM A 780.
- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weathertight fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Align and adjust pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Touchup Painting Galvanized Material: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

**END OF SECTION 08 36 13**

## **SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
    - a. Swinging doors.
    - b. Sectional overhead doors doors.
  - 2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 08 11 13 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames"
  - 2. Section 08 36 13 "Sectional Overhead Steel Doors"

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as installation procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
    - a. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
    - b. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule." Double space entries, and number and date each page. Horizontal format schedules are not acceptable and will be returned as not reviewed.
    - c. Format: Use same scheduling sequence, format, opening numbers, and hardware set numbers as in the Contract Documents.
    - d. Content: Include the following information:
      - 1) Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
      - 2) Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
      - 3) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
      - 4) Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
      - 5) Mounting locations for door hardware.
      - 6) List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.
  - 2. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
- B. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

- C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Include final hardware and keying schedule.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.

- 1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
- 2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.

- B. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is currently certified by DHI as follows:

- 1. For door hardware, an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).

- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from a single manufacturer.

- D. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbfto release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

- E. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

- 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf
- 2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
  - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
  - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf applied parallel to door at latch.
  - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
- 4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.

- F. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." In addition to Owner, Construction Manager, Contractor, and Architect, conference participants shall also include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:

- 1. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
- 2. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
- 3. Requirements for key control system.
- 4. Requirements for access control.
- 5. Address for delivery of keys.

- G. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Construction Manager's field office. All relevant trades must attend including, but not limited to, Architect, Construction Manager, Hardware Supplier, General Contractor, Aluminum Storefront Contractor, Hardware Installer, Electrician, and Cabling Contractor.

- 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- 2. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
- 3. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- 4. Coordinate with other trades requirements for conduit, raceways, and power for installation of Access Control Hardware and Automatic Door Operators.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.



- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
- C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.
- D. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
    - b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
  - 2. Warranty Period: One year from date of Contract Completion, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Exit Devices: Three years from date of Contract Completion (Mechanical Parts).
    - b. Manual Closers: Ten years from date of Contract Completion.
    - c. Locksets: Five years from date of Contract Completion.

#### 1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Contract Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door and door hardware operation. Provide parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Provide door hardware for each door as scheduled in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article to comply with requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article. Products are identified by descriptive titles corresponding to requirements specified in Part 2.

#### 2.2 HINGES

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ives
    - b. Hager Companies.
    - c. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- B. Antifriction-Bearing Hinges:

1. Mounting: Full mortise (butts).
2. Bearing Material: Manufacturer's standard antifriction bearing.
3. Grade: Grade 1 (heavy weight), Grade 2 (standard weight).
4. Base and Pin Metal:
  - a. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin.
  - b. Interior Hinges: Steel with steel pin] [Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin].
  - c. Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Steel with steel pin.
5. Pins: Nonremovable.
  - a. Outswinging Exterior Doors: Nonremovable.
  - b. Outswinging Corridor Doors with Locks: Nonremovable.
6. Tips: Flat button.
7. Corners: Square.

## 2.3 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. Continuous Hinges: BHMA A156.26; minimum 0.120-inch-thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of 4 inches fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.
- B. Continuous, Gear-Type Hinges: Extruded-aluminum, pinless, geared hinge leaves joined by a continuous extruded-aluminum channel cap; with concealed, self-lubricating thrust bearings.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
    - b. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
    - c. Select Products Limited.
    - d. Stanley.
  2. Grade: Grade 1-600.
  3. Mounting: Concealed leaf.

## 2.4 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Lock Trim:
  1. Description: Curved lever as indicated in sets.
  2. Levers: Cast.
    - a. 03 Lever as indicated in sets.
  3. Roses: Wrought.
  4. Operating Device: Lever with escutcheons.
- D. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
  1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
- E. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational Grade 1; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Schlage L Series.
    - b. Corbin-Russwin ML2000 Series.
    - c. Best 40H Series.
  2. Backset: 2-3/4 inches
  3. Material: Stainless steel.

## 2.5 MANUAL FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16; minimum 3/4-inch throw; designed for mortising into door edge.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
    - b. Door Controls International, Inc.

c. Trimco.

- B. Manual-Extension Flush Bolts: Grade 1, fabricated from extruded brass or aluminum, with 12-inch rod actuated by flat lever. Provide with matching dustproof strike.
- C. Dustproof Strikes: Grade 1, polished wrought brass, with 3/4-inch-diameter, spring-tension plunger.

2.6 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Schlage
  - B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1; permanent cores that are removable; face finished to match lockset.
    - 1. Number of Pins: Six.
  - C. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores where indicated. Provide disposable plastic cores for all other cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

2.7 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
  - 1. Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, a grand master key, and a great-grand master key operate cylinders.
  - 2. Existing System:
    - a. Master key or grand master key locks to existing system.
- B. Keys: Nickel silver.
  - 1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
    - a. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
  - 2. Quantity: In addition to one extra key blank for each lock, provide the following:
    - a. Cylinder Change Keys: Two.
    - b. Master Keys: Five.
    - c. Grand Master Keys: Five.

2.8 OPERATING TRIM

- A. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6; stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
    - a. IVES Hardware; An Ingersoll-Rand Company.
    - b. Hager Companies.
    - c. Hiawatha, Inc.
    - d. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Trimco.

2.9 SURFACE CLOSERS AND LOW ENERGY OPERATORS

- A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - Surface:
      - a. LCN Closers 4041XP.
      - b. Corbin-Russwin DC8000 Series.
- B. Surface Closers: Grade 1; Traditional Type with mechanism enclosed in cast-iron or aluminum shell.
  - 1. Mounting: Interior of room, away from corridor.

2. Backcheck: Adjustable, effective between 60 and 85 degrees of door opening.
3. Cover Material: Metal.
4. Closing Power Adjustment: Adjustable from size 1-6.
5. No pressure relief valves allowed. (PRV)

#### 2.10 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16; cast brass, bronze, or aluminum, or stainless steel base metal.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
    - b. Baldwin Hardware Corporation.
    - c. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated.
    - d. Hager Companies.
    - e. Hiawatha, Inc.
    - f. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
    - g. Trimco.
- B. Rigid-Type Floor Stop: Grade 1; with rubber bumper; for expansion-shield application.
- C. Dome-Type Floor Stop: Grade 1; with minimum 1-inch-high bumper for doors without threshold and 1-3/8-inch-high bumper for doors with threshold.
- D. Wall Bumpers: Grade 1; with rubber bumper; 2-1/2-inch diameter, minimum 3/4-inch projection from wall; solid cast brass, bronze, or stainless steel; with concave bumper configuration.
- E. Plunger-Type Door Holders: Grade 1; minimum 1-1/8-inch plunger throw; with replaceable rubber tip; for surface-screw application.

#### 2.11 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; air leakage not to exceed 0.50 cfm per foot of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. National Guard Products.
    - b. Zero International.
    - c. Hager Companies.
    - d. Pemko Manufacturing Co.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
    - e. Reese Enterprises, Inc.
- B. Rigid, Housed, Perimeter Gasketing: Sponge neoprene gasket material held in place by bar stock aluminum housing; fastened to frame stop with screws.
- C. Door Sweeps: Neoprene gasket material held in place by flat aluminum housing or flange; surface mounted to face of door with screws.
- D. Automatic Door Bottoms: Sponge neoprene gasket material held in place by aluminum housing that automatically drops to form seal when door is closed; mounted to bottom edge of door with screws.
1. Mounting: Surface mounted on face of door.
  2. Type: Low-closing-force type for doors required to meet accessibility requirements.

#### 2.12 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. National Guard Products.
    - b. Zero International.
    - c. Hager Companies.
    - d. Pemko Manufacturing Co.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
    - e. Reese Enterprises, Inc.
- B. Saddle Thresholds:

1. Type: Fluted top, barrier free.
2. Base Metal: Aluminum.

C. Latching/Rabbeted Thresholds with Gasket: Fluted-top metal member with gasket.

1. Type: Offset.
2. Base Metal: Aluminum.
3. Gasket Material: Neoprene.

D. Plate Thresholds: Solid metal plate.

1. Top Surface: Fluted.
2. Base Metal: Aluminum.

2.13 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from 0.050-inch-thick stainless steel; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
  - b. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated.
  - c. Hiawatha, Inc.
  - d. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
  - e. Trimco.

B. Kick Plates: 10 inches high by door width with allowance for frame stops.

2.14 AUXILIARY DOOR HARDWARE

A. Auxiliary Hardware: BHMA A156.16.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
  - b. Hager Companies.
  - c. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
  - d. Trimco.

B. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: Grade 1; neoprene or rubber; minimum diameter 1/2 inch; fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.

2.15 FABRICATION

A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location.

1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.

B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.

C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
2. Fire-Rated Applications:
  - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
    - 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames; use threaded-to-the-head wood screws for wood doors.
    - 2) Strike plates to frames.
    - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
  - b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following:

- 1) Surface hinges to doors.
- 2) Closers to doors and frames.
- 3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
3. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
4. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."
5. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

## 2.16 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, all and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
  1. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- E. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- F. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- G. Stops: Provide wall stops for doors unless floor or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
- H. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb prior to mounting closer shoe or panic strikes, forming seal between door and frame. Coordinate templates accordingly.
- I. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- J. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Hardware supplier will engage a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.
  - 1. Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  - 1. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
  - 2. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately six months after date of Substantial Completion, Hardware Installer shall examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

**Set #01**

Doors: 3001A

2	Continuous Hinge	112XY 83"	628	IV
1	Mortise Deadbolt	L9463J	626	SC
1	Interchangeable Core	23-030 50-215 EVEREST 29 T-RESTRICTED KWY	626	SC
1	Interchangeable Core	23-030 ICX	626	SC

**Set #01**

1	Cylinder Housing	20-059 XQ11-948	630	SC
2	Flush Bolts	112XY83" TEK	US32D	IV
1	Strike	DP1	US26D	IV
1	Closer	4111 SCUSH MC SRI	AL	LC
1	Protection Plate	8400 10" X 35"	US32D	IV
1	Astragal	55 AA 84"		ZE
1	Gasketing	429AA 1 x 72" 2 x 84"		ZE
1	Length of Rain Drip	142AA 76"		ZE
1	Threshold	65A 72" 224-MSLA-4	AL	ZE

**Set #02**

Doors: 2001A, 2001C, 3001B

1	Continuous Hinge	112XY 83"	628	IV
1	Mortise Storeroom Lockset	L9080J 03A	626	SC
1	Interchangeable Core	23-030 50-215 EVEREST 29 T-RESTRICTED KWY	626	SC
1	Closer	4111 SCUSH MC SRI	AL	LC
1	Gasketing	429AA 1 x 36" 2 x 84"		ZE
1	Threshold	65A 36" 226 ANCHORS	AL	ZE

**END OF SECTION 08 71 00**



**SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Glass products.
  - 2. Insulating glass.
  - 3. Glazing sealants.
  - 4. Glazing tapes.
  - 5. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturers of fabricated glass units.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Cleaning instructions and perimeter seal and gasket inspection instructions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved and certified by primary glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors and who employs glazing technicians certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Primary Glass Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide primary glass products by one of the following:
1. AGC Flat Glass North America.
  2. Cardinal Glass Industries.
  3. Guardian Industries Corp.
  4. Pilkington Building Products North America.
  5. Vitro Architectural Glass.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand specified thermal movement, wind loads, and normal impacts without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: shading from architectural arrangement on building or in frame, defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E1300.
1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph.
    - b. Importance Factor: 1.15.

- c. Exposure Category: C.
  2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
  3. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  5. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
  6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

### 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
1. NGA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
  2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
- E. Strength: Provide fully tempered float glass for all glass lites whether or not indicated on the Drawings.

### 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sputter-Coated Float Glass: ASTM C1376, float glass with metallic-oxide or -nitride coating deposited by vacuum deposition process after manufacture and heat treatment (if any), and complying with other requirements specified.

### 2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary.
  2. Spacer: Nonmetallic tube.
  3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.

## 2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. **Compatibility:** Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  2. **Suitability:** Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  3. **Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants:** As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
- B. **Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 100/50:** Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.

## 2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. **Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes:** Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. **General:** Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. **Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers:** Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. **Setting Blocks:** Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. **Spacers:** Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. **Edge Blocks:** Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

## 2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. **Fabricate glazing units** in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. **Temperature Change:** 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. **Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges** of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. **Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.**

## 2.10 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. **Glass Type (G-1):** Clear fully tempered float glass.
1. **Thickness:** 6.0 mm.

## 2.11 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. **Glass Type (IG-1):** Low-E-coated, clear insulating glass.

1. Low-E Coating Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:
  - a. AGC Flat Glass North America; Energy Select 28.
  - b. Cardinal Glass Industries; LoE-366.
  - c. Guardian; SunGuard SNX62/27.
  - d. Viracon; VNE 1-63 Low E.
  - e. Vitro Architectural Glass; Solarban 70 XL.
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Clear, fully tempered float glass.
5. Interspace Content: Argon.
6. Indoor Lite: Clear, fully tempered float glass.
7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second or third surface.
8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .28 maximum.
9. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .27 maximum.
10. Visible Light Transmittance: 62 percent minimum.
11. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient .28 maximum.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
  3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
  4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed work.

#### **3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:
  1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes

- are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
  - H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
  - I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
  - J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
  - K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter, masonry mortar, and masonry cleaner. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass as soon as practical that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 08 80 00**

## **SECTION 09 22 16 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Light Gauge Metal Framing (LGMF).
  - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Referenced Standards: Provide copies of ASTM Installation Standards referenced in Part 3.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For embossed steel studs and tracks, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 FRAMING SYSTEMS**

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A653, G40 hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645. Use either steel studs and tracks or embossed steel studs and tracks.
  - 1. Standard Studs and Tracks:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch (20 gauge).
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Return (Lip) Dimension at non-rated assemblies: 3/16-inch minimum.
  - 2. Embossed Steel Studs and Tracks: Roll-formed and embossed with surface deformations to stiffen the framing members so that they are structurally equivalent to conventional ASTM C645 steel studs and tracks.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Design Thickness: 0.019 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

#### **2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been

installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754, except comply with framing sizes and spacing indicated.
  - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies. Extend bracing to solid structure or walls.
  - 1. This requirement applies both to wingwall ends and to walls terminating above ceilings where framing does not extend to building structure above whether or not so detailed on the drawings.
  - 2. Spacing for wall bracing: 48-inches on center maximum; stagger direction; avoid piping and ductwork.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Space studs as follows:
    - a. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c., unless closer is indicated.
    - b. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless closer is indicated.
  - 2. Space framing for soffits and bulkheads 16-inches o.c. unless closer is indicated or required for conditions and loads.
  - 3. Coordinate additional stud locations and wood blocking required for wall mounted items.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where wall framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs minimum at each jamb.
    - b. Coordinate stud placement with conduit and electric components for doors with electric or security system hardware; do not permit cutting of jamb-stud flanges.
    - c. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - d. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure whether or not the contiguous wall extends to structure above.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads and as required to support loads of items installed in such opening.
- E. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

**END OF SECTION 09 22 16**



## **SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Interior gypsum board.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
2. Section 07 92 19 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for acoustical joint sealants installed in gypsum board assemblies.
3. Section 09 22 16 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:** For the following:

1. Gypsum board, Type X.
2. Abuse-resistant gypsum board.
3. Trim Accessories: One full-size sample 12-inch- long for each trim accessory indicated.

#### **1.3 MOCKUPS**

**A. Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.**

1. Build mockups for the following:
  - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

**A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.**

#### **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

**A. Environmental Limitations:** Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

**B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.**

**C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.**

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS**

**A. Obtain each type of gypsum panel and joint finishing material from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.**

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.3 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.4 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Gypsum.
  2. CertainTeed Corp.
  3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  4. National Gypsum Company.
  5. PABCO Gypsum.
  6. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  3. Location: Ceiling surfaces, bulkheads and soffits; unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.
1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  2. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  3. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  4. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 2 requirements.
  5. Long Edges: Tapered.
  6. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
  7. Location: All wall surfaces to 4 inches above ceiling and all bulkheads/soffits within 10 feet of floor, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
1. Material: Plastic.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. L-Bead: Not permitted.
    - d. U-Bead: Not permitted.
    - e. Expansion (control) joint: One-piece formed with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.
- B. Contractor Option Interior Trim: No-Coat Structural Laminate trims by CertainTeed may be used as a contractor option. Installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's requirements using manufacturer's recommended tools and equipment.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
  
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
  
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
  
- D. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 07 92 19 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."
  
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840. Provide copy of this standard for on-site reference.
  
- B. Install acoustic sealant according to drawing details and manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. **Note** that this includes *placement of sealant bead before* gypsum board is placed against steel framing in most applications.
  - 2. Non-compliance will require removal of panels and proper re-installation.
  
- C. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
  
- D. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
  
- E. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges

or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

- F. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
  - 1. Verify metal framing is discontinuous at control joint.
  - 2. Locate control joints where indicated on Drawings; if not indicated, plan on providing control joints 30 feet on center for uninterrupted surfaces and request specific locations from Architect before starting framing.
- G. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- H. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- I. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- J. Assemblies with Sound Attenuation Blankets: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- K. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.
- L. Spot grout hollow metal door frames. Apply setting-type joint compound at each jamb anchor clip and immediately insert gypsum panels into frames.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints in accordance with ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.

2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges. Wherever board meets a different material (window frame, CMU wall for example) use LC-Bead held back to form a 1/4-inch neat joint to receive joint sealant.

### 3.5 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and in accordance with ASTM C840:
  1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas and concealed areas.
  2. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view and will receive a flat or eggshell paint finish.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 91 12 "Painting."
  3. Level 5: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view and will receive a semi-gloss paint finish.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 91 12 "Painting."
- E. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Above-Ceiling Observation: Before Contractor installs gypsum board ceilings, Architect will conduct an above-ceiling observation and report deficiencies in the Work observed. Do not proceed with installation of gypsum board to ceiling support framing until deficiencies have been corrected.
  1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of date and time when Project, or part of Project, will be ready for above-ceiling observation.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION 09 29 00**

## **SECTION 09 51 13 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes: Acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.

#### **1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency
- B. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system, from ICC-ES or a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

#### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to NVLAP for testing indicated.

#### **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way. Handle black panels and components with clean gloves.

#### **1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E1264 for Class A materials.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Moisture Resistance: No visible sag under these conditions: 90% to relative humidity and 104 degrees F.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D3274 or ASTM G21.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING: **SAP-1**

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; #1714 School Zone Fine Fissured, High NRC; High CAC.
  - 2. CertainTeed ; HHF-497 HNRC Fine Fissured High NRC.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.; #22541 Radar ClimaPlus High-NRC/High-CAC.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
- C. Properties:
  - 1. Color: White.
  - 2. LR: Not less than 0.83.
  - 3. NRC: Not less than 0.70.
  - 4. CAC: Not less than 40.
  - 5. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.
  - 6. Thickness: 3/4 inch or 7/8 inch.
  - 7. Modular Size: 24 by 48 inches.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C635/C635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.

- C. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A653/A653M, not less than G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
  - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
  - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel or aluminum.
  - 5. Cap Finish: Painted LOW GLOSS WHITE finish.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
  - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member
  - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook".
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Provide (2) hanger wires for lighting fixtures and mechanical services weighing 20 pounds to 56 pounds, attached directly to units; hanger wires may be slack.
    - a. Lighting fixtures and mechanical services weighing more than 56 pounds shall be independently supported.
  - 5. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structural members in a manner that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  - 10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 2. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- D. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- E. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
  - 1. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
  - 2. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION 09 51 13**

## **SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resilient base.
  - 2. Resilient molding accessories.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### **1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

#### **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products listed on the Drawings.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset) or Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 1. Style and Location:
    - a. Style B, Cove.
- C. Properties:
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.125 inch.
  - 2. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.

4. Outside Corners: Job formed.
5. Inside Corners: Job formed.
6. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
7. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Drawings.

## 2.2 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by same manufacturer as resilient base.
- B. Description: Rubber reducer strip for resilient floor covering, joiner for tile and carpet, and transition strips.
  1. ADA compliant.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Stair-Tread Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer.
  4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

G. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
  - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible. Form by cutting an inverted V-shaped notch in toe of wall at base at the point where the corner is formed; do not overlap toe sections. Shave back of base where necessary to produce a snug fit to substrate.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

B. Resilient Stair Accessories:

1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.

C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from marks, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 09 65 13**

## **SECTION 09 65 16 - RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Unbacked vinyl sheet flooring.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient sheet flooring.
  - 1. Include sheet flooring layouts, locations of seams, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 2. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color, texture, and pattern specified, in manufacturer's standard size, but not less than 6-by-9-inch sections.
  - 1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.
- D. Welded-Seam Samples: For seamless-installation technique indicated and for each resilient sheet flooring product, color, and pattern required; with seam running lengthwise and in center of 6-by-9-inch Sample applied to a rigid backing and prepared by Installer for this Project.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient sheet flooring. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of resilient sheet flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Resilient Sheet Flooring: Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, in roll form and in full roll width for each type, color, and pattern of flooring installed.

#### **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for resilient sheet flooring installation and seaming method indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for installation techniques required.

#### **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store resilient sheet flooring and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store rolls upright.

**1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 85 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient sheet flooring during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resilient sheet flooring installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after resilient sheet flooring installation.
- E. Install resilient sheet flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient sheet flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

**2.2 UNBACKED VINYL SHEET FLOORING**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products listed on the Drawings.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1913.
- C. Thickness: 0.080 inch.
- D. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
- E. Sheet Width: As standard with manufacturer.
- F. Seamless-Installation Method: Heat welded.
- G. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on Drawings.

**2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS**

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers to suit resilient sheet flooring and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Seamless-Installation Accessories:
  - 1. Heat-Welding Bead: Manufacturer's solid-strand product for heat welding seams.
    - a. Colors: Match flooring.
- D. Integral-Flash-Cove-Base Accessories:
  - 1. Cove Strip: 1-inch radius provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.
  - 2. Cap Strip: Tapered vinyl cap provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.
  - 3. Corners: Metal inside and outside corners and end stops provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrates according to resilient sheet flooring manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient sheet flooring until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move flooring and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient sheet flooring.

#### **3.3 RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Unroll resilient sheet flooring and allow it to stabilize before cutting and fitting.
- C. Lay out resilient sheet flooring as follows:
  - 1. Maintain uniformity of flooring direction.
  - 2. Minimize number of seams; place seams in inconspicuous and low-traffic areas, at least 6 inches away from parallel joints in flooring substrates.
  - 3. Match edges of flooring for color shading at seams.
  - 4. Avoid cross seams.
- D. Scribe and cut resilient sheet flooring to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.

- E. Extend resilient sheet flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on resilient sheet flooring as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install resilient sheet flooring on covers for telephone and electrical ducts and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of flooring installed on covers and adjoining flooring. Tightly adhere flooring edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere resilient sheet flooring to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Seamless Installation:
  - 1. Heat-Welded Seams: Comply with ASTM F1516. Rout joints and heat weld with welding bead to fuse sections permanently into a seamless flooring installation. Prepare, weld, and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining flooring surfaces.
- J. Integral-Flash-Cove Base: Cove resilient sheet flooring 6 inches up vertical surfaces. Support flooring at horizontal and vertical junction with cove strip. Butt at top against cap strip.
  - 1. Install metal corners at inside and outside corners.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient sheet flooring installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient sheet flooring from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient sheet flooring until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 09 65 16**



## **SECTION 09 91 12 - PAINTING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior and interior substrates:
  - 1. Concrete.
  - 2. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - 3. Ferrous metal.
  - 4. Galvanized metal.
  - 5. Gypsum board.
  - 6. Cotton or canvas insulation jacket.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for additional definitions including 'mock-ups'; 'benchmark painting samples'; 'experienced', 'manufacturer's technical representative', 'factory authorized service representative'.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D16 apply to this Section.
  - 1. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
  - 2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 20 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
  - 3. Semigloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 35 and 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
  - 4. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

#### **1.3 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCE**

- A. Before applying painting systems, conduct conference at Project site. Notify participants at least 5 working days before conference.
  - 1. Meet with Owner; Architect; Interior Designer; Construction Manager; Painting Contractor; and Paint Manufacturer's Representative.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to surface preparation and paint application, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Examine substrate conditions to be painted for compliance with requirement including adhesion and compatibility of coating with substrate.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. For any listed paint system where the installer or manufacturer believes the specified system is incompatible or not the best system for the substrate and installation conditions indicated. Bring these concerns to the architect's attention for discussion and resolution before making product submittals.
- C. For any listed paint system where the film thickness is not indicated or where the installer / manufacturer recommends a different thickness, clearly indicate the thickness intended and clearly point out differences from the specified system. Architect will accept or correct proposed changes in the submission.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Acceptance of verification sample colors is tentative, pending final color review on in-place mockups under actual installation conditions.
  - 2.
- E. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:

1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.5 MATERIALS MAINTENANCE SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 gallons of the primary neutral color and 1 gallon of each other color and product type applied.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 4.
    - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft.
    - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
  2. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated and the area is under lighting and other visual-impacting conditions that match the completed-construction.
  3. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
    - a. If Architect's review of colors on actual-conditions mockup indicates that the color is not acceptable, regardless of tentative color approval or verification samples, architect reserves the right to select different colors and the contractor shall then provide a new mockup for review at no additional cost to the owner.
  4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. PPG Architectural Coatings.
  3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

#### 2.2 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and with the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

- B. **Material Quality:** Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
- C. **Colors:** Match Architect's samples. Provide color selections made by the Architect and accepted after review of in-place mock-ups.

### 2.3 CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY BLOCK FILLERS

- A. **Concrete Unit Masonry Block Filler:** Factory-formulated high-performance latex block fillers.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Super Spec Masonry Interior/Exterior Hi-Build Block Filler 206.
  - 2. PPG; 6-7 Speedhide, Interior/Exterior Masonry Latex Block Filler.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25 Series.

### 2.4 EXTERIOR PRIMERS

- A. **Exterior Ferrous-Metal Primer:** Factory-formulated rust-inhibitive metal primer for exterior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Corotech Acrylic Metal Primer.
  - 2. PPG; 90-712 Series Pitt-Tech Int/Ext Industrial DTM Primer/Finish Enamel.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-1310 Series.
- B. **Exterior Galvanized Metal Primer:** Factory-formulated galvanized metal primer for exterior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Corotech Acrylic Metal Primer.
  - 2. PPG; 90-712 Series Pitt-Tech Int/Ext Industrial DTM Primer/Finish Enamel.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-1310 Series.

### 2.5 INTERIOR PRIMERS

- A. **Interior Concrete Primer:** Factory-formulated latex-based primer for interior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Super Spec Interior/Exterior Acrylic High Build Masonry Primer N068.
  - 2. PPG; 4-603 Perma-Crete Interior/Exterior Alkali Primer.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer Sealer, A24W8300.
- B. **Interior Gypsum Board Primer:** Factory-formulated latex-based primer for interior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer.
  - 2. PPG; 6-2 SpeedHide Interior Quick-Drying Latex Sealer.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero Interior Latex Primer B28W2600.
- C. **Interior Zinc-Coated Metal Primer:** Factory-formulated galvanized metal primer.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Corotech Acrylic Metal Primer.
  - 2. PPG; 90-712 Pitt-Tech Interior/Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-1310 Series.

### 2.6 EXTERIOR FINISH COATS

- A. **Exterior Semigloss Acrylic Enamel:** Factory-formulated semigloss acrylic-modified alkyd enamel for exterior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec HP Acrylic DTM Semi-Gloss Enamel.
  - 2. PPG; 90-1210 Series Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior Semi-Gloss DTM Industrial Enamel.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Semi-Gloss, B34-8200 Series.
- B. **Exterior Eggshell/Satin Acrylic Enamel:** Factory-formulated eggshell/satin acrylic enamel for exterior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec EXT Satin.
  - 2. PPG; 6-610XI Series SpeedHide Exterior House Paint Eggshell Latex.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams; A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series.

### 2.7 INTERIOR FINISH COATS

- A. **Interior Flat or Eggshell Acrylic Paint (Dryfall):** Factory-formulated flat or eggshell acrylic latex paint for interior application.
  - 1. Benjamin Moore; Coronado Super Kote 5000 Dry Fall Latex Flat.

2. PPG; 6-725 XI SpeedHide Super Tech WB Interior Dry-Fog Flat Latex.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall B42-80 Series.
- B. Interior Flat Acrylic Paint: Factory-formulated flat latex paint for interior application.
1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Flat.
  2. PPG; 6-70 Series SpeedHide Interior Wall Flat-Latex Paint.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Flat B30-2600 Series.
- C. Interior Flat Latex-Emulsion Size: Factory-formulated flat latex-based interior paint.
1. Benjamin Moore; Eco Spec Interior Latex Flat 219.
  2. PPG; 6-70 Series SpeedHide Interior Wall Flat-Latex.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Flat B30-2600 Series.
- D. Interior Eggshell Acrylic Enamel: Factory-formulated eggshell acrylic-latex interior enamel.
1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Low Sheen.
  2. PPG; 6-411 Series SpeedHide Eggshell Acrylic Latex Enamel.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eg-Shel B20-2600 Series.
- E. Interior Semigloss Acrylic Enamel: Factory-formulated semigloss acrylic-latex enamel for interior application.
1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Spec Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel 276.
  2. PPG; 6-500 Series SpeedHide Interior Semi-Gloss Latex.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss B31-2600 Series.
- F. Interior Semigloss Acrylic-Modified Alkyd Enamel: Factory-formulated semigloss acrylic-modified alkyd enamel for interior application.
1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec HP D.T.M. Acrylic Semi-Gloss Enamel.
  2. PPG; 90-1210 Series Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior Semi-Gloss DTM Industrial Enamel.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Semi-Gloss, B34-8200 Series.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.
1. Notify Architect about anticipated problems when using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.
- B. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- C. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  2. Masonry (CMU): 12 percent.
  3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- D. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
  1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
  2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
  3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
  4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.
  5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
  7. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  8. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  9. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as exterior faces.
  10. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel coat.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- D. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.

1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
  2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.
  3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
  4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion. Allow finished coats to cure a minimum of 24 hours before applying another coat.
- E. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
  2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
  3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
  4. Touch-up: Touch-up damaged areas of painting using only the same type of application equipment as was used for the original application. If differences of appearance – including sheen and light reflectance – appear in the repaired area due to different application methods, sand the defective work area and repaint the entire surface (not just the original damage area) between normal surface breaks (E.G.: between wall corners, control joints, frames).
- F. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials in coats no thinner (and not excessively thicker) than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces.
- H. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Uninsulated metal piping.
  2. Uninsulated plastic piping.
  3. Pipe hangers and supports.
  4. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
  5. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
  6. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having "all-service jacket" or other paintable jacket material.
  7. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
- I. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Panelboards.
  2. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
  3. Conduit and fittings.
- J. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
- K. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- L. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- M. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:
1. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of Contractor.
  2. Testing agency will perform appropriate tests for the following characteristics as required by Owner:
    - a. Alkali and mildew resistance.
    - b. Quantitative material analysis.
    - c. Abrasion resistance.
    - d. Apparent reflectivity.
    - e. Flexibility.
    - f. Washability.
    - g. Absorption.
    - h. Accelerated weathering.
    - i. Dry opacity.
    - j. Accelerated yellowness.
    - k. Recoating.
    - l. Skinning.
    - m. Color retention.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop painting if test results show any material being used does not comply with specified requirements.
    - a. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from Project site, pay for testing, and properly re-prepare, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the noncomplying paint.
    - b. If necessary, Contractor may be required to remove noncomplying paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are incompatible.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site. Do not allow accumulation of used rags on site even if placed in air-tight containers.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

## PART 4 - SCHEDULES

### 4.1 GENERAL

- A. Verify painting schedule and requirements for each surface and each area. Coordinate with Section 09 96 00 – High Performance Coatings.

### 4.2 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
1. Semigloss Acrylic-Modified Alkyd Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
    - a. Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic-modified alkyd enamel.
- B. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior zinc-coated metal surfaces:
1. Semigloss Acrylic-Modified Alkyd Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a galvanized metal primer.
    - a. Primer: Exterior galvanized metal primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic-modified alkyd enamel.

4.3 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete: Provide the following finish systems over interior concrete:
  - 1. Eggshell Acrylic Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: Alkali resistant primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Interior eggshell acrylic enamel.
- B. Concrete Unit Masonry: Provide the following finish systems over interior concrete masonry:
  - 1. Semigloss Acrylic Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a block filler.
    - a. Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
    - b. Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
- C. Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish at ceilings, bulkheads and soffits: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Interior flat acrylic paint.
  - 2. Low-Luster Acrylic Enamel Finish at wall surfaces: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Interior low-luster acrylic enamel.
- D. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over ferrous metal:
  - 1. Flat or Eggshell Acrylic Finish (Dryfall) at exposed roof structure only at Contractor's option: One finish coat over factory-primed surfaces.
    - a. Finish Coat: Interior flat or eggshell acrylic (dryfall) paint.
  - 2. Semigloss Acrylic-Modified Alkyd Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over factory-primed surfaces.
    - a. Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic-modified alkyd enamel.
- E. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over interior zinc-coated metal surfaces:
  - 1. Semigloss Acrylic-Modified Alkyd Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic-modified alkyd enamel.
- F. Cotton and Canvas Insulation Jacket: Provide the following finish system on cotton or canvas insulation covering:
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coats: Interior flat latex-emulsion size.

**END OF SECTION 09 91 12**



## **SECTION 10 11 00 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Visual display board assemblies.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Tackboard: Framed or unframed, tackable, visual display board assembly.
- B. Visual Display Board Assembly: Visual display surface that is factory fabricated into composite panel form, either with or without a perimeter frame; includes markerboards, and tackboards.
- C. Visual Display Surface: Surfaces that are used to convey information visually, including surfaces of markerboards, tackboards, and surfacing materials that are not fabricated into composite panel form but are applied directly to walls.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, finishes, and accessories for visual display units.
- B. Shop Drawings: For visual display units.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.
  2. Show locations of panel joints. Show locations of field-assembled joints for factory-fabricated units too large to ship in one piece.
  3. Include sections of typical trim members.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of visual display unit indicated, for units with factory-applied color finishes, and as follows:
1. Samples of facings for each visual display panel type, indicating color and texture.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of visual display unit indicated.
1. Visual Display Panel: Not less than 8-1/2 by 11 inches, with facing, core, and backing indicated for final Work. Include one panel for each type, color, and texture required.
  2. Trim: 6-inch-long sections of each trim profile.
  3. Accessories: Full-size Sample of each type of accessory.
- E. Product Schedule: For visual display units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each visual display unit, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For visual display units to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Map Rail Hardware: Provide 2 dozen map hooks. Deliver to school site.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver factory-fabricated visual display units completely assembled in one piece. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured unit size, or if unit size is impracticable to ship in one piece, provide two or more pieces with joints in locations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating visual display surfaces without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
  - 2. Allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay the Work.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
    - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
  - 2. Warranty Period:
    - a. Life of the building.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Visual Display Board Assemblies:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AARCO Products, Inc.
    - b. ADP/Lemco, Inc.
    - c. AJW.
    - d. Claridge Products & Equipment, Inc.
    - e. Ghent Manufacturing Inc.
    - f. K-Pro Specialty Products

- g. Marsh Industries, Inc.
  - h. MooreCo, Inc.
  - i. Platinum Visual Systems; a division of ABC School Equipment, Inc.
- B. Framed Visual Display Board Assembly: Factory fabricated.
- 1. Assembly: Markerboard and tackboard.
  - 2. Corners: Square.
  - 3. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Mounting Method: Direct to wall.
- C. Unframed Visual Display Board Assembly: Factory fabricated.
- 1. Assembly: Tackboard at display case rear wall.
  - 2. Corners: Square.
  - 3. Coordinate overall sizes with interfacing construction including accommodation of electric and data devices in the surface (if any). Fabricate only from field measurements of each installation location; show field measurements and conditions of adjacent construction on shop drawings.
  - 4. Mounting Method: Direct to wall.
- D. Markerboard Panel: Porcelain-enamel-faced markerboard panel on core indicated.
- 1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- E. Tackboard Panel: Plastic-impregnated-cork tackboard panel on core indicated.
- 1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- F. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricated from not less than 0.062-inch-thick, extruded aluminum; standard size and shape.
- 1. Aluminum Finish: Clear anodic finish.
- G. Joints: Make joints only where total length exceeds maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with minimum number of joints, as indicated on approved Shop Drawings.
- H. Chalktray: Manufacturer's standard; continuous.
- 1. Solid Type: Extruded aluminum with ribbed section and smoothly curved exposed ends.
- I. Display Rail: Manufacturer's standard, extruded-aluminum display rail with plastic-impregnated-cork insert, end stops, designed to hold accessories.
- 1. Size: 1 or 2 inches high by full length of visual display unit.
  - 2. Map Hooks and Clips: Two map hooks with flexible metal clips for every 48 inches of display rail or fraction thereof.
  - 3. Flag Holder: One for each room.
  - 4. Tackboard Insert Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
  - 5. Aluminum Color: Match finish of visual display assembly trim.

### 2.3 MARKERBOARD PANELS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Markerboard Panels: Balanced, high-pressure, factory-laminated markerboard assembly of three-ply construction, consisting of moisture-barrier backing, core material, and porcelain-enamel face sheet with low-gloss finish. Laminate panels under heat and pressure with manufacturer's standard, flexible waterproof adhesive.
- 1. Face Sheet Thickness: 0.021 inch uncoated base metal thickness.
  - 2. Particleboard Core: 3/8 inch thick; with 0.005-inch-thick, aluminum foil backing.
  - 3. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard moisture-resistant thermoplastic type.
- B. High-Pressure Markerboard Laminate Panels: Factory-laminated markerboard panel of three-ply construction, consisting of backing, fiberboard core material, and high-pressure markerboard laminate writing surface.

### 2.4 TACKBOARD PANELS

- A. Tackboard Panels:
- 1. Facing:

- a. 1/4-inch-thick, plastic-impregnated cork.
2. Core:
  - a. 1/4-inch-thick hardboard or particleboard.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: PEI-1002, with face sheet manufacturer's standard two- or three-coat process.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:
    - a. Claridge Products & Equipment, Inc.; LCS Markerboard.
    - b. K-Pro Specialty Products; Prosteel.
    - c. PolyVision Corporation; P<sup>3</sup> Ceramicsteel Markerboard.
- B. Plastic-Impregnated-Cork Sheet: Seamless, homogeneous, self-sealing sheet consisting of granulated cork, linseed oil, resin binders, and dry pigments that are mixed and calendared onto fabric backing; with washable vinyl finish and integral color throughout; with surface-burning characteristics indicated.
- C. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, tempered.
- D. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-1.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063.
- F. Adhesives for Field Application: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive for use with specific type of panels, sheets, or assemblies; and for substrate application; as recommended in writing by visual display unit manufacturer.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for proper preparation and backing for visual display units.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances, such as dirt, mold, and mildew, that could impair the performance of and affect the smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.

- C. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display units and wall surfaces.
- D. Prime wall surfaces indicated to receive visual display units and as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and visual display unit manufacturer.

**3.3 INSTALLATION OF FRAMED VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS**

- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Factory-Fabricated Visual Display Board Assemblies:
  - 1. Attach concealed clips, hangers, and grounds to wall surfaces and to visual display board assemblies with fasteners at not more than 16 inches o.c. Secure tops and bottoms of boards to walls.
- C. Visual Display Board Assembly Mounting Heights: Install visual display units at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.

**3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNFRAMED TACKBOARDS AT DISPLAY CASES**

- A. Verify that mounting surface is flat and without protruding objects or device plates.
- B. Fit tackboards snug (1/16-inch approximate maximum clearance) between vertical and horizontal abutting surfaces.
- C. Install by one of the methods indicated above and brace in place until set.

**3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean visual display units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one removable cleaning instructions label to visual display unit in each room.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Cover and protect visual display units after installation and cleaning.

**END OF SECTION 10 11 00**

## **SECTION 10 14 23 - PANEL SIGNAGE**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Panel signs.
  - 2. Field-applied, vinyl-character signs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 14 26 "Post and Panel Signage" for freestanding signs.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Panel signs.
  - 2. Field-applied, vinyl-character signs.
- B. Shop Drawings: For panel signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Panel Signs: Full-size Sample.
- E. Product Schedule: For panel signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

## 2.2 SIGNS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ace Sign Systems, Inc.
  2. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
  3. Best Sign Systems Inc.
  4. Contemporary Plastics.
  5. InPro Corporation.
- B. Panel Sign: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally from corner to corner. **Applied letters, engraved characters and Braille plates are NOT acceptable.**
1. Laminated, Etched Photopolymer: Raised graphics with Braille 1/32 inch above surface with contrasting colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and laminated to 0.125 inch acrylic back.
  2. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  3. Corner Condition: Square.
  4. Mounting: Unframed.
  5. Custom Paint Colors: As selected by Architect.
  6. Tactile Characters: Characters and Grade 2 Braille raised 1/32 inch above surface with contrasting colors. Font styles to be selected by Architect from manufacturer's complete line of ADA compliant styles.
  7. Sign Schedule: Indicated on Drawings.
- C. Optional Panel Sign Fabrication: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally from corner to corner. **Applied letters, engraved characters and Braille plates are NOT acceptable.**
1. 3D Printed Text: Raised graphics with Braille 1/32 inch above surface with manufacturer's 3D digital printing process at 1,400 dpi to 0.125 inch acrylic back.
  2. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  3. Corner Condition: Square.
  4. Mounting: Unframed.
  5. Custom Paint Colors: As selected by Architect.
  6. Tactile Characters: Characters and Grade 2 Braille raised 1/32 inch above surface with contrasting colors. Font styles to be selected by Architect from manufacturer's complete line of ADA compliant styles.
  7. Sign Schedule: Indicated on Drawings.
- D. Brackets: Fabricate brackets and fittings for bracket-mounted signs from extruded aluminum to suit panel sign construction and mounting conditions indicated. Factory paint brackets in color matching background color of panel sign.
- E. Changeable Message Inserts: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages in the form of transparent covers with paper inserts printed by Owner.
1. Furnish insert material and software for creating text and symbols for PC-Windows or Macintosh computers for Owner production of paper inserts.

## 2.3 FIELD-APPLIED, VINYL-CHARACTER SIGNS

- A. Field-Applied, Vinyl-Character Sign: Pre-spaced characters die cut from 2-mil thick, cast vinyl film with release liner on back and carrier film on front for on-site alignment and application. Calendered vinyl film is not acceptable.
1. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Substrate: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Text and Font: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 PANEL-SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
- B. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, 0.045 inch thick, with adhesive on both sides.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door, 5'-0" above floor to top of sign. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
- B. Interior Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
  - 1. Adhesive and Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive.
- C. Applied Vinyl Film: Align vinyl film in final position and apply to surface. Firmly press film from the middle outward to obtain good bond without blisters or fish-mouths.
- D. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide opaque sheet matching sign material and finish onto opposite side of glass to conceal back of sign.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 10 14 23**



## **SECTION 10 26 00 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Abuse-resistant wall coverings.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.
1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
1. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: 6 by 6 inches square.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.
1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
  2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
  3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.

#### **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

### **2.3 ABUSE-RESISTANT WALL COVERINGS**

- A. Abuse-Resistant Sheet Wall Covering: Fabricated from semi-rigid plastic sheet wall-covering material.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.
    - a. Construction Specialties, Inc.; Acrovyn.
    - b. InPro Corporation; Rigid Vinyl Sheet.
    - c. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
  - 2. Size: As indicated.
  - 3. Sheet Thickness: 0.060 inch.
  - 4. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 5. Trim and Joint Moldings: Extruded rigid plastic that matches wall-covering color.
  - 6. Mounting: Adhesive.

### **2.4 MATERIALS**

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- C. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

### **2.5 FINISHES**

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
  - 1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

**3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. **Installation Quality:** Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. **Mounting Heights:** Install wall protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
- C. **Accessories:** Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
  - 2. Adjust end and top caps as required to ensure tight seams.
- D. **Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering:** Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.

**3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 10 26 00**

## **SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Pipe, Tube and Fittings.
  - 2. Joining Materials
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
  - 5. Floor plates.
  - 6. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 7. Painting and finishing.
  - 8. Concrete bases.
  - 9. Supports and anchorages

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
- B. The plumbing contractor will be responsible for start-up and commissioning of plumbing systems. See Section 019113 – General Requirements - Commissioning
- C. The design of the systems included in this division is based on the materials and equipment herein specified in the specifications. Any additional plumbing work and/or additional work of any other divisions of these specifications as a result of the contractor using other named manufacturers or substituting materials, equipment or manufacturers other than those specified

and named first in this division, even if approved by the Engineer, Architect or Owner shall be the responsibility of this Contractor. The architect shall be notified of all sub contractors and manufacturers used within 10 calendar days of award of contract. If the architect is not notified, the first named shall be used.

#### 1.4 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. The work included in this contract shall consist of providing all labor, material and equipment which may be necessary for the complete installation, testing, adjustments and guarantee of all plumbing work for the building as indicated on the drawings and specifications.
- B. The word "provide", as used in this division of the specifications, shall have the same meaning as "furnish and install".

#### 1.5 SITE INVESTIGATION

- A. Visit the job site and investigate all details, which may have an effect on the installation or operation of this division's work. Report immediately to the Architect any significant discrepancies that may be discovered. The contractor must signify familiarity with all existing conditions in his bid. After the contract is signed, no allowance will be made for failure to have made a thorough inspection.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.
- C. Do not store pipe directly on finished floors. Stored pipe shall be supported on wood blocking.

#### 1.7 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. The drawings and specifications are intended to depict the general intent of the work in scope, layout and quality of workmanship and are not intended to show or describe in minute detail all accessories necessary for the proper and complete installation of the work. It is to be understood, however, that such details and accessories are work of this division and shall be included without additional cost, but only as approved by the Architect-Engineer hereafter referred to as A/E.
- B. The drawings and specifications are intended to supplement each other so that any details shown on the drawings and not mentioned in the specifications, or vica-versa, shall be executed the same as if mentioned in the specifications and shown on the drawings.

- C. Each contractor shall take their own measurements and be responsible for same. Each contractor shall examine each and every sheet of the construction drawings and specifications and refer to them for details of building construction, fixtures, equipment locations and requirements.
- D. Where any system piping runs and/or components are so placed as to cause or contribute to a conflict, they shall be relocated at the expense of the contractor causing such conflict. The A/E's decision shall be final in regard to arrangement of ductwork, piping, etc., where conflicts arise and can not otherwise be resolved.
- E. Provide offsets in system piping runs, additional fittings, necessary drains and minor valves and devices required for a complete installation or for the proper operation of the system at no additional cost to the owner. Each contractor shall exercise due and particular caution to determine that all parts of the work are made quickly and are easily accessible.

#### 1.8 PERMITS, FEES, INSPECTIONS AND TAXES

- A. The Plumbing Contractor shall apply and pay for all permits, inspections, licenses, taxes and other service fees required by the authorities having jurisdiction over the work included as part of this division. Contractor shall include all costs to obtain and furnish to the owner a certificate of approval from the governing inspection agency covering the work.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. The Plumbing Contractor shall warrant all work in this division to be free from defect in material and workmanship for a period of one year following the date of final acceptance of the work, unless a longer period is stipulated under specific headings, and this Contractor shall repair or replace, at no additional cost to the Owner, any material or equipment developing defects and this Contractor shall also make good any damage caused by such defects or the correction thereof.

#### 1.10 SUBMITTALS AND SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Contractor shall submit product information and shop drawings for all plumbing work contained within this specification for review by the engineer prior to release to manufacturing or installation.
- B. The Plumbing Contractor shall carefully check dimensions for spaces and service requirements before ordering equipment for the project. Submittals shall be carefully checked by this contractor and stamped with his approval before submitting for review to the Engineer. The review by the Engineer of shop drawings shall not be construed as a complete check but will indicate only that the general method of construction and detailing is satisfactory.
- C. The review of shop drawings by the Engineer shall not relieve the Plumbing Contractor from responsibility for errors in the shop drawings. Deviations from the specification and drawing requirements shall be called to the Engineers attention in a separate clearly stated notification at the time of submittal.
- D. Provide Operation and Maintenance Manuals per spec section 017823.

#### 1.11 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. By substituting materials or equipment the Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible to bear all costs, for any additional work, as a result of these substitutions.
- B. The basis of design is as specified in this division or as shown on the drawings. The Manufacturer and or the Manufacturer's Representative of the substituted equipment or material, shall demonstrate to the Engineer that the submitted products is 1.) Of better quality. 2.) Better design. 3.) Equal to the basis of design. Do not submit material or equipment of lesser quality than the basis of design.
- C. Approval by the Engineer, Architect, or Owner does not relieve the Plumbing Contractor of substitution responsibility, even if listed as an alternate, or as a manufacturer that may submit. Include all costs for additional work as herein above described in alternate bids for the substitutions.

#### 1.12 EQUIPMENT START-UP

- A. Start-up of all plumbing equipment shall be video recorded by the plumbing contractor. Two DVD copies shall be provided to the Owner's maintenance staff.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

#### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

## 2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- D. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- E. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

## 2.4 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.5 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## 2.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Refer to Part 3 – Execution specified below.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction



loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings. The installation of all piping and vents shall be coordinated with the work of other trades to allow adequate space for proper installation and maintenance. Make all offsets necessary to eliminate interferences whether shown on the drawings or not. The contractor will not be compensated for these offsets.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- N. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- O. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- P. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- Q. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402, for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 3. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 9 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.8 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION 220500**

## **SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Silicone sealants.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries Company
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

#### 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries Company
  - 4. Metraflex Company
  - 5. Proco Products, Inc
- B. Description:
  - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Composite plastic.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

### 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  1. Dow Corning Corporation
  2. GE Construction Sealants
  3. Polymeric Systems
  4. Sherwin-Williams Company
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  1. Dow Corning Corporation
  2. GE Construction Sealants
  3. Polymeric Systems
  4. Sherwin-Williams Company

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- F. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes in walls and roofs.
1. Seal annular space between cored opening and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- G. Sleeves are required for core-drilled holes in mechanical room floors.
1. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  2. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION
- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 8: Cast-iron pipe sleeves or Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 8 Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 8 Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 8: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 5. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 8: Steel pipe sleeves.

**END OF SECTION 220517**



## SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze and heat treated brass ball valves.
2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
3. Bronze and heat treated brass swing check valves.
4. Bronze and heat treated brass gate valves.
5. Iron gate valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

H. SWP: Steam working pressure.

I. Lead Free: Refers to the wetted surface of pipe, fittings and fixtures in potable water systems that have a weighted average lead content  $\leq 0.25\%$  per Safe Drinking Water Act as amended January 4<sup>th</sup> 2011 Section 1417. *Add specific state requirements as needed.*

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASME Compliance: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.

- B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

## 1.5 LEAD FREE COMPLIANCE

- A. Several products described in this section fall under jurisdiction of the Federal Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act (42 USC 300G) which mandates that effective January 4, 2014 the wetted surfaces of any valve, fitting or fixture that comes in contact with potable water must have a weighted-average lead content of no more than 0.25 percent. The contractor is responsible to provide products and components that comply with lead free laws.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
  - 4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - 4. Press Connection:

### 2.2 BRONZE AND HEAT TREATED BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze or Heat Treated CW511L Brass Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.

- b. Hammond Valve.
- c. Jomar Valve.
- d. Legend.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Red-White Valve Corp.
- h. Watts

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece bronze or heat treated CW511L brass with threaded body packnut design (no threaded stem designs allowed) with adjustable stem packing.
- e. Body Material: Bronze or heat treated CW511L brass (ASTM Listed), corrosion resistant.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel (silicon bronze available).
- i. Ball: Stainless steel (silicon bronze available).
- j. Port: Full.

2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Jomar Valve.
  - d. Legend.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Lead Free Aluminum bronze.

2.4 BRONZE OR HEAT TREATED BRASS LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic TFE Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Jomar Valve.
  - d. Legend.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-139
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical or horizontal flow
  - d. Body Material: Bronze or heat treated CW511L brass (ASTM Listed), corrosion resistant.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or Soldered.
  - f. Disc: TFE.

2.5 BRONZE OR HEAT TREATED BRASS SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Jomar Valve.
  - d. Legend.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Powell Valves.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow
  - d. Body Material: Bronze or heat treated CW511L brass (ASTM Listed), corrosion resistant.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: TFE or PTFE.

## 2.6 BRONZE OR HEAT TREATED BRASS GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, NRS Bronze or Heat Treated CW511L Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Jomar Valve.
  - d. Legend.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Powell Valves.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze or heat treated CW511L brass with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze or heat treated CW511L brass, ASTM B99 Alloy C65100.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze or heat treated CW511L brass.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, brass, or aluminum.

## 2.7 IRON GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Jomar Valve.
  - d. Legend.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Powell Valves.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
  - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

- B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - b. Hammond Valve.
    - c. Jomar Valve.
    - d. Legend.
    - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - f. NIBCO INC.
    - g. Powell Valves.
    - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### **3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly and gate valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
  - 1. Install swing check valves for proper direction of flow and in horizontal position with hinge pin level.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
  - 2. Throttling Service: ball, or butterfly valves.
  - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze or heat treated brass swing check valves with bronze disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP class or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze or Heat Treated Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
  - 3. Ball Valves: Two piece, regular port, bronze or heat treated brass with bronze or heat treated brass trim.
  - 4. Bronze or Heat Treated Brass Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
  - 5. Bronze or Heat Treated Brass Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS RS.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS OS&Y.

**END OF SECTION 220523**



## **SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems
  - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 5. Fastener systems.
  - 6. Equipment supports.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Manufacturers
  - 1. Anvil
  - 2. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries
  - 3. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
  - 4. Grinnell Corp.

5. PHD Manufacturing

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Description: 100-psig minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
  3. PHS Industries, Inc.
  4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
  5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers
1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries
  2. Hilti, Inc.
  3. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  3. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  4. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  5. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  6. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  7. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- Q. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 220529**

## **SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING, VALVES AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Valve Tags
  - 4. Pipe labels

#### 1.2 SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Valve Tag Chart: To be submitted at end of project as part of O&M manual.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI / ASME Standard A13.1-2007 for labeling pipe.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURES

- A. Seton "SETMARK"
- B. Brady
- C. Brimar
- D. Marking Services Incorporated

#### 2.2 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.



5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.3 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

### 2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Tag shall be 1-1/2" diameter made of 19 gauge solid brass.
- B. Top hole 3/16", letter height 1/4" and number height 1/2".
- C. Fasten with durable chain and 1" S hooks.

- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
- E. Location of valves concealed above ceiling shall be marked by a blue and red dot sticker affixed to the ceiling grid.

## 2.5 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pre-tensioned Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section " High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.

2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Cold Water Piping:
  - a. Legend Wording: DOMESTIC COLD WATER.
  - b. Background Color: Green
  - c. Letter Color: White.
2. Domestic Hot Water Piping:
  - a. Legend Wording: DOMESTIC HOT WATER
  - b. Background Color: Green
  - c. Letter Code: White
3. Domestic Hot Water Return Piping:
  - a. Legend Wording: DOM. HOT WATER RETURN
  - b. Background Color: Green
  - c. Letter Code: White
4. Vent Piping:
  - a. Legend Wording: VENT
  - b. Background Color: Green
  - c. Letter Color: White
5. Liquified Petroleum Piping:
  - a. Legend Wording: LP GAS
  - b. Background Color: Yellow
  - c. Letter Color: Black.
6. Compressed Air Piping:
  - a. Legend Wording: COMPRESSED AIR
  - b. Background Color: Blue
  - c. Letter Color: White.

**END OF SECTION 220553**

## **SECTION 220700 - PLUMBING INSULATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulation Materials:
    - a. Fiberglass.
    - b. Flexible elastomeric.
  - 2. Adhesives
  - 3. Sealants
  - 4. Factory-applied jackets.
  - 5. Tapes.
  - 6. Corner angles.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittal:
  - 1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials. **NOTE: For use when piping risers are within masonry walls.**
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.
  - 2. Thermal conductivity must have a minimum k value of .23 Btu-in/hr-ft at 75°F.
- D. Fiberglass, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000 Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
  - 2. Type I, 850°F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 3. Thermal conductivity must have a minimum k value of .23 Btu-in/hr-ft at 75°F.

### 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
  - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Aeroflex USA.
  - b. Armacell LLC.
  - c. Foster Brand
  - d. K-Flex USA
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand
    - b. Eagle Bridges
    - c. Foster Brand
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand
    - b. Eagle Bridges
    - c. Foster Brand
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation
    - b. Johns Manville
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics
    - d. Speedline Corporation
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.3 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand
  - b. Eagle Bridges
  - c. Foster Brand
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand
  - b. Eagle Bridges
  - c. Foster Brand
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand
  - b. Eagle Bridges
  - c. Foster Brand
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.5 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0555.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 130.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 370 White PVC tape.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.6 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.



### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

#### **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.

5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

### 3.5 FIBERGLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of fiberglass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded or sweat valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Underground piping.
  - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Fiberglass, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I:
  - 2. Pipe sizes 1-1/4" and smaller to be 1/2" thick. Pipes 1-1/2" and larger to be 1" thick.
- B. Domestic Hot Water: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Fiberglass, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I:
  - 2. Pipe sizes 1-1/4" and smaller to be 1" thick. Pipes 1-1/2" and larger to be 1-1/2" thick.
- C. Domestic Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Fiberglass, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I:
  - 2. Pipe sizes 1-1/4" and smaller to be 1" thick. Pipes 1-1/2" and larger to be 1-1/2" thick.

**END OF SECTION 220700**

## **SECTION 221013 - FACILITY LIQUIFIED PETROLEUM GAS PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 3. Valves.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 2. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

#### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

#### 2.3 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  6. Service: Suitable for LP-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Flowserve.
    - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - d. Milliken Valve Company.
    - e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
    - f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
  3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.

4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with LP gas.
6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Service: Suitable for LP-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

#### 2.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LP-gas piping.
- B. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- C. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

#### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Welded Joints:
  1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.



### 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping and valves.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (gloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections. Contact the local utility, the owner and the authority having jurisdiction 48 hours prior to test so it can be witnessed.
- B. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54, the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground LP-gas piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- B. Aboveground LP-gas piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.8 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Underground:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze plug valves.
2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Cast-iron, lubricated plug valves.

3.9 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be the following:

1. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.

C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

**END OF SECTION 221013**

## **SECTION 221017 – LIQUIFIED PETROLEUM PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Gas pressure regulators.
  - 6. Emergency gas valves

#### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Service Regulators: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. LP-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 7-14 inches water column.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings inside the building.
  - 2. Shutoff valves.
  - 3. Pressure regulators
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- C. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
  - 5. Mechanical Couplings:
    - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
    - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
    - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
    - d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
    - e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.3 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - 3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  - 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  - 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  - 6. Service: Suitable for LP-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Flowserve.
    - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - d. Milliken Valve Company.
    - e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.

f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.

2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Service: Suitable for LP-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.4 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for LP gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Actaris.
  - b. American Meter Company.
  - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
  - d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
  - e. Invensys.
  - f. Maxitrol Company.
  - g. Sensus.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
11. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psi.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LP-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 24 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- C. Install underground, PE, LP-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- H. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

#### **3.2 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LP-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install LP-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
  - a. Do not install LP-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
  - b. Do not install LP-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- R. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- S. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- T. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- U. Do not use LP-gas piping as grounding electrode.



- V. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- G. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - 3. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. 1/2" and Smaller: 6 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. 3/4" to 1": 8 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4" and larger: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical steel pipe at every floor level.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- B. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- C. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.6 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.7 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting exterior LP-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping and valves.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (gloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections. Contact the local utility, the owner and the authority having jurisdiction 48 hours prior to test so it can be witnessed.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. LP-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping 2" and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping 2-1/2" and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

3.10 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.

**END OF SECTION 231123**

## **SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
2. Dielectric Fittings.
3. Flexible connectors.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic, potable domestic water piping and components.
- C. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.
- D. Soldering procedures per ANSI B16.18.

#### **1.4 LEAD FREE COMPLIANCE**

- A. Several products described in this section fall under jurisdiction of the Federal Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act (42 USC 300G) which mandates that effective January 4, 2014 the wetted surfaces of any valve, fitting or fixture that comes in contact with potable water must have a weighted-average lead content of no more than 0.25 percent. The contractor is responsible to provide products and components that comply with lead free laws.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

#### **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
4. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings: may be used as an option per ASTM B16.18 or ASTM B16.22. O-Rings shall be EPDM.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
    - 2) NIBCO INC.
    - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
    - 4) Merit Brass.
  - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
  - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.

1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
2. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
    - 2) NIBCO INC.
    - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
    - 4) Merit Brass.
  - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
  2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
    - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end.
1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.

- a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

## 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  1. Description:
    - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
    - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  1. Description:
    - a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric Couplings:
  1. Description:
    - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Female threaded.
    - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
  1. Description:
    - a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.

- c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
  - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install domestic water piping level, without pitch and plumb.
- E. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- F. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- G. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- H. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- I. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- J. In concealed locations where piping other than cast iron or steel, is installed in holes or notches in studs or similar members less than 1.5 inches from the nearest edge of member, the pipe shall be protected by 16 gauge metal protective shield plates. Plates shall cover the area of pipe and extend 2 inches on either side.
- K. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- O. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- P. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- Q. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

### 3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- H. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures



that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

- 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.

- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.

### 3.4 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges or nipples.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 to NPS 6: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.
- C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - 3. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
  - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  - 2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass.
  - 6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:

1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

D. Cleaning of domestic water piping applies to new as well as existing piping which remains.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 6, shall be the following:
  - 1. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Application: In-coming water service to a point five feet outside the building.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Application: Trap primer piping to be soft copper.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 4 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

### 3.11 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
  - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

**END OF SECTION 221116**

## **SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Balancing valves.
  - 4. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
  - 5. Strainers.
  - 6. Hose bibbs.
  - 7. Yard hydrants.
  - 8. Drain valves.
  
- B. See Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

#### **1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
- B. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."
- C. Hose bibbs and wall hydrants shall meet ASSE standard 1019.
- D. Thermostatic mixing valves shall meet Ohio Plumbing Code and the requirements of ASSE 1017 and ASSE 1070.
- E. Strainers shall meet NSF 61 and ASTM B62.
- F. Water hammer arresters shall meet ANSI/ASME a112.26.1M and ASSE 1010.

## 1.5 LEAD FREE COMPLIANCE

- A. Several products described in this section fall under jurisdiction of the Federal Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act (42 USC 300G) which mandates that effective January 4, 2014 the wetted surfaces of any valve, fitting or fixture that comes in contact with potable water must have a weighted-average lead content of no more than 0.25 percent. The contractor is responsible to provide products and components that comply with lead free laws.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. BEECO.
    - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

### 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers: RPBFP-1
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts 957 or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. BEECO.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. Flomatic Corporation.
    - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
  3. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller.
  4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller.
  5. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller.
    - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
  6. Used for HVAC fill applications.
- B. Dual Check Valves with Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers : BFP-2
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts 9DM3 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
  3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  4. Size: NPS 1/2.
  5. Body: Bronze.
  6. End Connections: Union joint.

## 2.3 BALANCING VALVES

### A. Lead Free Thermal Balancing Valves

1. Manufacturers
  - a. Hays Fluid Controls
  - b. IMI Heimeier
  - c. Circuit Solver
  - d. Caleffi
2. Type: Field adjustable to maintain constant temperature with +/- 10% accuracy over system pressure fluctuations.
3. Body: Lead free brass. NSF/ANSI 61, 372 Certified, Y-type body to include flow cartridge.
4. Connection: Sweat
5. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
6. Accessories: Readout kit including differential pressure gauge, probes, and carrying case.

## 2.4 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

### A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices: TMV-2

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. Lawler
  - c. Leonard Valve Company.
  - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
  - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
  - f. Bradley.
  - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ANSI Z358.1-2004.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Wetted surfaces contain less than .25% lead by weight.
5. Type: Thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
6. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
7. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
8. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
9. Tempered-Water Setting: 80 °F
10. Valve Finish: Chrome plated or Rough bronze.

- B. Point of Use Water-Temperature Limiting Devices: TMV-5
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Acorn.
    - b. Honeywell Water Controls.
    - c. Leonard Valve Company.
    - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
    - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
    - f. Bradley.
    - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1070.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  4. Wetted surfaces contain less than .25% lead.
  5. Type: Thermostatically controlled water mixing valve for point of use.
  6. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
  7. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
  8. Tempered-Water Setting: 105 °F
  9. Valve Finish: Chrome plated or Rough bronze.

## 2.5 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
  2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  5. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Perforation Size:
    - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
    - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
  7. Drain: Pipe plug.

## 2.6 HOSE BIBS

- A. Hose Bibs HB-2:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn Z1341 or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. BEECO.
    - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1019.
  3. Body Material: Bronze.
  4. Wetted surfaces contain less than .25% lead by weight.
  5. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
  6. Supply Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
  7. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.



8. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
9. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
12. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bib.
13. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bib.

## 2.7 YARD HYDRANTS

- A. Nonfreeze Ground Hydrants FPYH-1: Basis of design is Woodford Y34.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide model scheduled on drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. MIFAB, Inc.
    - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
    - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: IAPMO Listed for concealed-outlet, self-draining ground hydrants.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  4. Operation: Loose key.
  5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
  6. Inlet: 3/4" NPT.
  7. Outlet: Concealed, garden-hose thread.
  8. Box: Deep, flush mounting at grade with cover.
  9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze or Chrome plated.
  10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
  11. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve, and pump.
- G. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- H. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable flow of balancing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

**END OF SECTION 221119**

## **SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following soil and waste, sanitary drainage and vent piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.

#### **1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings and couplings.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping applications" Article for application of pipe, tube, fitting and joining material.

#### **2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 Hubless Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings:

- A. Pipe and Fittings: Manufactured from gray cast iron and shall conform to ASTM A 888 and CISPI Standard 301. All pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and listed by NSF International.
- B. Shielded Couplings: Assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and neoprene sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  - 1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: ASTM C 1277 & CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, neoprene sleeve and must bear the NSF trademark.
    - a. Manufacturers
      - 1) ANACO-Husky.
      - 2) Mission Rubber Co.
      - 3) Tyler Pipe

2.4 Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

- A. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.

2.5 Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, solid-wall drain, waste, and vent.

- A. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- B. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
  - 1. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Aboveground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 2. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
    - a. Exposed drain piping from kitchen sinks shall be DWV copper.

- B. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping 6" and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and compression joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - a. **NOTE:** PVC is not acceptable for underground piping in the kitchen which receives discharge from 140° F fixtures.
    - b. Grease piping in the kitchen shall be cast iron.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install wall penetration system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight. Wall penetration systems are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- E. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- F. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- G. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- H. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.

3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

- I. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- J. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- K. Install underground PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- L. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- M. Terminate vent piping through the roof, a minimum of 12 inches above the roof.
- N. Locations of vents on roof shall be a minimum of 20 feet from any, wall louver outdoor air intake or HVAC rooftop equipment outdoor air intake.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Cast-Iron, Soil-Piping Joints: Make joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Gasketed Joints: Make with rubber gasket matching class of pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Hubless Joints: Make with rubber gasket and sleeve or clamp.
- C. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses. This applies to new pipe installation only.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

## END OF SECTION 221316



## **SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Trench drains.
  - 4. Barrier-type trap seals.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

#### **1.4 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of floor drains, trench drains and floor cleanouts with Division 3 contractor.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts: GCO
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn Z1402 or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping

4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch, Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee or as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts: FCO

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn 1400 or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
10. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts: WCO

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn Z1441 or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains: FD-1

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products listed on the drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

- d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
  - 3. Pattern: Floor drain.
  - 4. Body Material: Dura coated cast iron.
  - 5. Seepage Flange: Required.
  - 6. Anchor Flange: Required.
  - 7. Clamping Device: Required.
  - 8. Outlet: Bottom.
  - 9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze for FD-1.
  - 10. Top Shape: Round.
  - 11. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 6" diameter.
  - 12. Trap Features: ASSE 1072 Barrier-type trap seal.

### 2.3 TRENCH DRAINS

#### A. Wide Reveal Trench Drains with Steel Frame: TD-1

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products listed on the drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- 2. Channels shall be 144" long, 12" wide and have a 3" bottom outlet. (TD-3 120" long)
- 3. Channel Material: HPDE.
- 4. Heavy-Duty grate, DIN Rating of C and H20 Load rated.
- 5. Grate Material: Ductile iron conforms to ASTM A536 Grade 80-55-06.
- 6. 1/4" thick Heavy-Duty Carbon Steel Frame Assembly conforms to ASTM A36.
- 7. Grate lock down bars.
- 8. Outlet: Bottom, with domed strainer.
- 9. Trap Features: ASSE 1072 Barrier-type trap seal.

### 2.4 BARRIER-TYPE TRAP SEALS

#### A. Barrier-type trap seal protection device shall conform to ASSE 1072

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sure Seal floor drain trap seal manufactured by Rector Seal or a comparable product by:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn.

## 2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
  - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
  - 3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- B. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- C. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- E. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install exterior grade cleanouts within 18"x18"x6" deep concrete collar.
- F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.

- c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
- 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
- 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- I. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

### 3.2 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221319**

## **SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems operating at 150 psig or less, as follows:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Joining materials.
  - 3. Valves.
  - 4. Dielectric fittings.
  - 5. Flexible pipe connectors.
  - 6. Specialties.
  - 7. Quick couplings.
  - 8. Hose assemblies.
  - 9. Compressed air station drops.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 221519 "General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers" for general-service air compressors and accessories.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures of 150 psig or less.
- D. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, fittings, and valves.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Flexible pipe connectors.
  - 4. Specialties.
    - a. Safety valves.
    - b. Pressure regulators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
    - c. Automatic drain valves.
    - d. Filters. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
    - e. Lubricators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
  - 5. Quick couplings.
  - 6. Hose assemblies.

7. Compressed air station drops.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For general-service compressed-air piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASME Compliance:

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for low-pressure compressed-air piping.
2. Comply with ASME B31.3, "Process Piping," for high- and low-pressure, compressed-air piping.
3. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for high-pressure, compressed-air piping.

B. Installer Qualifications:

1. Extruded-Tee Outlet Procedure: Qualify operators according to training provided by respective manufacturer, for making branch outlets.
2. Press-Seal Joining Procedure for Copper Tubing: Qualify operators according to training provided by respective manufacturer.
3. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Steel Piping. Qualify operators according to training provided by respective manufacturer.
4. Joining Procedures for Aluminum Piping Systems: Qualify installers according to training provided by respective manufacturer.

C. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or with AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."

D. Welding: Qualify processes and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Compressed-Air Service: Do not interrupt compressed-air service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary compressed-air service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify architect, owner, and construction manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of compressed-air service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of compressed-air service written permission.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: Schedule 40, ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B, black or hot-dip zinc coated with ends threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
1. Steel Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
  2. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
  3. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
  4. Steel Flanges, Threaded: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel, threaded.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K seamless, drawn-temper, water tube.
1. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, wrought copper with dimensions for brazed joints.
  2. Cast-Copper-Alloy Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150 or 300.
  3. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123.
  4. Grooved-End Fittings and Couplings, Copper:
    - a. Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B75/B75M, copper tube or ASTM B584, bronze castings.
    - b. Grooved-End Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for compressed air, and bolts and nuts. Provide EDPM gasket for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR gasket if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.
    - c. **EPDM seals may not be used if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.**
- C. Aluminum Piping System: Aluminum pipe, Alloy Grade AA 6035-T5, for push-connect bite ring couplings complying with ASTM B241.
1. Aluminum Piping System Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Teseo
    - b. AIRpipe USA.
    - c. FastPipe by Rapidair.
    - d. Kaeser SmartPipe
    - e. Parker Transair
  2. Pressure and Temperature Range: Aluminum piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems operating at 220 psig or less, across a temperature range of minus 4 to plus 176 deg F.
  3. Tubing: Aluminum pipe, Alloy Grade AA 6063-T5.
  4. Pipe Coating: Powder-coated paint that is certified nontoxic to AAMA 603 and AAMA 605, blue for compressed air.
  5. Provide tubing that is quality controlled to comply with tolerances specified by roll-groove or push-to-connect coupling manufacturer. Tubing manufacturer follows ISO 9001:2000 quality standards.
  6. Pipe Identification: Decal with maximum working pressure and temperature on each length of pipe.
  7. Fittings:
    - a. Push-Connect Bite Ring Couplings, NPS 2 and Smaller: Solid-brass and nickel-plated body, NBR O-ring seal in excess of 36 percent, and AISI Type 304 stainless steel clamping washer.
    - b. Solid brass and nickel plated.

- c. Roll-Groove Couplings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Solid ductile-iron, galvanized, ASTM A536 Grade 65-45-12, NBR standard seals, and fluoroelastomer seals for high-temperature applications.
8. Valves:
- a. Ball Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: NPT ends, or push-connect bite ring ends.
  - b. Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Tube to tube, with two roll-groove end couplings.
  - c. Flanges, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

## 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for compressed-air piping system contents.
1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux in accordance with ASTM B813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.3 VALVES

- A. Metal Ball, Butterfly, Check and Gate Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

## 2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. NPS 2 and Smaller.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4.
  2. Description:

- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
- d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Description:
  - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
  - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.5 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
2. Flexicraft Industries.
3. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
4. Mercer Rubber Co.
5. Metraflex, Inc.
6. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Stainless Steel-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated, stainless steel tubing with stainless steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.
2. End Connections, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel pipe nipple.
3. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.6 SPECIALTIES

A. Safety Valves: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," construction; National Board certified, labeled, and factory sealed; constructed of bronze body with poppet-type safety valve for compressed-air service.

1. Pressure Settings: Higher than discharge pressure and same or lower than receiver pressure rating.

B. Air-Main Pressure Regulators: Bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 250-psig inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm operated, bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200-psig minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.

- E. Coalescing Filters: Coalescing type with activated carbon capable of removing water and oil aerosols; with color-change dye to indicate when carbon is saturated and warning light to indicate when selected maximum pressure drop has been exceeded. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.
- F. Mechanical Filters: Two-stage, mechanical-separation, air-line filters. Equip with deflector plates, resin-impregnated-ribbon filters with edge filtration, and drain cock. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.
- G. Air-Line Lubricators: With drip chamber and sight dome for observing oil drop entering airstream; with oil-feed adjustment screw and quick-release collar for easy bowl removal. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated. Provide with automatic feed device for supplying oil to lubricator.

## 2.7 QUICK COUPLINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aeroquip Corporation; Eaton Corp.
  - 2. Bowes Manufacturing Inc.
  - 3. Foster Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 4. Harris, Inc.
  - 5. McMaster-Carr
  - 6. Parker Hannifin Corp.; Fluid Connectors Group; Quick Coupling Div.
  - 7. Schrader-Bridgeport; Amflo Div.
  - 8. Snap-Tite, Inc.; Quick Disconnect & Valve Division.
- B. General Requirements for Quick Couplings: Assembly with locking-mechanism feature for quick connection and disconnection of compressed-air hose.
- C. Automatic-Shutoff Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with O-ring or gasket seal and stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
  - 1. Socket End: With one-way valve and threaded inlet for connection to piping or threaded hose fitting.
  - 2. Plug End: Flow-sensor-bleeder, check-valve type with barbed outlet for attaching hose.
- D. Valve-less Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
  - 1. Socket End: With O-ring or gasket seal, without valve, and with barbed inlet for attaching hose.
  - 2. Plug End: With barbed outlet for attaching hose.

## 2.8 HOSE ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Compatible hose, clamps, couplings, and splicers suitable for compressed-air service, of nominal diameter indicated, and rated for 300 psig minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Hose: Reinforced wire-braid, CR-covered hose for compressed-air service.
  - 2. Hose Clamps: Stainless steel clamps or bands.

3. Hose Couplings: Two-piece, straight-through, threaded brass or stainless steel O-ring or gasket-seal swivel coupling with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.
  4. Hose Splicers: One-piece, straight-through brass or stainless steel fitting with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.
- B. Flexible air hose manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. McMaster Carr
  2. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  3. Flexicraft Industries.
  4. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  5. Mercer Rubber Co.
  6. Metraflex, Inc.
  7. Proco Products, Inc.
- C. Flexible air hose shall be kink-resistant rubber suitable for outdoor applications at 200 PSIG minimum working pressure.
1. Air hose shall comply with the following standards: ASTM D2240, D412, and D792.
- D. Hose Reels: Heavy duty hose reel mounted overhead with 50 feet of 1/2" compressed air hose capable of 300 PSI, with ratchet lock. Hose reel to be Hubbell model HBLHR5050HD or equal by Reelcraft.
- 2.9 COMPRESSED AIR STATION DROP
- A. Description: Pre-fabricated station drop suitable for compressed-air service, of nominal diameter indicated, and rated for 300 psig minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated. Equipped with in-line shut-off valve, drip leg, outlet cap, chain, and labeled for the gas type.
1. Size: 1/2 inch.
  2. Gas: Compressed Air.
  3. Outlet Connection: 9/16"-18 RH.
  4. Length: 25 inches.
  5. Single Outlet.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping and Compressed-Air Piping between Air Compressors and Receivers: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
1. NPS 2 and Smaller:
    - a. Steel pipe: Schedule 40, malleable-iron fittings, and threaded joints.
    - b. Copper tube: Type K wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
    - c. Aluminum pipe: solid-brass nickel-plated fittings; push-connect bite ring couplings.
- B. Drain Piping: Use the following piping materials:
1. NPS 2 and Smaller:
    - a. Copper tube: Type M wrought-copper fittings, and brazed or soldered joints.

- b. Aluminum pipe: solid-brass nickel-plated fittings; push-connect bite ring couplings.

### 3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Valve Applications" Article in Division 22 Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. General-Duty Valves for Aluminum Piping System: Provide valves, made by piping system manufacturer, that are compatible with piping.
  - 1. Ball Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: NPT ends, or push-connect bite ring ends.
  - 2. Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Tube to tube, with two roll-groove end couplings.
- C. Equipment Isolation Valves: Safety-exhaust, copper-alloy ball valve with exhaust vent and pressure rating at least as great as piping system operating pressure.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and to coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- E. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- F. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
- G. Install nipples, flanges, unions, transition and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Equipment and Specialty Flanged Connections:
  - 1. Use steel companion flange with gasket for connection to steel pipe.
  - 2. Use cast-copper-alloy companion flange with gasket and brazed or soldered joint for connection to copper tube. **Do not use soldered joints for connection to air compressors or to equipment or machines producing shock or vibration.**
- I. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
- J. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

- K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Installation of Aluminum Piping Systems
  - 1. Install aluminum piping systems in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, using manufacturer's recommended tools, accessories, and methods.
  - 2. Install branch connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger, to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
  - 3. Install branch connections NPS 2 and smaller, to compressed-air mains using aluminum piping system reducing outlet tee with water trapping capabilities. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
  - 4. Support aluminum pipe using manufacturer's hangers and supports, designed for use with the system.
  - 5. Allow for expansion and contraction of aluminum piping system.
  - 6. Do not use plastic components or plastic fittings of any kind within pressurized aluminum piping system. This limitation applies to main headers, branches, and drops.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads. Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Join according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Grooved Joints: Assemble couplings with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join in accordance with AWWA C606 for grooved joints. Do not apply lubricant to prelubricated gaskets.
- G. Press-Sealed Joints: Join with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer, using operators qualified in accordance with "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Dissimilar Metal Piping Material Joints: Use dielectric fittings.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valves and unions or flanged joints at compressed-air piping to air compressors.

- C. Install shutoff valve at inlet to each automatic drain valve, filter, lubricator, and pressure regulator.
- D. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow to and from compressed-air piping specialties and equipment.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.7 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter of each air compressor.
- B. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible pipe connectors in steel compressed-air piping.

### 3.8 SPECIALTY INSTALLATION

- A. Install safety valves on receivers in quantity and size to relieve at least the capacity of connected air compressors.
- B. Install air-main pressure regulators in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors.
- C. Install air-line pressure regulators in branch piping to equipment.
- D. Install automatic drain valves on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate onto nearest floor drain.
- E. Install coalescing filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and upstream from mechanical filters. Mount on wall at locations indicated.
- F. Install air-line lubricators in branch piping to machine tools. Mount on wall at locations indicated.
- G. Install quick couplings at piping terminals for hose connections.
- H. Install hose assemblies at hose connections.

### 3.9 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping".
- B. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized or black steel pipe.



- C. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- D. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use steel pipe sleeves.
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.10 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  - 2. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass stamped steel with set screw or spring clips.
  - 3. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

### 3.11 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.
- B. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.

### 3.12 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger, support, and anchor devices.
- B. Horizontal Piping Support:
  - 1. Install hangers for copper tubing and steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
  - 2. Install hangers for aluminum piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
  - 3. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
  - 4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Ft. (30 m) or Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Maximum hangar spacing shall be 6'-0".
  - 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Ft. (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- C. Vertical Piping Support:

1. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and steel piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
  2. Support vertical runs of aluminum piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
  3. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
  4. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
- D. Provide all inserts, hangers, anchors, guides, and supports to properly support and retain piping, conduits and equipment; to control expansion, contraction, anchorage, drainage, and prevent sway and vibration.
- E. Provide supplementary angles, channels, and plates where supports are required between structural members, span the space and attach to ride structural members by welding, bolting, or anchors.
- F. Provide hangers, threaded rods, unistrut, clamps, anchors, and all other miscellaneous specialties for the attachment of hangers and supports to structure.
- G. Do not suspend a pipe from another pipe or service. Do not support another service from piping.

### 3.13 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install identifying labels and devices for general-service compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Piping Leak Tests for Metal Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig. Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
  2. Piping Leak Tests for Aluminum Compressed-Air Piping: Test new piping system and modified parts of existing piping system. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping system to pressure of 15 psig, hold pressure for 10 minutes. Repeat until reaching required operating pressure, not to exceed 220 psig. Once desired operating pressure is met, let stand for one hour.
  3. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  4. Inspect filters, lubricators, and pressure regulators for proper operation.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 221513**



## **SECTION 221519 - PACKAGED AIR COMPRESSORS AND RECEIVERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Lubricated, reciprocating air compressors.
  2. Inlet-air filters.
  3. Intake silencer.
  4. Aftercooler
  5. Refrigerant compressed-air dryers.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PACKAGED AIR COMPRESSORS AND RECEIVERS

- A. General Description: Factory-assembled, -wired, -piped, and -tested; electric-motor-driven; air-cooled; continuous-duty air compressors and receivers that deliver air of quality equal to intake air.
- B. Receivers: Steel tank constructed according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
1. Pressure Rating: At least as high as highest discharge pressure of connected compressors, and bearing appropriate code symbols.
  2. Interior Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating.
  3. Accessories: Include safety valve, pressure gage, drain, and pressure-reducing valve.

- C. Mounting Frame: Fabricate mounting and attachment to pressure vessel with reinforcement strong enough to resist packaged equipment movement during a seismic event when base is anchored to building structure.

## 2.2 LUBRICATED, RECIPROCATING AIR COMPRESSORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. CompAir, Ltd.
2. Curtis-Toledo.
3. Gardner Denver, Inc.
4. General Air Products, Inc.
5. Ingersoll-Rand; Air Solutions Group.
6. Powerex, Inc.
7. Quincy Compressor; an EnPro Industries company.

- B. Compressor(s): Lubricated, reciprocating-piston type with splash lubricated compression chamber and crankcase.

1. Submerged gear-type oil pump.
2. Oil filter.
3. Combined high discharge-air temperature and low lubrication-oil pressure switch.
4. Air Filter: Dry type, with maintenance indicator and cleanable, replaceable filter element.
5. Belt guard totally enclosing pulleys and belts.

- C. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Air Compressor(s): Splash lubricated two stage.
2. Standard-Air Capacity of Each Air Compressor: 17.2 acfm free air.
3. Discharge-Air Pressure Set Point: 100 psig
4. Maximum Operating Pressure: 175 psig.
5. Mounting: Tank mounted.
6. Motor :
  - a. Horsepower: 5 hp.
  - b. Speed: 942 rpm.
7. Unit Electrical Characteristics:
  - a. Volts: 460.
  - b. Phase(s): Three.
  - c. Hertz: 60 Hz.
8. Receiver: ASME construction steel tank.
  - a. Arrangement: Vertical.
  - b. Capacity: 80 gallon.
  - c. Interior Finish: Epoxy coating.
  - d. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.

- e. Drain: Automatic valve.

## 2.3 INLET-AIR FILTERS

- A. Description: Combination inlet-air filter-silencer, suitable for remote installation, for each air compressor.
  - 1. Construction: Weatherproof housing for replaceable, dry-type filter element, with silencing muffler or other method of sound reduction.

## 2.4 REFRIGERANT COMPRESSED-AIR DRYERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Hankison HPR-15 - 115V or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Atlas Copco.
  - 2. Curtis-Toledo.
  - 3. Hankison International.
  - 4. Ingersoll-Rand; Air Solutions Group.
  - 5. Pioneer Air Systems, Inc.
  - 6. Pneumatech Inc.
  - 7. SPX Air Treatment.
  - 8. Van Air Systems, Inc.
  - 9. Zeks Compressed Air Solutions.
- B. Description: Noncycling, air-cooled, electric-motor-driven unit with steel enclosure and capability to deliver 35 deg F, 100-psig air at dew point. Include automatic ejection of condensate from airstream, step-down transformers, disconnect switches, inlet and outlet pressure gauges, thermometers, automatic controls, and filters.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - 1. Standard-Air Capacity of Each Compressed-Air Dryer: 15 scfm free air.
  - 2. Pressure: 100 psig.
  - 3. Maximum Inlet Air Pressure: 250 psig.
  - 4. Maximum Inlet Temperature: 120°F
  - 5. Leaving-Air Dew Point Temperature: 50°F.
  - 6. Electrical Characteristics:
    - a. Volts: 115.
    - b. Phase(s): Single.
    - c. Hertz: 60 Hz.

## 2.5 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION**

- A. Equipment Mounting: Install air compressors on concrete bases using elastomeric pads . Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following devices on compressed-air equipment:
  - 1. Thermometer, Pressure Gage, and Safety Valve: Install on each compressed-air receiver.
  - 2. Pressure Regulators: Install downstream from air compressors and dryers.
  - 3. Automatic Drain Valves: Install on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate over nearest floor drain.
- C. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Check for lubricating oil in lubricated-type equipment.
  - 3. Check belt drives for proper tension.
  - 4. Verify that air-compressor inlet filters and piping are clear.
  - 5. Check for equipment vibration-control supports and flexible pipe connectors and verify that equipment is properly attached to substrate.
  - 6. Check safety valves for correct settings. Ensure that settings are higher than air-compressor discharge pressure but not higher than rating of system components.
  - 7. Check for proper seismic restraints.
  - 8. Drain receiver tanks.
  - 9. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 10. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

#### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

#### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify general-service air compressors and components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air compressors and air dryers.

**END OF SECTION 221519**



## **SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Sinks.
  - 2. Emergency showers and eyewash station.
  
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers."

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- C. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Americans with Disabilities Act" for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- D. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- E. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.

- F. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
1. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
  2. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
  3. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.

#### 1.5 LEAD FREE COMPLIANCE

- A. Several products described in this section fall under jurisdiction of the Federal Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act (42 USC 300G) which mandates that effective January 4, 2014 the wetted surfaces of any valve, fitting or fixture that comes in contact with potable water must have a weighted-average lead content of no more than 0.25 percent. The contractor is responsible to provide products and components that comply with lead free laws.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 UTILITY SINK SK-1

- A. Sturdy, 1-piece, double bowl, extra deep molded tub made with DURASTONE. 19 Gallon capacity PR TUB, 13" Deep. Provide tailpiece and p-trap as required. Provide McGuire H165LK chrome plated angle supply and loose key stop.
1. Manufacturers
    - a. Mustee
    - b. Fiat
    - c. Creative Industries
    - d. Williams
  2. Description: Stand-mounting utility sink.
    - a. Size: 40 x 24.
    - b. Color: White.
    - c. Faucet: Zurn Z812H1
    - d. Supplies: NPS 1/2 chrome plated copper with stops. Connect TMV-5 under sink.
    - e. Drain Piping: tailpiece and p-trap as required.

#### 2.2 EMERGENCY SHOWER AND EYEWASH ES-1

- A. Combination Units:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Acorn
    - b. Bradley Corporation.
    - c. Chicago Faucets.
    - d. Encon Safety Products.
    - e. Guardian Equipment Co.
    - f. Haws Corporation.

2. Description: Plumbed, barrier free, with emergency shower and eye/face wash equipment.
  - a. Piping: Schedule 40 galvanized steel, furnished with orange polyethylene pipe covers for corrosion resistance.
    - 1) Unit Supply: 1-1/4" NPT female inlet from top.
    - 2) Unit Drain: 2" NPT female outlet at side near bottom.
    - 3) Shower Supply: NPS 1 with flow regulator and stay-open ball valve.
    - 4) Eye/Face Wash Supply: NPS 1/2 with flow regulator and stay-open ball valve.
  - b. Shower Capacity: Deliver tempered water at rate not less than 20 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
    - 1) Control-Valve Actuator: Stainless steel panic bar.
    - 2) Shower Head: 10-inch diameter, orange ABS plastic.
  - c. Eye/Face Wash Equipment: With capacity to deliver tempered water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
    - 1) Eyewash Bowl: 11-3/4-inch diameter, orange ABS plastic.
  - d. ANSI compliant signage.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
  1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
  2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
  3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- E. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- F. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- G. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- H. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.

- I. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- J. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- K. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- L. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- M. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- N. Install escutcheons at piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- O. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
  - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.

2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.

B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 224000**

## **SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Sleeves.
5. Escutcheons.
6. Grout.
7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
8. Concrete bases.
9. Supports and anchorages.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

A. Welding certificates.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS**

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

## 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.

## 2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

## 2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

## 2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.7 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.



- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
  - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- O. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- P. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- Q. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.5 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.7 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### 3.8 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION 230500**

## **SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### **1.2 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### **2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### **2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.

- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

#### 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
  - 5. Provide shaft grounding ring.

#### 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)**

**END OF SECTION 230513**

## **SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Fastener systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Division 23 Section(s) "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Continuous threaded rod shall be used wherever possible. An engineered cable support system is acceptable. Chain, wire, or perforated straps shall not be permitted.

- D. Concrete inserts into poured concrete floor systems are permitted.
- E. Beam clamps, trapeze hangers, and clevis hangers shall be permitted.
- F. Supports from roof decking systems are not permitted.
- G. Concrete inserts into precast concrete plank are permitted.
- H. Powder activated fasteners are not allowed.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 2. Metal framing systems.
  - 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
  - 4. Pipe stands.
  - 5. Equipment supports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

#### 2.2 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.



## 2.3 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic or stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure. All hangers and supports shall be attached to the building structural steel system.
- B. Support from steel joist panel point is required.
- C. All hangers, supports and fastening methods used shall be suitable for the weight of the components being supported.
- D. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.4 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with G90 galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- G. Use 360° formed thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.

7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer or MSS SP-58 to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
  - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
  - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
  - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- N. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

**END OF SECTION 230529**

## **SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Isolation pads.
  2. Housed spring mounts.
  3. Elastomeric hangers.
  4. Spring hangers.
  5. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each product.

#### **1.4 DEFINITIONS**

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  3. California Dynamics Corporation.
  4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  5. Kinetics Noise Control.
  6. Mason Industries.

7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  8. Vibration Isolation.
  9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- C. Mounts: Double deflection, elastomeric isolation mounts.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.
- D. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- E. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- F. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.2 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.



1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation devices to indicate capacity range.

### 2.3 FLEXIBLE PIPING CONNECTORS

- A. Molded reinforced neoprene construction with steel flanges and control rods.
- B. Flexible steel braided construction with steel flanges.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- B. Installation of vibration isolation, piping connections, and inertia bases shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Rigid connections between vibrating equipment and the building shall not be permitted.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- E. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- G. Drilled-in Anchors:
  1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling.

Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

**END OF SECTION 230548**

## **SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.
  - 5. Warning tags.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Identification requirements shall meet ASME A13.1.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS (Including Branch Selector labels.)**

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White
  - 3. Background Color: Red
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
  - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm).

7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number,

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

C. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

D. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

E. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

F. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.

2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

A. Provide one of the following:

1. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

2. Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Label characteristics:

- a. Letter Color: White.
- b. Background Color: Black.
- c. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- d. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- e. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- f. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
- g. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
- h. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire or Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 BRANCH SELECTOR LABELS INSTALLATION

- A. Install an equipment label as instructed above.
- B. Provide label beneath every pair of refrigerant connectors. Labels shall indicate the fan coil it serves utilizing the name provided on the drawings. Spare inputs shall be labeled "SPARE".

### 3.5 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Chilled-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 2. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 3. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 4. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on a safety-purple background.
  - 5. Condensate: White letters on a safety-green background.
    - a. Indicate whether piping is connected to primary or secondary drain.
  - 6. Low-Pressure Steam Piping: White letters on a safety-gray background.
  - 7. High-Pressure Steam Piping: White letters on a safety-black background.
  - 8. Steam Condensate Piping: Black letters on a safety-white background.

### 3.6 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
  - 1. Blue: For supply ducts.
  - 2. Green color: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
  - 3. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

**END OF SECTION 230553**

## **SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: Submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.



3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.
  1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC or NEBB.
  2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Conference: Meet with Engineer, Construction Manager, and Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  1. Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
  1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Engineer.
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Motors.
  - 2. Fans and ventilators.
  - 3. Radiant heaters.
  - 4. Unit heaters.

5. Heat exchangers.
6. Condensing units.
7. Energy-recovery units.
8. Air-handling units.
9. Heating and ventilating units.
10. Rooftop air-conditioning units.
11. Heating-only makeup air units.
12. Split-system air conditioners.
13. Variable-refrigerant-flow systems.
14. Heat pumps.
15. Coils.
16. Fan coil units.
17. Unit ventilators.
18. Radiators.
19. Convectors.
20. Finned-tube radiation heaters.

### 3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  1. Measure total airflow.

- a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
  - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
  - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
  - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
  3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
  1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Air pressure drop.
4. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### 3.10 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 5 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 5 percent.
3. Hydronic Flow Rate: Plus or minus 5 percent.

### 3.11 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.

10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.



- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil identification.
- d. Capacity in Btu/h.
- e. Number of stages.
- f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
- g. Rated amperage.
- h. Air flow rate in cfm.
- i. Face area in sq. ft..
- j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Heat output in Btu/h.
- b. Air flow rate in cfm.
- c. Air velocity in fpm.
- d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- f. Voltage at each connection.
- g. Amperage for each phase.

G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.

- f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- H. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- I. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
  1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Apparatus used for test.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Make.
    - f. Number from system diagram.
    - g. Type and model number.
    - h. Size.
    - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Air flow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

J. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.12 INSPECTIONS

A. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Commissioning Authority.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Commissioning Authority.
3. Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

B. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 230593**

## **SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulation and jacketing for the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, supply, return, exhaust, and outdoor air duct.
  - 2. Outdoor, supply, return, exhaust, and outdoor air duct.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. LEED Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
  - 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 6 inches square.
  - 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 6 inches square.
  - 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All duct insulation and jacketing systems shall comply with SMACNA Standards.

- B. All duct insulation and jacketing systems shall comply with Midwest Insulation Contractors Association (MICA), National Commercial and Industrial Insulation Standards, 7th Edition.
- C. All duct insulation shall comply with the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 90.1.
- D. Work shall be performed at the temperatures and humidity recommended by the product manufacturers.
- E. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- F. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- G. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
  - 1. Ductwork Mockups:
    - a. One 10-foot (3-m) section each of rectangular and round straight duct.
    - b. One each of a 90-degree mitered round and rectangular elbow, and one each of a 90-degree radius round and rectangular elbow.
    - c. One rectangular branch takeoff and one round branch takeoff from a rectangular duct. One round tee fitting.
    - d. One rectangular and round transition fitting.
    - e. Four support hangers for round and rectangular ductwork.
    - f. Each type of damper and specialty.
  - 2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
  - 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

1.7 DELIVERY AND STORAGE OF MATERIALS

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packaging.
- B. Storage: Store and protect products in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Store in a dry indoor location. Protect insulation materials from moisture and soiling.
- C. Do not install insulation that has been damaged or wet. Remove it from the jobsite.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with the requirements listed in "HVAC Duct Material Schedule" on drawings and "Duct Insulation Schedule" in this specification.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 1290, Type III, to maximum service temperature of 250 deg F, and ASTM C1136, Type II, facing material.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite FSK or Microlite PSK.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Atmosphere Duct Wrap.
    - d. Owens Corning; SoftR Duct Wrap FRK or White PSK.
  - 2. The duct wrap insulation shall consist of a blanket of glass or mineral fibers factory-laminated to a foil reinforced (FRK) or white poly scrim kraft (PSK) vapor retarder facing with a 2 inch (min.) stapling edge and taping flange on one edge.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. Provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ or AP facing/jacketing.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.

- d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials. Insulation shall be provided with or without pressure sensitive adhesive in sheet or roll form.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include:
    - a. Armacell – Armatuff SA for exterior applications only
    - b. Armacell – AP Armaflex FS for interior applications
    - c. K-Flex, USA; Clad WT Sheet or AL Sheet
  - 2. Elastomeric Core:
    - a. Thermal Conductivity: 75 deg F mean temperature; 0.25 per ASTM C 177
    - b. Water Vapor Permeability: 0.05 per ASTM E 96, Procedure A.
    - c. Water Absorption, % by Volume: 0.2% or less per ASTM C 209.
    - d. Product shall be tested for mold, fungi and bacterial resistance, passing value, per UL181, ASTM G21 and ASTM G22.
    - e. Weatherability: Excellent per ASTM D471.
    - f. Durability: Excellent per ASTM D1000.
    - g. Use range of 180 deg F to -297 deg F per ASMT C534.
  - 3. Factory applied jacket for exterior applications: Embossed laminate surface, requiring no painting, puncture resistant, UV resistant, minimum 12 mil thick.
    - a. Color: White or aluminum.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.4 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: Aluminum.

## 2.5 FIELD-APPLIED OUTDOOR JACKETS

- A. Jacketing:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include:
    - a. Alumaguard; All-Weather.
    - b. 3M VentureClad; 1579GCW.
    - c. FlexClad; FlexClad-400
    - d. Victory Clad; VC 600 Plus Series
  2. Material minimum thickness: 15 mils
  3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials
  4. Color: Aluminum Embossed
  5. Adhesion: Self-adhering



2.6 TAPES

- A. FSK and PSK Tape: Foil-face for FSK, white face for PSK, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.7 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
      - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
    - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
      - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
    - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.

- d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  - 3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
      - 2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
    - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
  - 4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
      - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
    - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
  - 5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) GEMCO.
      - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.
- 2.8 CORNER ANGLES
- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

#### **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Insulation and insulation systems shall be installed in compliance with all insulation manufacturers' requirements and recommendations.
- B. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- C. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- D. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- E. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- F. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
3. Seal annular space at non-rated floors with non-combustible materials.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
  - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
  - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
3. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

4. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not over-compress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  3. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.7 OUTDOOR DUCT INSULATION AND JACKETING SCHEDULE

- A. Outdoor duct insulation and jacketing shall comply with the following:
1. Comply with all manufacturer's written instructions. Fiber board insulation 2 inches thick, with embossed aluminum jacket. No mechanical fasteners, including but not limited to screws, nails, clips, and staples shall be used for installing aluminum jacketing. No such fasteners shall protrude through aluminum jacketing. Jacketing system shall be water-

tight with all seams continuously sealed with adhesive. Install jacketing system per manufacturer's instructions. Insulation and jacketing shall be pitched to shed water and prevent ponding on top of the duct.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect or Engineer, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. The insulation contractor shall advise the general and/or mechanical contractor as to requirements for protection of the insulation work during the remainder of the construction period to avoid damage and deterioration of the finished insulation work. Insulation system shall be protected to prevent damage through duration of project.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Items not requiring insulation:
  - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
  - 2. Fabric ducts.
  - 3. Double wall ducts.
  - 4. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  - 5. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 6. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 7. Flexible connectors.
  - 8. Vibration-control devices.
  - 9. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.
  - 10. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 11. Supply duct exposed in the space it is conditioning.
  - 12. Return duct in conditioned space or return plenum.

### 3.10 INDOOR DUCT INSULATION AND JACKETING SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with FSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  - 2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- B. Exposed, round, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with PSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  - 2. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
  - 3. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- C. Concealed, round, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with FSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- D. Exposed, round, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with PSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density
  2. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
  3. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- E. Concealed (in plenum) and exposed, round, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. None Required
- F. Concealed (in unconditioned cavity), round, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with FSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- G. Concealed and exposed, round, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. None Required
- H. Exposed, round, exhaust-air duct insulation to the outdoors shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with PSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density
  2. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
  3. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- I. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with FSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  3. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
- J. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with PSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  3. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
- K. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with FSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  3. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
- L. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with PSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  3. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or AP: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).
- M. Concealed and exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. None Required.
- N. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation to the outdoors shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket with PSK jacket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density
  2. Flexible elastomeric: 1 inch thick.



3. Mineral-Fiber board with ASJ or FSK: Nominal 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (installed minimum R value of 6.0).

**3.11 OUTDOOR DUCT INSULATION AND JACKETING SCHEDULE**

- A. Outdoor duct insulation and jacketing shall comply with the following:

1. Mineral fiber board insulation 2 inches thick with embossed aluminum jacket.

**END OF SECTION 230713**

## **SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
  - 2. Hydronic piping, indoors and outdoors.
  - 3. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
  - 2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Samples: PVC jacketing color samples shall be submitted to Architect for approval.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
  - 5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 6. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Materials and installation in accordance with NFPA 255 and UL 723.
- D. Insulation thickness shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 90.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials and Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
  - 2. Maximum "K" Value: 0.40 at 300° F. (OSDM)

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Waterproof vapor retarder. (OSDM)
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Proto PVC
    - e. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company. Eagle Bridges.
  - b. Eagle Bridges.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

### A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ Plus or ASJ Max: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

### A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. All PVC jacketing and materials shall comply with ASTM E 84 for a flame-spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  4. Color: White.
  5. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    - c. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    - b. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
  3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

#### **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide continuous vapor barrier on all insulation.
- B. All insulation shall be applied so that there is no fiberglass exposed to the air stream without filters downstream. All fiberglass insulation, including all exposed edges, shall be coated, or mylar or other suitable material shall be provided between fiberglass and the airstream.



- C. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- D. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- E. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- F. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- G. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- H. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- I. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- J. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- K. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- L. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- M. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- N. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- O. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

- P. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- Q. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- R. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3. Seal annular space at non-rated floors with non-combustible materials.

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### 3.8 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.
  4. Geothermal piping in conditioned areas.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE – Provide thickness as required by ASHRAE 90.1 latest edition.

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric - ½” thick minimum
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric – 1” thick minimum
- C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric – 1” thick minimum

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed in mechanical spaces not serving as return air plenums: (Exposed piping shall include, but is not limited to, piping in mechanical spaces)
  - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils thick.
- E. Piping, Exposed in mechanical spaces serving as return air plenums: (Exposed piping shall include, but is not limited to, piping in mechanical spaces)

Aluminum, Stucco Embossed. Thicknesses per table:

Outer Insulation Diameter (inches)	Minimum Aluminum Jacket Thickness, inches	
	Rigid Insulation	Non-Rigid Insulation
≤ 8	0.016	0.016
> 8 and ≤ 11	0.016	0.020
> 11 and ≤ 24	0.016	0.024

3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction, Liquid, and Hot-Gas Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction, Liquid, and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Insulation shall be the following:

- 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- C. Condensate Piping: Insulation is not required.

3.14 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed and Exposed: Exposed piping includes piping on roof serving AHU coils, from roof opening to coil connection.
  - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed. Thicknesses per table:

Outer Insulation Diameter (inches)	Minimum Aluminum Jacket Thickness, inches	
	Rigid Insulation	Non-Rigid Insulation
≤ 8	0.016	0.016
> 8 and ≤ 11	0.016	0.020
> 11 and ≤ 24	0.016	0.024

**END OF SECTION 230719**

## **SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

#### **1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Refer to Specification "Section 017329 - Cutting and Patching" for work related to wall penetrations.

#### **1.3 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
  - 1. Refrigerant piping.
  - 2. Condensate-drain piping.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Single continuous lengths of pre-insulated Line Sets up to 100 feet to prevent additional connection points between equipment.
- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
  - 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.
- C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410a:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

#### **1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Warranty Certificate.



1.7      PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A.      Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1      COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A.      Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B.      Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C.      Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D.      Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- E.      Flexible Connectors:
  - 1.      Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2.      End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3.      Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
  - 4.      Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5.      Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- F.      Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings for Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1.      Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a.      Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries.
    - b.      Parker Hannifin; Sporlan Division (Zoomlock).
    - c.      RLS LLC.
  - 2.      Standard: UL 207; certified by UL for field installation. Certification as a UL-recognized component alone is unacceptable.
  - 3.      Housing: Copper.
  - 4.      O-Rings: HNBR compatible with specific refrigerant.
  - 5.      Tools: Manufacturer's approved special tools.
  - 6.      Minimum Rated Pressure: 700 psig (48 bar).

2.2      REFRIGERANTS

- A.      Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1.      Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
  - 2.      DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
  - 3.      Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
  - 4.      INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.

- B. R-410a, R-134a

### 2.3 UNIBODY DESIGN BALL VALVES

- A. Fully factory assembled
- B. Single piece "Unibody" design to eliminate most welded joints.
- C. Furnace brazed and pressure tested.
- D. Each ball valve is equipped with Schrader Valve for refrigerant service; valve rated to 700 psi.
- E. Seal cap design permits valve operation without removal of seal cap.
- F. Teflon® seals and gaskets (no synthetic O-rings).
- G. Forged brass body and seal cap.
- H. One year limited materials and workmanship warranty on Ball Valves

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- D. Condensate-Drain Piping, Indoors and Outdoors: Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at strainers if they are not an integral part of strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

- E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- G. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- H. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- I. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Compressor.
- J. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- K. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Intermediate traps required at 15 feet from base of suction riser.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Refer to unit specifications for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- L. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- M. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- O. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- P. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- Q. When brazing, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- R. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- S. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

### 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Provide Padded Hangers for Horizontal support.
  - 1. Glue 3/8 inch flexible elastomeric insulation to top of pipe hanger.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
- D. Install vertical clamp style support for vertical runs longer than 4 feet.
  - 1. Support Every 8 feet with a minimum of 2 supports on any vertical run longer than 4 feet.
  - 2. Provide 1-5/8" unistrut secured to the wall for vertical support.
  - 3. Provide insulation pipe hangers at supports at clamp.
    - a. Clamps must incorporate CFC-free PUR/PIR load-bearing segments embedded in the insulation.
    - b. Outer shells shall be 30 mils thick painted aluminum
    - c. Basis of Design: Armafix Insulated Pipe Hanger (Armacell)

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.

- c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
- d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

- 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
- 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
- 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
- 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

- 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
- 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
- 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
- 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
- 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

**END OF SECTION 232300**

## **SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Refer to Specification "Section 017329 - Cutting and Patching" for work related to ICF wall penetrations.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233716 "Fabric Ducts" for fabric ductwork.
3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
13. Air flow quantities for each air terminal device.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.



1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  - 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.

- c. SEMCO Incorporated.
  - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
  - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Galvanized with bonderized (paint grip) coating.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
  - 2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick.
  - 3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.

- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard".
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    - b. Johns Manville.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Microbial resistance: ASTM C1338, UL 2824, ASTM G21, ASTM G22
  - 3. Resistance to Erosion: ASTM C1071: Certified up to 6,000 fpm.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
    - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 6. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Rubatex International, LLC
  - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
  1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
  1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
  9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
    - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
  10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
  10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior assemblies and are not exposed to view, fill the opening between the assembly and the duct or duct insulation or jacketing with plenum-approved foam-in-place sealant or fiberglass insulation.
- L. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- M. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 3. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 4. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Outdoor-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 7. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Outdoor-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.



- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.

6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
  1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
  1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
  2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
  1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  4. Coils and related components.
  5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
  1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
  2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
  3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
  4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.

5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.9 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to drawings for double-wall duct locations.
- B. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated in Specifications and Drawings and as follows:
- C. Supply Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.
  3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- D. Return Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected Heat Pumps and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.
3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- E. Exhaust Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
- a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- F. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps and Terminal Units:
- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- G. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
- H. Liner:
1. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick. Return air ducts shall be lined at the following locations:
    - a. From RTU and ERV return/exhaust intake connection to minimum 10'-0" of duct run.
    - b. Where indicated on drawings for sound attenuation only.
  2. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
- I. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
    - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
    - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded or flanged.
- J. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
  2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
    - a. Velocity 1500 fpm or Lower: Conical tap.
    - b. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

**END OF SECTION 233113**

## **SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
  - 2. Manual volume dampers.
  - 3. Flange connectors.
  - 4. Turning vanes.
  - 5. Duct-mounted access doors.
  - 6. Flexible connectors.
  - 7. Flexible ducts.
  - 8. Duct accessory hardware.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
  - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 4. Ruskin Company.
  - 5. Pottorf.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced and counterbalanced pressure relief dampers.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.



- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, end pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. Electric actuators.
  - 4. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
  - 5. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  - 6. Screen Material: Aluminum.
  - 7. Screen Type: Insect.
  - 8. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
    - a. Ruskin Company.
    - b. Semco
    - c. Greenheck.
    - d. Nailor.
    - e. Pottorf.
  - 2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
  - 3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  - 4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

5. Frames:
    - a. Hat shaped.
    - b. 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - c. Mitered and welded corners.
    - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  6. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  8. Bearings:
    - a. Molded synthetic.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  9. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  10. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
  11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
  12. Accessories:
    - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
    - b. Provide a 2" standoff with locking positioner.
- B. Jackshaft:
1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
  2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- C. Damper Hardware:
1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-(0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: 0.018 inch (.46 mm) for 12" wide and narrower, or 0.039 inch (0.9 mm) thick, for greater than 12" wide, or as indicated, and of length to suit application, in compliance with UL 555.

2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Damper frame and blades shall be galvanized steel in gauges required b OL listing R-5531 installed in a factory mounted sleeve and shipped loose mounting angle.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

## 2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
  3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.6 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. METALAIRE, Inc.
  5. SEMCO Incorporated.
  6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  4. Duro Dyne Inc.
  5. Elgen Manufacturing.
  6. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  7. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  8. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  9. Nailor Industries Inc.
  10. Ruskin.
  11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. **Duct-Mounted Access Doors:** Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. **Door:**
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. **Frame:** Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. **Number of Hinges and Locks:**
    - a. Access Doors Equal or Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two cam locks. Not allowed for access to any device with fusible links and/or internal operators.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous hinge or cam latches.
    - c. Access Doors more than 18 Inches Square: Continuous hinge or cam latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. **Materials:** Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. **Coatings and Adhesives:** Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. Thermaflex.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:
  - 1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
  - 2. Flexible elbow support: 1 piece fully adjustable radius forming brace. To support 4" through 16" diameter flexible duct. UL 2043 listed and made of recycled material.

## 2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft or control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated. Refer to drawing for type.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  - 8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
  - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
  - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
  - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
  - 7. All fire dampers to have minimum dimensions of 12".
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

- L. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- M. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 48-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped in place.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with metal bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- P. Return or exhaust ducts must be connected to grills directly, flexible duct is prohibited.
- Q. Installation:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
- R. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches (1200 mm) apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm) per 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
  - 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches (1800 mm) o.c.
  - 5. Flex ducts connected to a ceiling diffuse shall be supported by a Flexible Elbow support.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  - 3. Operate fire dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
  - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

**END OF SECTION 233300**

## **SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Propeller fans.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  - 6. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PROPELLER FANS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aerovent: a Division of Twin City Fans, Inc.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company. (Basis of Design)
  - 3. Greenheck.



- B. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.
- C. Steel Fan Wheels: Aluminum blades riveted to heavy-gage steel spider bolted to steel hub.
- D. Fan Drive: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Drive:
  - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
  - 2. Statically and dynamically balanced.
  - 3. Selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
  - 4. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.
  - 5. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
  - 6. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  - 7. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
    - a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L<sub>10</sub> of 100,000 hours.
  - 8. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
  - 9. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
  - 10. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
  - 11. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.
- F. Accessories:
  - 1. Gravity Shutters: Aluminum blades in aluminum frame; interlocked blades with nylon bearings.
  - 2. Outlet screen.
  - 3. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
  - 4. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
  - 5. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  - 6. 45-degree weather hood.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on drawings.

## 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- B. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- C. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

**END OF SECTION 233423**

## **SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Registers and grilles.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 089000 "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
  - 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

- 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

- B. Samples for Verification: For custom color air devices, submit in manufacturer's standard color chips to verify color selected. One sample for each custom color selected is required.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

- 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  - 5. Duct access panels.

- B. Source quality-control reports.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 REGISTERS AND GRILLES**

#### **A. Louvered Supply/Return Grille:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Titus.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: See schedule notes.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: 35°/45° louver return.
5. Core Construction: 3/4" blade spacing.
6. Frame: 1-1/4" inches wide.
7. Border: Select border type based on wall type diffuser is to be installed in.
8. Supply grilles shall have double deflection blades.

### **2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- #### **A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- #### **A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.**
- #### **B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.**

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- #### **A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.**
- #### **B. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.**

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- #### **A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.**

**END OF SECTION 233713**

## **SECTION 237200 - AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Packaged energy recovery units.

#### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Design vibration isolation details, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of air-to-air energy recovery equipment.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
  - 3. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment or suspension systems will be attached.

Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: **One** set of each type of filter specified.
2. Fan Belts: **One** set of belts for each belt-driven fan in energy recovery units.
3. Wheel Belts: **One** set of belts for each heat wheel.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. ARI Compliance:

1. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ARI 1060, "Performance Rating of Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers for Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment."
2. Capacity ratings for air coils shall comply with ARI 410, "Forced-Circulation Air- Cooling and Air-Heating Coils."

- C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
2. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ASHRAE 84, "Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers."

- D. NRCA Compliance: Roof curbs for roof-mounted equipment shall be constructed according to recommendations of NRCA.

- E. UL Compliance:

1. Packaged heat recovery ventilators shall comply with requirements in UL 1812, "Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators"; or UL 1815, "Nonducted Heat Recovery Ventilators."



## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of air-to-air energy recovery equipment and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air-to-air energy recovery equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Packaged Energy Recovery Units: **Two** years.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Fixed-Plate Total Heat Exchangers: **10** years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Renewaire
  - 2. Greenheck
  - 3. Carrier
  - 4. Daikin
  - 5. Energy Wall
- B. Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Housing: Manufacturer's standard construction with corrosion-protection coating and exterior finish, hinged access doors, with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 1-inch-thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, exterior drain connection, and lifting lugs.
  - 1. Inlet: With damper for exhaust and supply.
    - a. Exhaust: Spring-return, two-position, motor-operated damper.
    - b. Supply: Spring-return, two-position, motor-operated damper.
- D. Heat Recovery Device: Fixed-plate total heat exchanger.
- E. Supply and Exhaust Fans:
  - 1. Motor and Drive: Direct driven
  - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
4. Spring isolators on each fan having 1-inch static deflection.

F. Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Filter Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lift out from access plenum.
3. Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
4. Thickness: 2 inches.
5. MERV: 8, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
6. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial agent.
7. Frame: Galvanized steel with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, hinged, and with pull and retaining handles.

G. Piping and Wiring: Fabricate units with space within housing for piping and electrical conduits. Wire motors and controls so only external connections are required during installation.

1. Indoor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure contains relays, starters, and terminal strip.
2. Outdoor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure contains relays, starters, and terminal strip.
3. Include disconnect switches.
4. Demand Control Ventilation Units to include Variable-speed controller to vary fan capacity from 100 to approximately 20 percent.

H. Accessories:

1. Economizer bypass.
2. Isolation Dampers: Opposed-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with cadmium-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame with operating rods connected with a common linkage, and electric damper operator factory wired. Blades shall have gaskets and edge seals, and shall be mechanically fastened to operating rod.
3. Duct flanges.
4. Rubber-in-shear isolators.
5. Hinged access doors with quarter-turn latches.
6. Unit shall be able to be installed in orientation shown on drawings.

## 2.2 CONTROLS

A. Stand-alone controls:

1. Operate during occupied hours.
2. Comparative enthalpy economizer with core-bypass

2.3 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS – See Schedules on drawings.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-to-air energy recovery equipment installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixed-plate heat exchangers so supply and exhaust airstreams flow in opposite directions.
  - 1. Install duct access doors in both supply and exhaust ducts, both upstream and downstream, for access to heat exchanger. Access doors and panels are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance and at a height to be accessible through the ceiling.
- D. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. **Manufacturer's Field Service:** Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. **Tests and Inspections:**

1. **Operational Test:** After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. **Adjust seals and purge.**
3. **Test and adjust controls and safeties.** Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
4. **Set initial temperature and humidity set points.**
5. **Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.**

- D. **Air-to-air energy recovery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.**

- E. **Prepare test and inspection reports.**

**3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-to-air energy recovery units.**

**END OF SECTION 237200**

## **SECTION 237416 – PACKAGED ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
  - 1. Casings.
  - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
  - 3. Coils.
  - 4. Refrigerant circuit components.
  - 5. Air filtration.
  - 6. Gas furnaces.
  - 7. Dampers.
  - 8. Electrical power connections.
  - 9. Controls.
  - 10. Accessories.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
  - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  - 5. Fans:
    - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
    - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
    - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.

6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
8. Include gas furnaces with performance characteristics.
9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning unit.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
3. Wind- Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

C. Product Certificates: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. System startup reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of outdoor, semi-custom, air-handling unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than seven years from date of Substantial Completion

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of RTUs and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE 15 Compliance: For refrigeration system safety.
- E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
- G. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design mounting and restraints for RTUs, including comprehensive engineering analysis.
  - 1. Design RTU supports to comply with wind performance requirements.
- H. Wind-Restraint Performance:
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: Per local conditions.
  - 2. Building Classification Category: Per architectural drawings.
  - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS – See schedules on drawings

2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AAON.
  2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  3. Daikin Applied.
  4. Trane.

2.4 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Wall Construction:
1. Outside Casing Wall: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge (1.3 mm) thick with manufacturer's standard finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
  2. Floor Plate: G90 (Z275) galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge (1.3 mm) thick.
  3. Casing Insulation:
    - a. Materials:
      - 1) Base of unit: Foil-faced, closed-cell insulation
      - 2) Exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor air sections: Insulated with a cleanable, foil-faced, fire-retardant, permanent, odorless glass fiber material.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Panels and Doors:
1. Panels:
    - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.
    - b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against air-pressure differential.  
OR  
Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - d. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.
  2. Locations and Applications:
    - a. Fan Section: Doors and/or inspection and access panels.



- b. Access Section: Doors.
- c. Coil Section: Inspection and access panels.
- d. Damper Section: Inspection and access panels OR doors.
- e. Filter Section: Inspection and access panels OR doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
- f. Mixing Section: Inspection and access panels OR doors.

E. Condensate Drain Pans:

- 1. Location: Each type of cooling coil and rotary heat exchanger.
- 2. Construction:
  - a. Single-wall, galvanized-steel or noncorrosive polymer or stainless steel sheet.
- 3. Drain Connection:
  - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end or both ends of pan.
  - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 (DN 25).
- 4. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. (10-mm/mm) slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
- 5. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
- 6. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
- 7. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep.
- 8. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
- 9. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

2.5 FANS, DRIVES, AND MOTORS

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- B. Supply-Air Fans: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized or painted steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
  - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
  - 2. Shaft Bearings:
    - a. Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of minimum 100,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
  - 3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.

- a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
4. Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; steel or aluminum hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
5. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch (25 mm).
6. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
7. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-)wide by 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
  - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Drives, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- D. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motors.
- E. Relief-Air Fan: Shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.
- F. Motors:
  1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  3. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  4. NEMA Design: <Insert designation>.
  5. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

## 2.6 COILS

- A. General Requirements for Coils:
  1. Comply with AHRI 410.
  2. Fabricate coils section to allow for removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
  3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
- B. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  1. Microchannel or fin and tube.
  2. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
- C. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:

1. Microchannel or fin and tube.
2. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Microchannel or fin and tube.
4. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
5. Suction-discharge bypass valve.

## 2.7 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, Scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
  1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  6. Minimum off-time relay.
  7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
  9. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.
  10. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

## 2.8 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Panel Filters:
  1. Description: Flat, non-pleated or Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
  4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.
- B. Adhesive, Sustainability Projects: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

## 2.9 DAMPERS

- A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed or parallel-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected

with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. (20 L/s per sq. m) at 1-inch wg (250 Pa) and 8 cfm/sq. ft. (40 L/s per sq. m) at 4-inch wg (1.0 MPa) rated in accordance with AMCA 500D).

- B. Barometric relief dampers.
- C. Damper Operators: Gear Driven
- D. Electronic Damper Operators:
  - 1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  - 2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
  - 3. Operator Motors:
    - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
    - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
  - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
  - 5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
  - 6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
    - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
    - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
    - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
    - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
    - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.
    - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.
  - 7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  - 8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
  - 9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  - 10. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): [24 V dc] [120 V ac] [230 V ac].
  - 11. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
  - 12. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
  - 13. Temperature Rating: [Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 50 deg C)] [40 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C)].

14. Run Time: [12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed] [30 seconds] [60 seconds] [120 seconds].

## 2.10 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.11 CONTROLS

- A. Electronic or DDC Controller:

1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
2. Safety Control Operation:
  - a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
  - b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F (54 deg C) enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
  - c. Fire-Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence as required.
  - d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply-air temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
  - e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day, including morning warm-up/pre-cool.
4. Unoccupied Period:
  - a. Heating Setback: 10 deg F (5.6 deg C).
  - b. Cooling Setback: System off.
  - c. Override Operation: Two hours.
5. Supply Fan Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
6. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Compressors off.
7. Fixed Minimum Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Per schedule.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close the outdoor-air damper.

## 2.12 ACCESSORIES

- A. Low-ambient kit using condenser fans for operation down to 35 deg F (1.7 deg C).
- B. Return-air bypass damper.
- C. Factory- or field-installed, demand-controlled ventilation.
- D. Safeties:
  - 1. Smoke detector.
  - 2. Condensate overflow switch.
  - 3. Phase-loss reversal protection.
  - 4. High and low pressure control.
- E. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.
- F. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
- G. Door switches to disable heating or reset set point when open.
- H. Oil separator.

## 2.13 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).
- E. Comply with Section 230546 "Coatings for HVAC" for corrosion-resistant coating.

## 2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 2. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
  - 4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
- B. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to unit mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), ASTM B88, Type M (ASTM B88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or roof drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

#### **3.3 DUCT CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

#### **3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
  - 3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 4. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  - 5. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 6. Verify that labels are clearly visible.



7. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
8. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
9. Verify that filters are installed.
10. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
11. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
12. Connect and purge gas line.
13. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
14. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
15. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
16. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
17. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
18. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Start refrigeration system.
  - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
  - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
19. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
20. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
21. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency:
  - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
  - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
  - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
  - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
  - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
  - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
22. Calibrate thermostats.
23. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
24. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
25. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F (8 deg C) above return-air temperature:
  - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
26. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
27. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.
  - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
28. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.

- b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.

- 29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

## END OF SECTION 237416.11

## **SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### **1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. For Compressor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation; Home Comfort and HVAC Building & Industrial Systems.
  - 2. Daikin.
  - 3. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.; HVAC Advanced Products Division.

4. Trane; a business of American Standard companies.

## 2.2 INDOOR UNITS 5 TONS OR LESS

### A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
3. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
4. Fan Motors:
  - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
  - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
5. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
    - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face.
    - 2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.
  - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
  - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
    - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
  - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

## 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

### A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
  - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
  - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
  - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 210/240.
3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 0 deg F.
6. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan. Reference specification 230993. Unit shall be under its own control.
- B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction and liquid line with flared fittings at both ends.
- D. Drain Hose: For condensate.

## 2.5 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Refer to schedule on drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Install compressor-condenser components on restrained, spring isolators with a minimum static deflection of 1 inch. See Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

**END OF SECTION 238126**

## **SECTION 238129 - VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes complete VRF HVAC system(s) including, but not limited to, delegated design and the following components to make a complete operating system(s) according to requirements indicated:
1. Indoor, concealed, ceiling-mounted units for ducting.
  2. Indoor, exposed, wall-mounted units.
  3. Outdoor, air-source units.
  4. System controls.
  5. System refrigerant and oil.
  6. System condensate drain piping.
  7. System refrigerant piping.
  8. Metal hangers and supports.
  9. Metal framing systems.
  10. Fastener systems.
  11. Pipe stands.
  12. Miscellaneous support materials.
  13. Piping and tubing insulation.
  14. System control cable and raceways.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Heat Recovery System Operation: System capable of operation with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. Three-Pipe System Design: One high pressure refrigerant vapor line, one low pressure refrigerant vapor line, and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units.
- E. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units. HRCUs used in two pipe systems act as an intermediate heat exchanger and include diverting valves and gas/liquid separators to move high and low pressure refrigerant between indoor units.
- F. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units and for HRCUs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor- and outdoor-unit and HRCU control.
6. Include description of control software features.
7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.
9. For system design software.
10. Indicate location and type of service access.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. All components shall comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2016.
2. All components shall comply with ASHRAE 90.1-2010.

- C. Shop Drawings: For VRF HVAC systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For fully and partially exposed indoor units with factory finishes viewable by occupants.

1. Include a Sample for each unique finish with unit identification, detailed description of application, and cross-referenced floor plans showing locations.

- E. Delegated-Design Submittals:

1. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.



1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, sections, and details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Structural floors, roofs and associated members to which equipment, piping, ductwork, cables, and conduit will be attached.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  4. Wall-mounted controllers located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices, and other installed devices.
  5. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Service access panels.
- B. Qualification Data:
1. For Installer: Certificate from VRF HVAC system manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
    - a. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
  2. For VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  3. For VRF HVAC system provider.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  2. Program Software Backup: On CD or DVD, USB media, or approved cloud storage platform, complete with data files.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters:
    - a. One set(s) for each unit with replaceable filters.
    - b. One set(s) for each unit type and unique size of washable filters.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - 1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of VRF HVAC systems and products.
  - 2. Shipped VRF HVAC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of 10 years within time of bid.
  - 3. VRF HVAC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least five completed projects.
  - 4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, and operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
  - 5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
    - a. Product research and development.
    - b. Product and application engineering.
    - c. Product manufacturing, testing, and quality control.
    - d. Technical support for system installation training, startup, commissioning, and troubleshooting of installations.
    - e. Owner training.
- B. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:
  - 1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. In-place facility located within 50 miles of Project.
  - 3. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
  - 4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
    - a. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
  - 5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
  - 6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
  - 7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
  - 8. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
  - a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
  - b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
5. Installers shall have staffing resources of competent, trained, and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.

D. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockups to show a finished installation for each of the following applications:
  - a. For each different indoor unit type with exposed surfaces viewable by occupants.
2. Mockups shall be operational.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.
- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
  1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
  2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. **Manufacturer's Warranty:** Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. The warranty period begins from substantial completion.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Structural failures.
  - b. Faulty operation.
  - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Base Bid Warranty Period:
  - a. For Compressor: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. For Parts, Including Controls: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. For Labor: 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Daikin AC (Americas), Inc.
  2. Carrier.
  3. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single source from single manufacturer including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Indoor and outdoor units, including accessories.
  2. Controls and software.
  3. Specialty refrigerant pipe fittings.

### **2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC system(s) with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, HRCUs, outdoor unit(s), piping, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system(s) complying with requirements indicated.
  1. Two-pipe or three-pipe system design.
  2. System(s) operation, heat recovery as indicated on Drawings.
  3. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance:
  1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
  2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
  3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.

4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Service Access:

1. Provide and document service access requirements.
2. Locate equipment and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.
3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch (450-mm) reach of the finished assembly.
5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
6. Comply with OSHA regulations.

B. System Design and Installation Requirements:

1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.

C. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be within the following range of outdoor-unit rated capacity:

1. Range acceptable to manufacturer.

D. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.

E. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.

F. Outdoor Conditions:

1. Suitable for outdoor ambient conditions encountered.
  - a. Design equipment and supports to withstand wind loads of governing code.
  - b. Design equipment and supports to withstand snow and ice loads of governing code.

G. Sound Performance: Sound levels generated by operating HVAC equipment shall be within requirements indicated.

1. Indoor: 45 dBA sound pressure.
2. Outdoor: 67 dBA sound pressure.

H. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.

- I. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 INDOOR, CONCEALED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS FOR DUCTING

- A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

- B. Cabinet:

- 1. Material: painted steel.
- 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
- 3. Duct Connections: Extended collar or flange, or designated exterior cabinet surface, designed for attaching field-installed ductwork.
- 4. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
- 5. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

- C. DX Coil Assembly:

- 1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
- 2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
- 3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
- 4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
- 5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
- 6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
- 7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
- 8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
- 9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

- D. Drain Assembly:

- 1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
- 2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
- 3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

- E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

- 1. Fan(s):
  - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
  - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
  - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion-resistant finish.
  - d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
- 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
- 3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
- 4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.

5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
1. Access: Bottom, side, or rear to accommodate field installation without removing ductwork and to accommodate filter replacement without need for tools.
  2. Media:
    - a. Replaceable: Extended surface, panel, or cartridge with antimicrobial treatment fiber media.
    - b. Washable: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.
- G. Unit Accessories:
1. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.
  2. Accessible filter box.
- H. Unit Controls:
1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
  2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
  3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
    - a. Unit inlet air temperature.
    - b. Coil entering refrigerant temperature.
    - c. Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
  4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
    - a. Analog Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
    - b. Digital Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
    - c. Digital Outputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
  5. Features and Functions:
    - a. Self-diagnostics.
    - b. Time delay.
    - c. Auto-restart.
    - d. External static pressure control.
    - e. Auto operation mode.
    - f. Manual operation mode.
    - g. Filter service notification.
    - h. Power consumption display.
    - i. Drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
    - j. Run test switch.
  6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor and outdoor units.
  7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- I. Unit Electrical:
1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.

2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways.

## 2.5 INDOOR, EXPOSED, WALL-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Gravity.
  - a. If a floor drain is not available at unit, provide unit with field-installed condensate pump accessory.
3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):
  - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
  - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.



- c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
    - d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
  2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
  3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
  4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
  5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
  1. Access: Front, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
  2. Washable Media: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.
- G. Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard discharge grille mounted in top or front face of unit cabinet.
- H. Unit Accessories:
  1. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.
  2. Condensate Pump: Integral reservoir and control with electrical power connection through unit power.
- I. Unit Controls:
  1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
  2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
  3. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
    - a. Analog Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
    - b. Digital Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
    - c. Digital Outputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
  4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification, run test switch.
  5. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
  6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- J. Unit Electrical:
  1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
  2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
  3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
  4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
  5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

2.6 OUTDOOR, AIR-SOURCE UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.
  - 1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
  - 2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit modules that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.
  - 3. All units installed shall be from the same product development generation.
  
- B. Cabinet:
  - 1. Galvanized steel and coated with a corrosion-resistant finish.
  - 2. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
  - 3. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.
  
- C. Compressor and Motor Assembly:
  - 1. One or more positive-displacement, direct-drive and hermetically sealed scroll compressor(s) with inverter drive and turndown to 15 percent of rated capacity.
  - 2. Protection: Integral protection against the following:
    - a. High refrigerant pressure.
    - b. Low oil level.
    - c. High oil temperature.
    - d. Thermal and overload.
    - e. Voltage fluctuations.
    - f. Phase failure and phase reversal.
    - g. Short cycling.
  - 3. Speed Control: Variable to automatically maintain refrigerant suction and condensing pressures while varying refrigerant flow to satisfy system cooling and heating loads.
  - 4. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
  - 5. Oil management system to ensure safe and proper lubrication over entire operating range.
  - 6. Crankcase heaters with integral control to maintain safe operating temperature.
  - 7. Fusible plug.
  
- D. Condenser Coil Assembly:
  - 1. Plate Fin Coils:
    - a. Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
    - b. Fins: Aluminum or copper, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
    - c. Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
  - 2. Aluminum Microchannel Coils:
    - a. Series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel-flow microchannels layered between refrigerant header manifolds.
    - b. Single- or multiple-pass arrangement.

- c. Construct fins, tubes, and header manifolds of aluminum alloy.
  3. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.
- E. Condenser Fan and Motor Assembly:
  1. Fan(s): Propeller type.
    - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
    - b. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
    - c. Statically and dynamically balanced.
  2. Fan Guards: Removable safety guards complying with OSHA regulations. If using metal materials, coat with corrosion-resistant coating to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
  3. Motor(s): Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings and rated for outdoor duty.
  4. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
  5. Speed Settings and Control: Variable speed with a speed range of least 75 percent.
  6. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.
- G. Unit Controls:
  1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
  2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
  3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
    - a. Refrigerant suction temperature.
    - b. Refrigerant discharge temperature.
    - c. Outdoor air temperature.
    - d. Refrigerant high pressure.
    - e. Refrigerant low pressure.
    - f. Oil level.
  4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, fuse protection, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, night setback control, power consumption display, run test switch equalize run time between multiple same components.
  5. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and other outdoor unit(s).
  6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- H. Unit Electrical:
  1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
  2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
  3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
  4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.

5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

I. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.7 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a TIA-485A or manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: open control communication between interconnected units.
3. Integration with Building Automation System: ASHRAE 135, BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:
  - a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
  - b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
  - c. Integration shall include monitoring, scheduling, and change of value notifications.
4. Operator Interface:
  - a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:
    - 1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
    - 2) Web interface through web browser software.
  - b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:
    - 1) On/off control.
    - 2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. Central Controllers:

1. Centralized control for all indoor and outdoor units from a single central controller location.
  - a. Include multiple interconnected controllers as required.
2. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.

3. Schedule operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
  - a. Sets schedule for daily, weekly, and annual events.
  - b. Schedule options available through central controller shall at least include the schedule options of controllers for indoor units.
4. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
5. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
6. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
7. Service diagnostics tool.
8. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
9. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display through central controller.
10. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures percent capacity.
11. Multiple RJ-45 ports for direct connection to a local PC and an Ethernet network switch.
12. Operator interface through a backlit, high-resolution color display touch panel and web accessible through standard web browser software.

C. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.
2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
4. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
5. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
6. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
7. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
8. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between.
9. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
10. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments between.
11. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
12. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
13. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
14. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
15. Occupancy detection.
16. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
17. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
18. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
19. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
20. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
21. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

D. Wireless Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Wireless Communication:

- a. Controller communicates to remote-mounted receiver that is wired to indoor unit(s).
    - 1) Include receivers with wireless controllers as required to complete installation.
    - 2) Low-voltage power required for receivers shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.
  - b. One wireless controller shall be capable of communicating with one or multiple receivers to control one or multiple indoor units as a group.
2. Controller Battery Life: Three years.
  3. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
  4. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
  5. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
  6. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
  7. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
  8. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
  9. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between.
  10. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
  11. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments between.
  12. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
  13. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
  14. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
  15. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
  16. Occupancy detection.
  17. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
  18. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
  19. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
  20. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
  21. Setting stored in non-volatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery for date and time only.

## 2.8 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT AND OIL

### A. Refrigerant:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.
2. ASHRAE 34, Class A1 refrigerant classification.
3. R-410a.

### B. Oil:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.

2.9 SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. If more than one material is listed, material selection is Contractor's option.
- B. Copper Tubing:
  - 1. Drawn-Temper Tubing: According to ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B).
  - 2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  - 3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
  - 4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys, and water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" for system piping requirements.

2.10 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR.
  - 2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  - 3. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- B. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:
  - 1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
  - 3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
  - 4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
  - 5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
- C. Divided-Flow Specialty Fittings: Where required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for proper system operation, VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall furnish specialty fittings with identification and instructions for proper installation by Installer.

2.11 METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Copper Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized or copper-coated steel.
- B. Plastic Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, galvanized-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.

## 2.12 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  2. Standard: MFMA-4.
  3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturred lips.
  4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel for use indoors and of stainless steel for use outdoors.
  6. Metallic Coating for Use Indoors: Electroplated zinc, hot-dip galvanized, or mill galvanized.
  7. Plastic Coating for Use Outdoors: PVC, polyurethane, epoxy, or polyester.

## 2.13 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
  2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.14 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Base: Stainless steel.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.



- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.15 MISCELLANEOUS SUPPORT MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- B. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated steel or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar material as rods.

## 2.16 PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

- A. Condensate Drain Piping and Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:
    - a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
    - b. Indoors: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
    - c. Outdoors: None.
  - B. Refrigerant Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:
    - 1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:
      - a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
      - b. Indoors: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - c. Outdoors: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 2. Field-Applied Jacket:
      - a. Concealed: None required.
      - b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick. Plenum-rated.
      - c. Outdoors, Exposed to View: Aluminum, smooth, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
- E. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Aluminum.

## 2.17 SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

- A. Cable Rating: Listed and labeled for application according to NFPA 70.

1. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
    - b. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
    - c. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
  2. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
  3. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- B. Low-Voltage Control Cabling:
1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Braided or foil shielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
  2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Braided or foil shielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
    - f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. TIA-485A Network Cabling:
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. Paired, one pair, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
  2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. Paired, one pair, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
    - e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
    - f. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

- D. Ethernet Network Cabling: TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 or 6a Insert category cable with RJ-45 connectors.
  - 1. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of category cable indicated.
  - 2. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
  - 3. Shielding: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP).
  - 4. Cable Rating: By application.
  - 5. Jacket: Thermoplastic.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control wiring and cable raceways.

## 2.18 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

## 2.19 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect factory-assembled equipment.
- B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

- D. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- E. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- F. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and outdoor pads for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed.
- G. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Clearance:
  - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
  - 2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.
- B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.
- D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.
- E. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.
- F. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.
- G. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.
- H. For floor- and wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within channels.
- I. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to supported equipment.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Install outdoor units on support structures indicated on Drawings.
- C. Roof-Mounted Installations: Anchor units to supports with removable, stainless-steel fasteners.

### 3.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping and tubing free of sags.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.
- K. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- L. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:
  - 1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.
  - 2. Install an adjustable stainless-steel hose clamp with adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide a leak-free installation.
  - 3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:

- a. Details indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Manufacturer's requirements.
  - c. Governing codes.
  - d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.
4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
  5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.
- B. Gravity Drains:
1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than one percent.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:
1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
  2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet (1.5 m). Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
- C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.
- E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.
- G. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:
1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- H. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.
- I. When brazing, purge refrigerant piping continually with dry nitrogen.

- J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
- K. Joint Construction:
  - 1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
  - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
  - 3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Braze Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
    - a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
    - b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- C. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units. Install piping and insulation to avoid abrasion from sharp edges during operational movement.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel.
  - 1. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Piping and Tubing Insulation:
1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
- M. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  2. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  4. Multiple horizontal pipes located indoors may use metal framing systems with split clamp attachment for each pipe in lieu of individual clevis hangers.
  5. Pipe stands for horizontal pipes located outdoors.
  6. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  7. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- N. Horizontal Piping Hanger Spacing and Rod Size: Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. Sizes through NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  3. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  4. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  5. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  6. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  7. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- O. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): If longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- P. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at midpoint intervals between floors, not to exceed 10 feet (3 m).
- Q. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified.
- R. Use hangers, supports, and attachments with galvanized coatings unless otherwise indicated.



- S. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- T. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1 inch (25 mm).
- U. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
  - 3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  - 4. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- V. Building Attachments: Install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
  - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated. Installation to maintain a continuous vapor barrier.

- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  
- C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed valve covers are unavailable, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  
- D. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
  
- E. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.10 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.
- B. Coordinate electrical requirements of provided equipment with electrical contractor – during the submittal phase. .
- C. Install nameplate or acrylic label with self-adhesive back for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Locate nameplate or label where easily visible.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or revised in this Section.

### 3.11 SOFTWARE

- A. Cybersecurity:
  - 1. Software:
    - a. Coordinate security requirements with IT department.
    - b. Ensure that latest stable software release is installed and properly operating.
    - c. Disable or change default passwords to password using a combination of uppercase and lower letters, numbers, and symbols at least eight characters in

length. Record passwords and turn over to party responsible for system operation and administration.

2. Hardware:
  - a. Coordinate location and access requirements with IT department.
  - b. Enable highest level of wireless encryption that is compatible with Owner's ICT network.
  - c. Disable dual network connections.

### 3.12 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Installation Method:

1. Install cables in raceways except as follows:
  - a. Within equipment and associated control enclosures.
2. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.
16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.

17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

D. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches (760 mm) apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

- F. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

3.13 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.14 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.

3.15 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system equipment, piping, tubing, and valves. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Identify system electrical and controls components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.
  1. Identify each control cable on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each cable shall have a unique tag.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The contractor shall keep a copy of the manufacturer's approved VRF piping diagram at the jobsite at all times.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.

1. Field service shall be performed by a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.
2. Manufacturer shall provide on-site visits during the course of construction at installation milestones indicated. System Installer shall coordinate each visit in advance to give manufacturer sufficient notice to plan the visit.
  - a. First Visit: Kick-off meeting.
  - b. Second Visit: At approximately 25 percent completion of system(s).
  - c. Third Visit: At approximately 50 percent completion of system(s).
  - d. Fourth Visit: At approximately 75 percent completion of system(s).
  - e. Fifth Visit: Final inspection before system startup.
3. Kick-off Meeting:
  - a. Meeting shall include system Installer and other related trades with sole purpose of reviewing VRF HVAC system installation requirements and close coordination required to make a successful installation.
  - b. Meeting shall be held at Project site and scheduled at a mutually agreed to time that occurs before the start of any part of system installation.
  - c. Meeting shall cover the following as a minimum requirement:
    - 1) Review of latest issue of Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications, relevant to VRF HVAC systems.
    - 2) Manufacturer's installation requirements and diagrams specific to systems being installed.
    - 3) Review of all relevant VRF HVAC system submittals, including delegated-design submittals.
    - 4) Required field activities related installation of VRF HVAC system.
    - 5) Project team communication protocol, contact information, and exchange of responsibilities for each party involved, including manufacturer, supplier, system Installer, and other related trades.
4. Site Visits: Activities for each site visit shall include the following:
  - a. Meet with VRF HVAC system Installer to discuss field activities, issues, and suggested methods to result in a successful installation.
  - b. Offer technical support to Installer and related trades as related to VRF system(s) being installed.
  - c. Review progress of VRF HVAC system(s) installation for strict compliance with manufacturer's requirements and design.
  - d. Advise and if necessary assist Installer with updating related refrigerant calculations and system documentation.
  - e. Issue a report for each visit, documenting the visit.
    - 1) Report to include name and contact information of individual making the visit.
    - 2) Date(s) and time frames while on-site.
    - 3) Names and contact information of people meeting with while on-site.
    - 4) Clearly identify and list each separate issue that requires resolution. For each issue, provide a unique identification number, relevant importance, specific location or equipment identification, description of issue, recommended corrective action, and follow-up requirements needed. Include a digital photo for clarification if deemed to be beneficial.

5. Final Inspection before Startup:
  - a. Before inspection, Installer to provide written request to manufacturer stating the system is fully installed according manufacturer's requirements and ready for final inspection.
  - b. Installer shall confirm that all changes to the VRF piping system have been noted by the manufacturer's representatives. Manufacturer's representatives shall update the VRF design program to reflect the "as-built" piping condition. As-built VRF design program files and proper refrigerant charge shall be calculated and communicated to the startup technician.
  - c. All system equipment and operating components shall be inspected. If components are inaccessible for inspection, they shall be made accessible before the final inspection can be completed.
  - d. Manufacturer shall provide a comprehensive inspection of all equipment and each operating component that comprise the complete system(s). Inspection shall follow a detailed checklist specific to each equipment and operating component.
  - e. Inspection reports for indoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
    - 2) Manufacturer model number.
    - 3) Serial number.
    - 4) Network address, if applicable.
    - 5) Each equipment setting.
    - 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
    - 7) Proper service clearance provided.
    - 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
    - 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
    - 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
    - 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
    - 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
    - 13) Controller location.
    - 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
    - 15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
    - 16) Condensate removal acceptable.
    - 17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
    - 18) Unit airflow direction within an acceptable range.
    - 19) If applicable, fan external static pressure setting.
    - 20) Filter type and condition acceptable.
    - 21) Noise level within an acceptable range.
    - 22) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
    - 23) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
    - 24) If applicable, ductwork properly connected.
    - 25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
    - 26) Remarks.
  - f. Inspection reports for outdoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
    - 2) Manufacturer model number.
    - 3) Serial number.
    - 4) Network address, if applicable.
    - 5) Each equipment setting.
    - 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
    - 7) Proper service clearance provided.
    - 8) Wiring and power connections correct.

- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 13) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 14) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 15) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 16) Remarks.

- g. Installer shall provide manufacturer with the requested documentation and technical support during inspection.
- h. Installer shall correct observed deficiencies found by the inspection.
- i. Upon completing the on-site inspection, manufacturer shall provide a written report with complete documentation describing each inspection step, the result, and any corrective action required.
- j. If corrective action is required by Installer that cannot be completed during the same visit, provide additional visits, as required, until deficiencies are resolved and systems are deemed ready for startup.
- k. Final report shall indicate the system(s) inspected are installed according to manufacturer's requirements and are ready for startup.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure prescribed by manufacturer using dry nitrogen.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours or manufacturer's requirement, whichever is greater. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
  - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
  - d. Date and time at start of test.
  - e. Test pressure at start of test.
  - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
  - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - h. Date and time at end of test.
  - i. Test pressure at end of test.
  - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
  - k. Remarks:

5. Submit test reports for Project record.

E. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
  - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
  - d. Date and time at start of test.
  - e. Test pressure at start of test.
  - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
  - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - h. Date and time at end of test.
  - i. Test pressure at end of test.
  - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
  - k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.
6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.

F. System Refrigerant Charge:

1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.
2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.

G. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- I. Manufacturer's local sales representative shall be onsite with manufacturer's service representative for the entire duration of all five scheduled site visits. In addition, manufacturer's local sales representative shall be onsite for one intermediate 2 hour site visit in between each site visit of the manufacturer's service representative. Manufacturer's local sales representative site visits shall entail activities described in subparagraph 3.16.A.4. During the site visits, sales representative shall verify that VRF piping and equipment are installed per the design. Any deviations from the design shall be noted by sales representative and contractor shall be directed by sales representative to change the installation to match the design. If a change to the design is necessary, the contractor shall provide detailed explanation and description of changes required. The contractor shall update the VRF piping diagram with any field changes such as re-routing, shortening, lengthening or changing diameter of a pipe segment, adding or



eliminating elbows and or fittings, resizing adding or eliminating indoor units, changing the mounting height, or moving the location of a device or fitting during installation. Those changes shall be communicated to the VRF manufacturer's sales and service representatives. The manufacturer's representatives upon receipt of those changes shall enter them into the manufacturer's VRF design program. If the VRF design program indicates that the deviations do not meet the program's criteria for proper system piping the manufacturer's representatives shall inform the contractor of any associated problems and resolution for those problems. The contractor shall correct piping to eliminate piping problems.

### 3.17 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.
  - 1. Service representative shall be a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
  - 3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
  - 2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
  - 3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
  - 4. Check each indoor unit, HRCU, and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
  - 5. Check sound levels of each indoor and outdoor unit.
- C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.
  - 1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.
- D. System Operation Report:
  - 1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system to owner, architect, and commissioning agent.
  - 2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
  - 3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than four hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.
    - a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.
- E. Witness:
  - 1. Invite Architect, Engineer, Owner, and Commissioning Agent to witness startup service procedures.
  - 2. Provide written notice not less than 14 business days before start of startup service.

3.18 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: Within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, manufacturer's service representative shall provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide at least four visits to Project (including other-than-normal occupancy hours) for this purpose. Site visits shall be at least 2 hours in duration. Site visits shall occur during heating and cooling seasons.

3.19 PROTECTION

- A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.
- C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.
- D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

3.20 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of system Installer who are manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include four service visits for preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper equipment and system operation. One visit shall coincide with commissioning authority's 10 month walk-through. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.21 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

3.22 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.

**B. Instructor:**

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified by VRF HVAC system manufacturer with current training on the system(s), equipment, and controls that are installed.
2. Instructor's credentials shall be submitted for review by Architect before scheduling training.
3. Instructor(s) shall have not less than three years of training experience with VRF HVAC system manufacturer and past training experience on at least three projects of comparable size and complexity.

**C. Schedule and Duration:**

1. Schedule training with Owner at least 20 business days before first training session.
2. Training shall occur before Owner occupancy.
3. Training shall be held at mutually agreed date and time during normal business hours.
4. Each training day shall not exceed eight hours of training. Daily training schedule shall allow time for one-hour lunch period and 15-minute break after every two hours of training.
5. Perform not less than eight total hours of training.

**D. Location:** Owner shall provide a suitable on-site location to host classroom training.

**E. Training Attendees:** Assume four people.

**F. Training Attendance:** For record purposes, document training attendees at the start of each new training session. Record attendee's name, signature, phone number, and e-mail address.

**G. Training Format:** Individual training modules shall include classroom training followed by hands-on field demonstration and training.

**H. Training Materials:** Provide training materials in electronic format to each attendee.

1. Include instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Video record each classroom training session and submit an electronic copy to Owner before requesting Owner acceptance of training.

**I. Acceptance:** Obtain Architect, Commissioning Agent, or Owner written acceptance that training is complete and requirements indicated have been satisfied.

**END OF SECTION 238129**

## **SECTION 238239 - UNIT HEATERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Propeller unit heaters.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- D. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
  - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
  - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
  - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: Finish colors for each type of cabinet unit heater indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Structural members to which cabinet unit heaters will be attached.
  3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
  6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that cabinet unit heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Include detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Cabinet Unit-Heater Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

1.8 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

- C. Seismic Performance: Cabinet unit heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7].

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Daikin Applied
  2. Berko, Marley International
  3. Markel Products
  4. QMark
  5. Trane
  6. Zhender Rittling
  7. Raywall
- B. Description
1. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.
  2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Comply with UL 2021.
- C. Housing
1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heaters before shipping
  2. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.
- D. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils
- Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16 inch (4 mm). Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F (288 deg C) at any point during normal operation.
1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
  2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.
- E. Fan and Motor
1. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.
  2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- F. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."
- G. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

- H. Capacities and characteristics – See schedules on drawings

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

#### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

**3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cabinet unit heaters.

**END OF SECTION 238239**



## **SECTION 260010 - SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 26. This Section is also referenced by related Work specified in other Divisions.

#### **1.2 COORDINATION - REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL RENOVATION AND DEMOLITION**

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than fourteen days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.
  - 3. Coordinate interruption with systems impacted by outage including, but not limited to the following:
    - a. Emergency lighting.
    - b. Elevators.
    - c. Fire-alarm systems.
- B. Where electrical work to remain is damaged or disturbed in the course of the work, the Contractor shall remove damaged portions and provide new products of equal capacity, quality, and functionality at his own expense.
- C. Unless otherwise noted, demolish and remove existing electrical materials and equipment only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Removal of equipment shall not interfere with existing operations.
- D. Turn off circuit breakers or switches serving abandoned circuits at the commencement of work and tag breaker or switch and label in panel schedule as "Spare".
- E. Remove conduit and wire back to panelboards or to nearest junction box that is not being removed and needs to remain in service. Wire shall be removed back to point of origin.
- F. Conduit and Junction Boxes:
  - 1. Conduit and boxes in existing walls to be demolished shall be removed.
  - 2. Conduit and boxes in existing walls to remain (if not reused) shall be removed.
  - 3. Conduit in existing or new ceilings that is not intended for reuse shall be removed back to the panel from where it originates.
  - 4. Conduits that had been run in existing slabs shall be saw-cut off flush where they exit the slab and then be fire-sealed.
- G. Relocation: Carefully remove, clean and restore items designated for relocation to a "like new" condition, and store them for reuse.

### 1.3 SEQUENCING

- A. Conduct and submit results of power system studies before submitting Product Data and Shop Drawings for electrical equipment.
- B. Coordinate sequencing, arrangement, required clearances, mounting, and support of electrical equipment with other Divisions of work.
- C. Coordinate all power requirements for all specified equipment provided by others (including, but not limited to plumbing, mechanical, kitchen and owner supplied equipment) during the coordination drawing process and before ordering equipment. Notify the Construction Manager immediately if any conflicts arise. No cost for electrical conflicts will be approved once coordination drawings are complete and equipment is ordered.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination drawings.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Electrical installation schedule.
- B. Qualification statements.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Facility EPM program binders.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. All materials and equipment provided under this contract shall be new (except where otherwise noted) and shall be listed, labeled or certified by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL), standards where test standards have been established.
- C. Other standards, organizations, and agencies are listed in individual Specification Sections.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### 2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:

1. For electrical equipment and systems, substitutions for cause are considered major construction risks. If it is possible that Contractor may need to request substitutions for cause because of equipment unavailability, or inability to meet construction schedule because of lead time, Contractor must declare the possibility prior to commencing construction to permit establishing a mitigation plan for minimizing risks to system performance and construction schedule.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

A. Coordination Drawings for Duct Banks:

1. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
2. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK**

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Coordinate connection of branch circuits and feeders to equipment furnished under other Divisions.
- C. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and wall-mounted items, unless noted otherwise.
- D. If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- E. The locations of switches, receptacles, lights, motors, etc. outlets shown are approximate. The contractor shall use good judgment in placing the preceding items to eliminate all interference with ducts, piping, etc. The contractor shall check all door swings so that light switches are not located behind doors. Relocate switches as required, with approval from the Design Professional.
- F. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity. Normal maintenance shall not require the removal of protective guards from adjacent equipment. Install equipment as close as practical to the locations shown on the Drawings.
1. Where the Design Engineer determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operations and maintenance, the equipment shall be removed and reinstalled as directed at no additional cost to the client.
  2. "Conveniently Accessible" is defined as being capable of being reached without use of ladders, or without climbing or crawling over or under obstacles such as motors, pumps, belt guards, transformers, racks, piping, ductwork, raceways or similar.

- G. Sequence for efficient flow of installation and positioning prior to closing in of building. Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Provide for ease of disconnecting of equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
- H. Arrange raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways to be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- I. Give right of way to piping systems installed at a required slope.
- J. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- K. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Refer to Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- L. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- M. Comply with Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" restoration of surfaces disturbed by electrical installation.
- N. Paint finished surfaces damaged during electrical installation, matching color and type of paint. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and application. Apply successive coats required to restore finish equal to the unblemished areas.
- O. Working clearance around equipment shall not be less than that specified in the N.E.C. for all voltages specified.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Administrant for Low-Voltage Electrical Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Administrant for Field Tests and Inspections of Lighting Installations:
  - 1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.

### 3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Prepare and submit the following:
  - 1. Provide emergency operation, normal operation, and preventive maintenance manuals for each system, equipment, and device listed below:
  - 2. Include the following information:
    - a. Manufacturer's operating specifications.

- b. User's guides for software and hardware.
  - c. Schedule of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at Project site.
  - d. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
  - e. Time-current curves for overcurrent protective devices and manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting their settings.
  - f. List of load-current and overload-relay heaters with related motor nameplate data.
  - g. List of lamp types and photoelectric relays used on Project, with ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
  - h. Manufacturer's instructions for setting field-adjustable components.
  - i. Manufacturer's instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor controls.
  - j. Include copies of demonstration and training videos.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Provide software and firmware operational documentation in Facility EPM Program Binders, including the following:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  2. Names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  5. Testing and adjusting of panic and emergency power features.
  6. For lighting controls, include the following:
    - a. Adjustments of scene preset controls, adjustable fade rates, and fade overrides.
    - b. Operation of adjustable zone controls.
- C. Software:
1. Program Software Backup: Provide username and password for approved online or cloud solution.
  2. Provide to Owner upgrades and unrestricted licenses for installed and backup software, including operating systems and programming tools required for operation and maintenance.
- D. Demonstration: Demonstrate to Owner's maintenance how to operate the following systems and equipment:
1. Lighting control devices specified in Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices."
- E. Training: Train Owner's maintenance personnel on the following topics:
1. Electrical power safety fundamentals refresher including arc-flash hazard safety features of electrical power distribution equipment in facility, interpreting arc-flash warning labels, selecting appropriate personal protective equipment, and understanding significance of findings documented in study report specified in Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis."
  2. How to adjust, operate, and maintain devices specified in Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices."
  3. How to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboard overcurrent protective devices specified in Section 262413 "Switchboards."
  4. How to adjust, operate, and maintain equipment specified in Section 262913 "Enclosed Controllers."
  5. How to adjust, operate, and maintain devices specified in Section 266000 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."

**END OF SECTION 260010**

## **SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Copper building wire.
2. Aluminum building wire.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
5. Connectors and splices.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:**

1. Copper building wire.
2. Aluminum building wire.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
5. Connectors and splices.

**B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.**

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**A. Field quality-control reports.**

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Comply with, NEMA WC 5, NEMA WC 7, NEMA WC 8.
- C. Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- D. Comply with NECA, Standards for Installation.
- E. Conductor Connection Torque Value UL 486A
- F. Conductor Connectors UL 486B

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Include data sheets for the following additional items:
  - 1. Splices and terminations.
  - 2. Pulling compounds.
  - 3. Cable accessories.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Southwire Company
  - 2. General Cable Corporation.
  - 3. Okonite.
- B. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- C. Conductor Insulation:
  - 1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2. Comply with UL 83.
  - 2. Type XHHW-2. Comply with UL 44.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. The use of Aluminum wire is not permitted under any circumstances unless specifically approved in writing by the Design Engineer and Owner Representative.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Single circuit.
- B. Comply with UL 1569.
- C. The extent and use of MC cable shall only be limited to specific applications as permitted in "Selection of Conduits for Electrical Systems" in Section 260533.
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Ground Conductor: Bare.
- F. Conductor Insulation:
  - 1. Type THHN/THWN-2. Comply with UL 83.

2. Type XHHW-2. Comply with UL 44.

G. Armor: Steel, interlocked. Aluminum is not allowed.

## 2.4 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than size as recommended by system manufacturer.

1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in rigid conduit.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in rigid conduit.

## 2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Burndy, Thomas & Betts.
2. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
3. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
4. IlSCO.

B. Aboveground Circuits (No. 10 AWG and smaller):

1. Connectors: Solderless, screw-on, reusable pressure cable type, rated 600 V, 90° C, with integral insulation, approved for copper conductors.
2. The integral insulator shall have a skirt to completely cover the stripped wires.
3. The number, size, and combination of conductors, as listed on the manufacturer's packaging, shall be strictly followed.
4. Use of "push-in" type splice connectors is not permitted.

C. Aboveground Circuits (No. 8 AWG and larger):

1. Cable termination lugs shall be made of high conductivity and corrosion-resistant material, electro-tin plated, listed for use with copper conductors only, rated for 600 V. Lugs shall be color coded by size.
2. Cable termination lugs shall be indent type, long barrel with chamfered entry, 2 – hole, compression type for 250 kcmil and above, 1 – hole for less than 250 kcm

D. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A



- E. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. UL-listed building wires and cables with conductor material, insulation type, cable construction, and rating as specified.
- B. Feeder Conductors: Copper for all feeders. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger. Refer to single line diagram for specific sizing.
- C. Branch Circuit Conductors: Copper, solid conductor for No. 14 AWG or smaller, stranded conductor for larger than No. 14 AWG. Minimum size, No. 12 AWG for branch circuits, No. 14 AWG for control wiring.
- D. Branch Circuits – Unless otherwise noted on the plans, providing the following minimum conductor sizes. Contractor shall increase size as required to accommodate voltage drop, derating conditions, and special conditions. Neutral conductors shall be full size unless noted to be 200% rated.

<b>Breaker/Fuse Size</b>	<b>Wire Size</b>	<b>Equipment Grounding Wire Size</b>
15A	#12	#12
20A	#12	#12
25A	#10	#10
30A	#10	#10
35A	#8	#10
40A	#8	#10
45A	#6	#10
50A	#6	#10
60A	#4	#10
70A	#4	#8
80A	#3	#8
90A	#2	#8
100A	#1	#8

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Selection of Insulation Types:
  - 1. Insulation:
    - a. THHN-THWN-2: For indoor copper wiring.
    - b. XHHW-2: For outdoor and underground copper wiring.

### 3.3 MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Copper Conductor metal-clad cable, type MC
  - 1. Shall only be used for 20A-single-pole branch circuits.
  - 2. Shall not be used on any emergency or standby power circuits.
  - 3. Shall not be used for homeruns to panelboards or other distribution equipment.
  - 4. Shall not be used where disallowed by local AHJ or Owner.

### 3.4 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine raceways and building finishes to receive wires and cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of wires and cables.
- B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points in accordance with Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Homeruns may not contain more than three circuits unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Splices in feeder circuits shall be avoided unless necessitated by the length of the run more than 500 feet. Locations of all splices shall be made in Code sized splice box with the word "SPICE" permanently labeled on cover.
- C. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- D. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 266000 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.8 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.9 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Products: Cooper B-Line, 3M, Hilti, Specified Technologies, Inc.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections: For feeders and service entrance conductors, upon completion of the installation of wires and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.

2. Remove and replace malfunctioning conductors and cables, and retest to demonstrate compliance.
- B. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

**END OF SECTION 260519**

## **SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Grounding and bonding conductors.
2. Grounding and bonding clamps.
3. Grounding and bonding hubs.
4. Grounding and bonding connectors.
5. Intersystem bonding bridge grounding connector.
6. Grounding and bonding busbars.
7. Signal reference grids.
8. Grounding (earthing) electrodes.
9. Grounding electrode enclosures.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" specifies additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

**B. Shop Drawings:** Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features described in "Field Quality Control for Grounding and Bonding of Electrical Power" Article, including the following:

1. Grounding electrode access enclosures.
2. Grounding electrodes.
3. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

**C. Field quality-control reports.**

#### **1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

**A. Operation and Maintenance Data:**

1. In addition to items specified in Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical," include the following:
  - a. Plans showing locations of grounding features described in "Field Quality Control for Grounding and Bonding of Electrical Power" Article, including the following:
    - 1) Grounding electrode access enclosures.
    - 2) Grounding electrodes.
    - 3) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
  - 1) Tests must determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions must recommend corrective action if values do not.
  - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.
- C. NFPA 99.
- D. Comply with FM Global requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- B. Insulated Conductors: Tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V with green colored insulation, UL 44 or UL 83 listed, unless otherwise required by applicable Code or AHJ.
- C. Bonding Conductors: Bare, stranded cable, unless indicated otherwise.

#### 2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING CLAMPS

- A. Bolted Clamps for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, pressure type with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- B. Compression and Pressure Connectors: High-conductivity plated type.
- C. Exothermic-Welded Connectors: Kits of types recommended by manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

- D. Grounding Busbar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection.

## 2.3 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSBARS

- A. UL KDER - Equipment Room Grounding and Bonding Busbar:
  - 1. Bus: Rectangular bar of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, provided with standard NEMA bolt hole sizing and spacing for the type of connectors to be used.
  - 2. Mounting Stand-Off Insulators: Lexan or PVC.
    - a. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600 V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
  - 3. Provide clear Lexan cover over connections.

## 2.4 GROUNDING (EARTHING) ELECTRODES

- A. UL KDER - Rod Electrode:
  - 1. General Characteristics: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 ft.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODE ENCLOSURES

- A. Grounding Electrode Access Well Enclosure:
  - 1. Product Characteristics:
    - a. Well Material: HDPE.
    - b. Cover Material: HDPE.
    - c. Cover Strength: Driveway use unless noted otherwise.

## 2.6 TELECOMMUNICATIONS GROUNDING:

- 1. Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB): Refer to Technology Specifications 270526 Grounding and Bonding.
- 2. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB): Refer to Technology Specifications 270526 Grounding and Bonding.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.
- B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of electrical service equipment connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

- D. Proceed with connection of electrical service equipment only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SELECTION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING PRODUCTS

- A. General: Where sizes, types, and ratings indicated exceed the requirements of NFPA 70, the more stringent requirements and larger sizes, types, and ratings are to be used.
- B. Separately Derived Systems: Refer to Drawings.
- C. Grounding and Bonding Connectors:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Exothermic welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- D. Grounding and Bonding Busbars: Provide in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated on Drawings.

### 3.3 SELECTION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING PRODUCTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" and Section 271100 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
  - 1. Where ground conductors are subject to physical damage, install in raceway.
- B. Grounding and Bonding Connectors:
  - 1. Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - 2. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
    - a. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate adjacent parts.
    - b. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
    - c. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if disconnect-type connection is required, use bolted clamp.
- C. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service



- entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use bolted clamp connector or bolt lug-type connector to pipe flange by using one of lug bolts of flange. Where dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with bolted connector.
  3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve
- D. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- E. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 ft apart.
- F. Grounding and Bonding Busbars:
1. Install busbar horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inch minimum from wall, 12 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Where busbars are indicated on both sides of doorways, route bonding conductor up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to continuation of horizontal busbar.
- G. Grounding Electrodes System:
1. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inch below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
    - b. Use exothermic welds for below-grade connections.
  2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to service grounding electrode conductor.
  3. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260533 " Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems," and must be at least 12 inch (300 mm) deep, with cover.
    - a. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install at ground rod electrically closest to main building connection. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- H. Grounding Underground Distribution System Components:
1. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inch above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
  2. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- I. Equipment Grounding and Bonding:
1. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with feeders and branch circuits.
  2. Conduit shall not be used as the ground conductor
  3. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

- a. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - b. Lighting circuits.
  - c. Receptacle circuits.
  - d. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - e. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - f. Flexible raceway runs.
  - g. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
4. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
  5. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
  6. Outdoor metallic fences around electrical equipment shall be grounded and bonded to equipment grounding loops, coordinate with "Fencing" Specification Sections and installing Contractor.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL FOR GROUNDING AND BONDING

#### A. Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, inspect for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- B. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each ground rod, other grounding electrodes, and grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- C. Prepare inspection reports.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass inspections.
- E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
- F. For existing systems which have been modified, update maintenance records and single lines.

**END OF SECTION 260526**

## **SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Support, anchorage, and attachment components.
2. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Finishes: Hot-dipped galvanized carbon steel, zinc-plated carbon steel, or stainless steel as indicated on Wiring Methods Schedule on Drawings.
- B. Strut Support Systems: Slotted steel channel, galvanized according to ASTM A123 or ASTM A653. Select channel size appropriate for applicable load criteria. Provide fittings, channel hardware, brackets, angles, inserts, hangers and accessories required for a complete support system. Obtain components from single manufacturer.
- C. Rooftop Support Systems: Rubberized or polypropylene base, UV resistant, with galvanized stand-off rods and channel supports. Select size appropriate for applicable load criteria.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cooper B-Line.
    - b. ERICO International.
    - c. Miro Industries.
    - d. PHP Systems/Design.
- D. Raceway and Cable Support Devices: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101, steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel, zinc plated, minimum 1/4" diameter.

- F. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit (as required): Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable iron.
- G. Fabricated Metal Supports: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes meeting ASTM A36, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

## 2.2 ANCHORAGE AND FASTENERS

- A. Finishes: Hot-dipped galvanized carbon steel, zinc-plated carbon steel, or stainless steel as indicated on Wiring Methods Schedule on Drawings.
- B. Anchors for Cast-in-Place Concrete: Threaded type or wedge type, galvanized. ASTM A47 malleable iron or ASTM A27 cast steel.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Threaded-stud wedge-type or sleeve-type

## 2.3 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SELECTION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Select materials and finishes for hangers, supports, anchors, and fasteners as indicated on Wiring Methods Schedule on Drawings.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for selecting and installing supports.
- D. Design supports for multiple raceways for combined weight of supported systems, plus a 10 percent minimum future load.
- E. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined weight of supported equipment and connected systems.
- F. Rated Strength of Supports: Adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits, times a minimum safety factor of three.
- G. Select and anchorage and fasteners as follows:
  - 1. Wood: Lag screws, wood screws, or bolts.
  - 2. New Concrete: Bolt with cast-in-place concrete anchors.
  - 3. Hollow Masonry Units: Toggle bolts.
  - 4. Solid Masonry Units: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

6. Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Strut Support Systems: Install as a complete system, including fittings, channel hardware, brackets, angles, inserts, hangers and accessories required.
- B. Install U-bolts, clamps, attachments, hanger rod, and other accessories required to secure supports.
- C. Multiple Raceways: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits. Secure raceways to supports with clamps appropriate for raceway.
- D. Individual Raceways: Support with separate pipe hangers or clamps. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-inch and smaller raceways above suspended ceilings.
- E. Equipment: Support with strut system where substrate or structural elements do not provide adequate strength of support.
- F. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit (as required): Install at top of raceway and at intervals required by NFPA 70 to support cables without load on conduit ends or terminations.
- G. Fabricated Metal Supports: Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment. Comply with Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications".
- H. Foreign systems such as ductwork, piping, and equipment are not permitted to be used as a means of support. Where such systems exist and prohibit the use of an approved support, Unistrut shall be used to accommodate a means of support.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases.
  1. Construct for 4-inch nominal thickness, and to be not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported equipment, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
- C. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases and fasten equipment to concrete base. Install according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to equipment.

**END OF SECTION 260529**

## **SECTION 260533 – RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EMT raceways.
2. Type FMC raceways.
3. Type IMC raceways.
4. Type RMC raceways.
5. Type LFMC raceways.
6. Type RNC raceways.
7. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
8. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
9. Solvent cements.
10. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
11. Nonmetallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
12. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
13. Cover plates for device boxes.
14. Hoods for outlet boxes.
15. Surface metal raceways and fittings.
16. Surface nonmetallic raceways.
17. Strut-type channel raceways and fittings.
18. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
19. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground wiring.

B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data:

1. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Shop drawings for floor boxes.
2. Electric Utility Duct Banks and Structures:

- a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including attachments to other Work.
  - b. Indicate locations of private property boundaries and utility easements.
  - c. Include information required for approval by electric utility and for obtaining public space utility work permits.
3. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
- a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
  - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  - c. Include cover design.
  - d. Include grounding details.
  - e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and other accessories.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain cable tray components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with NECA 1.
- D. Comply with ANSI C2.
- E. Comply with IEEE C2.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in field. Notify Architect if there is conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into handholes and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain in accordance with Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication in accordance with Section 311000 "Site Clearing."
- D. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
  1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than fourteen days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.



3. Coordinate interruption with systems impacted by outage including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Emergency lighting.
  - b. Fire-alarm systems.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING**

- A. Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC): ANSI C80.1.
- B. Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC): ANSI C80.6.
- C. Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT): ANSI C80.3.
- D. Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC): Zinc-coated steel.
- E. Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC): Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket. UL 360.
- F. Fittings: NEMA FB 1, compatible with conduit/tubing used.
  1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
  2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Type: Set Screw – indoors; compression - outdoors.
    - b. Material: Steel
- G. Joint Compound for IMC or RMC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

### **2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING**

- A. Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (RNC): NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651.
- B. Fittings: Compatible with conduit/tubing used by same manufacturer as the conduit.
  1. RNC: NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

### **2.3 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FS or FD, with threaded hubs and gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Boxes: NEMA OS 2.

## 2.4 JUNCTION AND PULL BOXES

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.

### B. Sheet Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

### C. Cast-Metal Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FS with threaded hubs and gasketed cover.

## 2.5 CONDUIT BODIES

### A. Conduit Bodies: UL 514B, with threaded hubs and gasketed cover.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES AND CABINETS

### A. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, manufacturer's standard finish.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.

### B. Cabinets: Galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, with manufacturer's standard finish.

1. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
2. Key latch to match panelboards.
3. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
4. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

## 2.7 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. Options:
  - a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.

## 2.8 OPTICAL FIBER/COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

### A. Comply with UL 2024, flexible type, approved for plenum installation.

## 2.9 RACEWAY SLEEVES

### A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

### B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: 24-gage galvanized sheet steel of length to suit application.

C. .

## 2.10 SURFACE RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

### B. Surface Metallic Raceways – Single Channel: One-piece construction, galvanized steel, white or ivory finish (color to be selected by Architect). Provide fittings and accessories including, but not limited to, elbows, couplings, wire clips, end fittings, device mounting brackets, and plates as required for a complete system. Provide accessories suitable for devices, outlets, and wiring and cable as indicated on Drawings.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Wiremold
  - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - c. Mono-Systems.
  - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

### C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways – Dual Channel: Two-piece construction with fixed barrier, nonmetallic PVC with snap-on covers, white or ivory finish (color to be selected by Architect). Provide fittings and accessories including, but not limited to, compartment dividers, elbows, couplings, wire clips, end fittings, device mounting brackets, and plates as required for a complete system. Provide accessories suitable for devices, outlets, and wiring and cable as indicated on Drawings. Provide angled device plates for technology outlets, to comply with cable bending radius requirements.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Wiremold
  - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - c. Mono-Systems.
  - d. Panduit.

## 2.11 METAL WIREWAYS & AUXILIARY GUTTERS

### A. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as required, hinged or screw cover type, NEMA rating shall be suitable for location and environment, manufacturer's standard finish. Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings as required for complete system.

### B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

### C. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

### D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.12 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND RACEWAYS

- A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77, for flush burial and have integral closed bottom. Weatherproof cover, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices, rated for structural load consistent with enclosure, nonskid finish with minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50. Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering raceways for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall. Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armorcast Products.
    - b. Hubbell-Quazite.
    - c. NewBasis.
    - d. Highline Products.
  2. Structural Load Ratings and Materials:
    - a. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
    - b. Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer-concrete, Tier 15.
    - c. Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Fiberglass units with polymer-concrete frame and cover, Tier 8.
    - d. Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: HDPE plastic, 3000-lbf vertical loading.
  3. Color: Gray where located within pavement and concrete, Green where located within landscaping.
  4. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.

## 2.13 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.

## 2.14 DUCT SEALING

- A. Duct-Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F (2 deg C). Compound must be capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F (150 deg C) without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduit, conduit and duct coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals. Duct sealing compound must be removable without damaging ducts or cables.
- B. Inflatable Duct-Sealing System: Wraparound inflatable bladder that seals ducts that are empty or containing conductors against air and water infiltration. System is suitable for use in steel, plastic, or concrete ducts and penetrations.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine surfaces to receive raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of raceway installation.
  - 1. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 SELECTION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of duct raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

- B. Outdoors:

- 1. Minimum conduit/duct size for underground installations shall be 1 inch.
- 2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: IMC or RMC.
- 3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: IMC, RMC, or PVC-40.
- 4. Concealed Aboveground: IMC, RMC, or RNC.
- 5. Direct Buried: RNC, PVC-40.
- 6. Concrete Encased Not in Trench: RNC, PVC-40.
- 7. Concrete Encased in Trench: RNC, PVC-40.
- 8. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

- C. Indoors:

- 1. Hazardous Classified Locations: IMC.
- 2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: RMC. Locations include the following:
  - a. Loading docks.
  - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
  - c. Mechanical rooms.
  - d. Gymnasiums.
- 3. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: EMT. Locations include the following:
  - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
  - b. Stub-ups to above suspended ceilings.
- 4. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage:
  - a. Unfinished Spaces (shall include mechanical, technology, and electrical rooms): EMT
  - b. Finished Spaces (all other spaces): Surface Raceway
- 5. Concealed in Metal Stud Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT or MC Cable.
- 6. Concealed Buried in Block Walls: EMT.
- 7. Concealed Above Suspended Ceilings: EMT. Unless noted otherwise. Locations include the following:
  - a. Branch circuit wiring from light fixture to light fixture: MC Cable

8. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC, RMC.
9. In concrete slabs: PVC-40
10. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
11. Fire Alarm Power and Control Wiring: EMT.

D. Minimum Raceway Sizes:

1. 3/4-inch
2. 1-inch for exterior applications.
3. 1-inch when embedded in slab.

E. Duct Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

1. RMC and IMC: Provide threaded-type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 SELECTION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Degree of Protection:

1. Outdoors:
  - a. Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
  - c. Locations Subject to Potential Flooding: Type 6P.
  - d. Locations Aboveground Where Mechanism Must Operate When Ice Covered: Type 3S.
  - e. Locations in-Ground or Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
2. Indoors:
  - a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Damp or Dusty Locations: Type 12.
  - c. Mounted in Kitchens and Other Locations Exposed to Oil or Coolants: Type 4X.
  - d. Locations Exposed to Airborne Dust, Lint, Fibers, or Flyings: Type 4.
  - e. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
  - f. Locations Exposed to Prolonged Submersion: Type 6P.
  - g. Locations Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
  - h. Locations Exposed to Spraying Oil or Coolants: Type 13.
  - i. Locations Exposed to Livestock: Type 4X
  - j. Locations within Greenhouse: Type 3R

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

- C. Install raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets to form a continuous electrical conductor.
- D. Do not install raceways under slab or embed within the slab, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- E. Complete duct raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- F. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of 2 ft above finished floor. Protect stub-ups from finished floors from damage.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends in conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which no more than equivalent of two 90-degree fewer bends are permitted. Support within 12 inch of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in duct raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inch of enclosures to which attached.
  - 1. In agricultural buildings, such as barns and greenhouses, support conduit within 8 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Install duct sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed duct raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install duct sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
- M. Install devices to seal duct raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of duct raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where an underground service duct raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  - 4. Where conduits enter a classified area.
  - 5. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- N. Do not install conduits within 2 inch of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- O. Keep duct raceways at least 6 inch away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal duct raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- P. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits metric designator 53 (trade size 2) and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.

- Q. All suspension systems must be hung independently from structure and not from other systems including their suspension systems.
  - R. Install pull wires in empty duct raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200 lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inch of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground duct raceways designated as spare above grade alongside duct raceways in use.
  - S. Install duct raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.
    - 1. Termination fittings with shoulders do not require two locknuts.
  - T. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to metric designator 35 (trade size 1-1/4) and insulated throat metal bushings on metric designator 41 (trade size 1-1/2) and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
  - U. Separate Raceway Systems: Provide separate raceways for the following:
    - 1. Emergency circuits.
    - 2. Conductors operating at different voltages
    - 3. AC and DC/analog control wiring
- 3.5 Type IMC:
- A. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of duct raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's published instructions.
- 3.6 Types FMC and LFMC:
- A. Provide a maximum of 36 inch of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
- 3.7 Expansion-Joint Fittings:
- A. Install in runs of aboveground PVC that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that have straight-run length that exceeds 25 ft (7.6 m).
  - B. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  - C. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - 1. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - 2. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - 3. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.



- D. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF DUCTS AND DUCT BANKS

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Steel raceway, bends, and fittings in single duct run or duct bank must be of same type.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from high point between two manholes to drain in both directions.
- D. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor. Provide adapters for change in raceway material as required.
- E. For stub-ups at equipment, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation.
- F. Curves and Bends:
  - 1. Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with minimum radius of 48 inch (1200 mm), both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements, except bends over 45 degrees must be made with minimum radius of 12.5 ft (4 m). Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved. Use PVC heating bender for bending PVC conduit.
- G. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in nonmetallic duct and fittings and make watertight in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane.
  - 1. Install insulated grounding bushings on steel raceway terminations that are less than 12 inch (300 mm) below grade or floor level and do not terminate in hubs.
- H. Building Wall Penetrations: Make transition from underground duct to steel raceway at least 10 ft (3 m) outside building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from building and without forming trap in line. Use fittings manufactured for transition to steel raceway type installed. Install steel raceway penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- I. Install manufactured steel raceway elbows for stub-ups at poles unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
- J. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:
  - a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inch (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
  - b. Width: Excavate trench 3 inch (75 mm) wider than duct on each side.

- c. Depth: Install top of duct at least 36 inch (900 mm) below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Set elevation of top of duct bank below frost line.
  - e. Place minimum 3 inch (75 mm) of sand as bed for duct. Place sand to minimum of 6 inch (150 mm) above top level of duct.
  - f. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
  - g. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than five spacers per 20 ft (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inch (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inch (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  - h. Install duct with minimum of 3 inch (75 mm) between ducts for like services and 6 inch (150 mm) between power and communications duct. Maintain minimum distance from underground utility services per respective utility company standards.
  - i. Elbows:
    - 1) Use manufactured steel elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
  - j. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally minimum of 60 inch (1500 mm) from edge of equipment base.
    - 1) Stub-ups must be minimum 4 inch (100 mm) above finished floor and minimum 3 inch (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of slab.
  - k. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inch (100 mm) over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
  - l. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
  - m. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
2. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury conducting underground line specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than 12 inch (300 mm) above concrete-encased duct and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inch (75 mm) of centerline of duct bank. Provide additional warning tape for each 12 inch (300 mm) increment of duct-bank width over nominal 18 inch (450 mm). Space additional tapes 12 inch (300 mm) apart, horizontally across width of ducts.

3.9 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Restore area after construction vehicle traffic in immediate area is complete.
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures in accordance with "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

3.10 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
  - 1. Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Article 314 of NFPA 70.
- C. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.
- D. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to bottom of box unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.
- F. Do not install boxes back-to-back in walls. Provide minimum 6-inch separation in non-fire-rated walls. Provide minimum 24-inch horizontal separation in acoustic-rated walls.
- G. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- H. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.
- I. Support boxes from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose. Boxes connected to one stud are not permitted.
- J. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- K. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

- L. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- M. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- N. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.
- O. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
  - 1. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
  - 2. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.

### 3.11 INSTALLATION OF SURFACE RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Special Installation Techniques:
  - 1. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inch and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions. Tape and glue are unacceptable support methods.
  - 3. Identification: Provide labels for surface raceways and associated electrical equipment.

### 3.12 RACEWAY PENETRATIONS

- A. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls, unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used.
- B. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves and seal with firestop for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls or extend sleeves installed in floors 2-inches above finished floor level.
  - 1. Products: Cooper B –Line, 3M, Hilti, Specified Technologies, Inc.
- C. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- D. Roof Penetrations: Utilize roof curbs and internal wireways for equipment where available. Provide flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work where individual raceways penetrate the roof.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

### 3.13 BOX INSTALLATION

- A. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.

- B. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
- C. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.

### 3.14 ENCLOSURE AND CABINET INSTALLATION

- A. Install hinged-cover enclosures and cabinets and rigid without distortion of box. Support at each corner.

### 3.15 INSTALLATION OF PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES, AND PULL BOXES

#### A. Precast Concrete Handhole Installation:

1. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on level bed of crushed stone or gravel graded from 1 inch (25 mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
4. Field-cut openings for conduits in accordance with enclosure manufacturer's published instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

#### B. Elevations:

1. Install handholes with bottom below the frost line, 32" below grade.
2. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
3. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

#### C. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

#### D. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches for manholes and 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

#### E. Ground manholes according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

### 3.16 Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Coordinate with Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for installation of firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Coordinate with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduit hangers and supports.

### 3.17 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Where conduit is exposed in public or finished areas, the conduits shall be painted to match the adjacent wall or ceiling color. Associated junction boxes and covers shall be painted inside to match conduit color code below.
- B. Junction boxes of different systems shall be identified by colors indicated below. Box and cover shall be painted prior to attaching identification labels.

	<u>Color</u>	<u>System</u>
1.	Red	Fire Alarm.
2.	Green	Grounding Systems

### 3.18 CLEANING

- A. Surface Raceways: Clean exposed surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- C. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.
- D. Remove construction dust and debris from boxes before installing wallplates, covers, and hoods.
- E. Remove construction dust and debris from surface raceways before installing covers.

### 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
  - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide minimum 12 inch (300 mm) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
  - 3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.
- C. Field Quality-Control Reports: Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

### 3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.
  - B. After installation, protect boxes from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.
  - C. After installation, protect surface raceways from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 260533**

## **SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetrations.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Foam sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Comply with Division 07 Sections for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All products shall be UL labeled for their intended use.
- B. Comply with FM Global requirements.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 ROUND SLEEVES

A. PVC Pipe Sleeves:

1. General Characteristics: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Round, Galvanized-Steel, Sheet Metal Sleeves:
  - a. General Characteristics: Galvanized-steel sheet; thickness not less than 0.0239 inch; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.



## 2.2 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES

### A. Rectangular, Galvanized-Steel, Sheet Metal Sleeves:

1. General Characteristics:
  - a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - b. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inch and with no side larger than 16 inch, thickness must be 0.052 inch .

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

### A. General Characteristics: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.

### B. Options:

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Fiber-reinforced plastic.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

### A. General Characteristics: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit must have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

### A. General Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

#### A. Comply with NECA 1.

#### B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

- a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4 inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless sleeve-seal system is to be installed.
  4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
  5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inch above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.
- D. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve-seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- F. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations:
1. Install steel pipe sleeves with integral waterstops. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system. Install sleeve during construction of floor or wall.
  2. Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system. Grout sleeve into wall or floor opening.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS
- A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall stiffness.
  - B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.
  - C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.
  - D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces. Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

**END OF SECTION 260544**

## **SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes identification for electrical equipment, materials, and installations.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 260573 "Power System Studies" for additional requirements for Arc-Flash Hazard equipment labels.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with UL 969.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 RACEWAYS AND METAL-CLAD CABLES

- A. Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
  - 2. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less and conduits larger than two inches: Slit, pre-tensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
  - 3. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
  - 4. Black letters on a white field.
  - 5. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

6. Paint: Comply with Division 09 for paint materials and application requirements.
7. Factory-Applied Color Coating.

## 2.2 UNDERGROUND FEEDER AND RACEWAYS

- A. Underground Line Warning Tape: Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, inscriptions continuous-printed with chemically inert ink, embedded continuous detectable metallic strip or core, compounded for direct-burial service, 4-mils thick, 6-inches wide.
  1. Power Feeders and Raceways: Red-colored with "ELECTRIC LINE" inscription.
  2. Telephone Raceways: Orange-colored with "TELEPHONE CABLE" inscription.
  3. CATV Raceways: Orange-colored with "CATV CABLE" inscription.
  4. Fiber Optic Raceways: Orange-colored with "OPTICAL FIBER CABLE" inscription.

## 2.3 CABLES AND CONDUCTORS

- A. Factory-Applied Conductor Color: Color the entire length of the conductors for sizes No. 10 AWG or smaller for phase conductors, and No. 6 AWG or smaller for grounded conductors.
- B. Field-Applied Conductor Color: Self-adhesive colored vinyl tape, 3-mils thick, 1-inches wide for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG for phase conductors, and No. 6 AWG for grounded conductors.
- C. Heat-Shrink Markers: White polyolefin sleeves, text applied with compatible printer.
- D. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with preprinted letters and numbers.

## 2.4 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, melamine plastic laminate stock, punched for fasteners, white letters on a black field. Provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high lettering on 1-1/2-inch-high stock; where two lines of text are required, use 2-inch-high stock.
- B. Fasteners for Nameplates: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.
- C. Labels: Self-adhesive polyester label, machine printed.

## 2.5 WARNING LABELS:

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Self-adhesive polyester label with clear protective overlay, machine printed. Labels shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  1. Arc Flash and Shock Hazard Warning: "DANGER--ARC FLASH AND SHOCK HAZARD. APPROPRIATE PERSONAL PROTECTION EQUIPMENT REQUIRED."
  2. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER--ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

3. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES." The sign shall be prominently mounted on the front of the equipment and readily visible.

## 2.6 SIGNAGE

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs for Interior Use: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched for fasteners, with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Colors, legend, and size as required for application.
- B. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Signs for Exterior Use: Cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, weather-resistant, fade-resistant, preprinted, with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Colors, legend, and size as required for application.
- C. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: White lettering on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions.
- D. Fasteners for Signage: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## 2.7 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

- A. 5-mils thick, 2-inch wide, pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 SELECTION OF COLORS AND IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

- A. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 for color identification of hazards, and the following:
  1. Fire-protection and fire-alarm equipment, including raceways, must be finished, painted, or suitably marked safety red.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 1000 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
  1. Color must be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than 6 AWG when permitted by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Colors for 208Y/120 V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.

3. Colors for 240 V Circuits:
  - a. Phase A: Black.
  - b. Phase B: Red.
4. Colors for 480Y/277 V Circuits:
  - a. Phase A: Brown.
  - b. Phase B: Orange.
  - c. Phase C: Yellow.
5. Color for Neutral (Grounded Conductor): White.
6. Color for Equipment Ground: Green.
- C. Color-Coding Raceways, Cable Trays, Junction Boxes, and Conductors for Intrinsically-Safe Circuits: Light blue. When used to identify intrinsically-safe circuits, Article 504 of NFPA 70 requires that the color light blue not be used for any other purpose.
- D. Color-Coding Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- E. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify cover of junction and pull box of the following systems with wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends must be as follows:
  1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  2. "NORMAL POWER."
- F. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- G. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power and lighting.
- H. Handholes, and Pull and Junction Boxes, 1000 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use vinyl wraparound labels to identify phase.
  1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50 ft (15 m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25 ft (7.6 m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
  2. Identify system voltage and system or service type.
- I. Conductors to Be Extended in Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- J. Cover Plates: Label individual cover plates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of cover plate. Label cover plate with the following information, in the order listed:
  1. Panelboard designation.
  2. Colon or dash.
  3. Branch circuit number.
- K. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in direction of access to live parts. Workspace must comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

L. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on white field.
2. Indoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
3. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
4. Equipment to Be Labeled:
  - a. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.
  - b. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification must be in form of self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
  - c. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
  - d. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
  - e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
  - f. Enclosed switches.
  - g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
  - h. Enclosed controllers.
  - i. Variable-speed controllers.
  - j. Push-button stations.
  - k. Contactors.
  - l. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
  - m. Monitoring and control equipment.

M. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 SELECTION OF SIGNS AND HAZARD MARKINGS

A. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 for danger, caution, warning, and safety instruction signs.

B. Signs, labels, and tags required for personnel safety must comply with the following standards:

1. Safety Colors: NEMA Z535.1.
2. Facility Safety Signs: NEMA Z535.2.
3. Safety Symbols: NEMA Z535.3.
4. Product Safety Signs and Labels: NEMA Z535.4.
5. Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes for Temporary Hazards: NEMA Z535.5.

C. Electrical Hazard Warnings:

1. Arc-Flash Hazard Warning: Self-adhesive labels. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573 "Power System Studies" requirements for arc-flash hazard warning labels.
2. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 1000 V:
  - a. Black letters on orange field.
  - b. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
3. Multiple Power Sources Warning Legend: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."



4. OSHA Workspace Clearance Warning Legend: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 3 FEET MINIMUM."
  - D. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
    1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
    2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
      - a. Power-transfer switches.
      - b. Controls with external control power connections.
  - E. Operating Instruction Signs: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.
  - F. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
  - G. Provide permanent nameplates for all pull and junction boxes identifying circuits, voltage, and source.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION
- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
  - B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes typical for electrical equipment environments specified in Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical."
  - C. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
  - D. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or stainless steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.
  - E. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
  - F. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
  - G. Verify identity of item before installing identification products.
  - H. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - I. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

- J. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from floor.
- L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to location and substrate.
- M. Snap-Around Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Snap-Around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for minimum distance of 6 inch (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- S. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- T. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's instructions.
- U. Motors: Attach tag with chain to outside of motor or equipment.
- V. Underground Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape not less than 12 inch (300 mm) directly above cables or raceways buried 18 inch (450 mm) or more below grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inch (400 mm) overall.
  - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
  - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- W. Metal Tags:
  - 1. Place in location with high visibility and accessibility.
- X. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
  - 1. Place in location with high visibility and accessibility.

- Y. Write-on Tags:
  - 1. Place in location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Z. Baked-Enamel Signs: Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
- AA. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs: Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
- BB. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs: Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.

**END OF SECTION 260553**

## **SECTION 260573 - POWER SYSTEM STUDIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

A. The Work of this Section Includes:

1. Short-circuit study.
2. Overcurrent protective device coordination study.
3. Arc-flash hazard study.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" specifies additional requirements applicable to coordinating, scheduling, and sequencing of the Work specified in this Section.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For power system analysis software to be used for studies.

1. Product Certificates: For power system study software applications, include certificate stating compliance with specified requirements, signed by software manufacturer.

B. Power System Study Reports:

1. Submit reports after approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals must be in digital form.
2. Submit short-circuit study input data, including completed computer-program input data sheets.
3. Submit coordination study input data, including completed computer-program input data sheets.
4. Submit arc-flash study input data, including completed computer-program input data sheets.
5. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
6. Submit revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Submittals for power system studies must be signed and sealed by qualified electrical professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

B. Studies must be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

- C. Software algorithms must comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- D. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE**

- A. Standard Features:
  - 1. Power System Analysis:
    - a. Power-systems-analysis software applications must have analytical capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 3002 series standards.
    - b. Computer software application must be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program must report device settings and ratings of overcurrent protective devices and must demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
    - c. Computer software application must be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
  - 2. Analysis Standards:
    - a. Short-Circuit Current Analysis: In accordance with IEEE 3002.3.
    - b. Device Coordination Analysis: In accordance with IEEE 3004.3 and IEEE 3004.5.
    - c. Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis: In accordance with IEEE 1584.
  - 3. Capable of printing arc-flash hazard warnings for equipment on vinyl, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels complying with NFPA 70E.
    - a. Label must have orange header with wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and must include the following information taken directly from arc-flash hazard study:
      - 1) Equipment designation.
      - 2) Nominal voltage.
      - 3) Protection boundaries.
        - a) Arc-flash boundary.
        - b) Restricted approach boundary.
        - c) Limited approach boundary.
      - 4) Arc-flash PPE category.
      - 5) Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
      - 6) Available incident energy.
      - 7) Working distance.
      - 8) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Collect and analyze data for power system studies.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
  2. For equipment included as Work on the Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for the Project.
  3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers in accordance with NFPA 70E.
  4. Gather and tabulate required input data to support power system studies. Comply with requirements in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 3002 series standards as to amount of detail that is required to be acquired in field. Field data gathering must be by, or under supervision of, qualified electrical professional engineer. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Product data for the Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
    - b. Electrical power utility impedance at service.
    - c. Power sources and ties.
    - d. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
    - e. Full-load current of loads.
    - f. Voltage level at each bus.
    - g. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
    - h. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
    - i. Maximum demands from service meters.
    - j. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
    - k. Derating factors.
    - l. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Preparation of Data for Short-Circuit Study:
1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
  2. For equipment included as Work on the Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for the Project.
  3. Prepare one-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
    - a. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.

- b. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
- c. Transformer kVA and voltage ratings.
- d. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
- e. Panelboard designations and ratings.
- f. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
- g. Revisions to electrical equipment required by study.

B. Preparation of Data for Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study:

1. Prepare data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, indicating the following:
  - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
  - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
  - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
  - d. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
  - e. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
  - f. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
  - g. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
  - h. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
  - i. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
  - j. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for condition where available fault current is greater than interrupting rating of downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.
2. Examine the Project's overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

C. Preparation of Data for Arc-Flash Hazard Study:

1. Assemble data from short-circuit study and overcurrent protective device coordination study.
2. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.3 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- B. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

- C. Begin short-circuit current analysis at service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
  - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 5 kA or less.
- D. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for the Project. Study cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- E. Include AC fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase AC systems. Also account for fault-current DC decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- F. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
  - 1. For grounded systems, provide bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- G. Include in report identification of protective device applied outside its capacity.

### 3.4 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for determining coordination time intervals.
  - 1. Emergency System OCPDs, as defined by NFPA 70, shall be selectively coordinated to 0.1s time intervals.
- B. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer. When analysis of full range of device is impractical, limiting scope of analysis from 10 to 100 percent of device range is acceptable.
- C. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- D. Begin analysis at service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
  - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 5 kA or less.
- E. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for the Project. Study cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- F. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
  - 1. Device must not operate in response to the following:
    - a. Inrush current when first energized.
    - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
    - c. Permissible transformer overloads in accordance with IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
  - 2. Device settings must protect transformers in accordance with IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.



G. Motor Protection:

1. Select protection for low-voltage motors in accordance with IEEE 3004.8 and NFPA 70.
2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V in accordance with IEEE 620.

H. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents in accordance with ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 3004.7. Demonstrate that equipment withstands maximum short-circuit current for time equivalent to tripping time of primary relay protection or total clearing time of fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

I. Include AC fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase AC systems. Also account for fault-current DC decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

J. Include coordination of ground-fault protection devices.

K. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

L. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Application of series-rated devices must be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.
4. Include in report identification of protective device applied outside its capacity.

### 3.5 ARC-FLASH HAZARD STUDY

A. Comply with NFPA 70E, including Annex D, for arc-flash hazard study.

B. Preparatory Studies: Obtain short-circuit study and overcurrent protective device coordination study results prior to starting arc-flash hazard study.

C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.

1. Maximum calculation must assume maximum contribution from utility and must assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current in accordance with NFPA 70E recommendations.

D. Calculate arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.

E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except nominal arc-flash hazard warning data may be provided for equipment fed from transformers rated below 240 V(ac), 2000 A, instead of documenting precise calculations.

- F. Calculate limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
- G. Incident energy calculations must consider accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations must account for changing current contributions, as sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators must be decremented as follows:
  - 1. Fault contribution from induction motors must not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
  - 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators must be decayed to match actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 p.u. to 3 p.u. after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash energy must generally be reported for maximum of line or load side of circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation must be performed and reported for both line and load side of circuit breaker as follows:
  - 1. When circuit breaker is in separate enclosure.
  - 2. When line terminals of circuit breaker are separate from work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

### 3.6 POWER SYSTEM STUDY REPORTS

- A. Preparation of Power System Study Reports: Prepare and submit the following:
  - 1. Short-Circuit Study Report Contents:
    - a. Executive summary of study findings.
    - b. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
    - c. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
      - 1) Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
      - 2) Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
      - 3) Transformer kVA and voltage ratings.
      - 4) Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
      - 5) Switchboard, and panelboard designations and ratings.
      - 6) Derating factors and environmental conditions.
      - 7) Revisions to electrical equipment required by study.
    - d. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in written document, separate from one-line diagram.
    - e. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
      - 1) One-line diagram of system being studied.
      - 2) Power sources available.
      - 3) Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
      - 4) Conductors.
      - 5) Transformer data.
    - f. Protective Device Evaluation:

- 1) Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
  - 2) Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
  - 3) For 600 V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  - 4) For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  - 5) Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- g. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:
- 1) Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a) Voltage.
    - b) Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c) Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d) Equivalent impedance.
  - 2) Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a) Voltage.
    - b) Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c) Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d) Calculated asymmetrical fault currents based on fault-point X/R ratio; based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6; and based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
  - 3) Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a) Voltage.
    - b) Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c) Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d) No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
    - e) Equivalent impedance.
    - f) Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on symmetrical basis.
    - g) Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on total basis.
2. Overcurrent Protection Device Coordination Study Report Contents:
- a. Executive summary of study findings.
  - b. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
  - c. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

- 1) Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  - 2) Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
  - 3) Transformer kVA and voltage ratings.
  - 4) Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  - 5) Switchboard, and panelboard designations.
  - 6) Revisions to electrical equipment required by study.
- d. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
- 1) Phase and Ground Relays:
    - a) Device tag.
    - b) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
    - c) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
  - 2) Circuit Breakers:
    - a) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
    - b) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
    - c) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
    - d) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
  - 3) Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- e. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for switching schemes and for emergency periods where power source is local generation. Show the following information:
- 1) Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying portion of system covered.
  - 2) Terminate device characteristic curves at point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which device is exposed.
  - 3) Identify device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
  - 4) Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
    - a) Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
    - b) Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.
    - c) Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
    - d) Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
    - e) Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
    - f) Cables and conductors damage curves.
    - g) Ground-fault protective devices.
    - h) Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.

- i) Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
  - j) Largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
- 5) Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
  - 6) Maintain maximum achievable selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads on series-rated devices.
  - 7) Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
  - 8) Comments and recommendations for system improvements.
3. Arc-Flash Hazard Study Report Contents:
- a. Executive summary of study findings.
  - b. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
  - c. One-line diagram, showing the following:
    - 1) Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
    - 2) Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
    - 3) Transformer kVA and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
    - 4) Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
    - 5) Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.
  - d. Short-circuit study output data.
  - e. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report contents.
  - f. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:
    - 1) Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in report:
      - a) Voltage.
      - b) Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
      - c) Fault-point X/R ratio.
      - d) No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
      - e) Equivalent impedance.
      - f) Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on symmetrical basis.
      - g) Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on total basis.
  - g. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
    - 1) Arcing fault magnitude.
    - 2) Protective device clearing time.
    - 3) Duration of arc.
    - 4) Arc-flash boundary.
    - 5) Restricted approach boundary.
    - 6) Limited approach boundary.
    - 7) Working distance.
    - 8) Incident energy.
    - 9) Hazard risk category.
    - 10) Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

- h. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

### 3.7 FIELD ADJUSTMENT FOR DEVICE COORDINATION

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings in accordance with recommended settings provided by coordination study. Field adjustments must be completed by engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.
- B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.
- C. Testing and adjusting must be by qualified low-voltage electrical testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

### 3.8 WARNING LABELING OF ARC-FLASH HAZARDS

- A. Apply arc-flash label on front cover of each section of equipment and on side or rear covers with accessible live parts and hinged doors or removable plates for each equipment included in study, including each piece of equipment listed below:
  - 1. Switchboards.
  - 2. Panelboards.
  - 3. Low voltage transformers.
  - 4. Safety switches.
  - 5. Control panels.
- B. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.
- C. Machine print warning labels with no handwritten or field-applied markings.
- D. Install arc-flash warning labels under direct supervision and control of qualified electrical professional engineer.
- E. Indicate on record Drawings location of equipment where personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.
  - 1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
  - 2. Indicate protection level required.

**END OF SECTION 260573**

## **SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
3. Low-voltage wall control stations.
4. Conductors and cables.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors and manual light switches.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:**

**B. Product Data:** For each type of product indicated.

**C. Shop Drawings:**

1. Show installation details for the following:
  - a. Occupancy sensors.
  - b. Vacancy sensors.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**D. Field quality-control reports.**

**E. Operation and Maintenance Data:** For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**A. Sample Warranty:** For manufacturer's warranties.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Extended Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer warrant that installed lighting control devices perform in accordance with specified requirements and agree to repair or replace, including labor, materials, and equipment, devices that fail to perform as specified within a period of Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other systems installed at and above the ceiling, including but not limited to, luminaires, HVAC equipment, fire alarm devices, fire-suppression system, and partitions.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 1. All products shall be listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Acuity Brands.
  - 2. Hubbell
  - 3. Leviton
  - 4. Lutron
  - 5. Square D; Schneider Electric.
  - 6. Watt Stopper (The).

#### 2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors:
  - 1. Refer to plans for mounting location (ceiling or wall)
  - 2. Dual technology.
  - 3. Operation: Refer to Lighting Control Matrix on drawings.
  - 4. Power: Refer to Lighting Control Matrix on drawings.
  - 5. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20 A LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac), for 13 A tungsten at 120 V(ac), and for 1 hp at 120 V(ac). Sensor has 24 V(dc), 150 mA, Class 2 power source.

#### 2.3 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.



1. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 20 minutes.
2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA LED load at 120 V, 1200 VA LED load at 277 V, and 800 W incandescent.
4. Match color and style as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."

#### 2.4 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL STATIONS AND COVER PLATES

- A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.
  1. Match color and style as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- B. Cover Plates: Single and multigang cover plates as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on cover plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Preset lighting scene control stations as indicated on drawings.
- E. Individual raise/lower buttons to allow zones to be adjusted without altering scene values stored in memory.

#### 2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, or as required by equipment manufacturer. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, or as required by equipment manufacturer. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Sensor placement on the drawings are for schematic purposes only. Adjust locations and quantities as necessary to properly cover each area. Coordinate layout with engineer in submittal process.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field tests and inspections.
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. After contract award, but before system installation and rough-in is started, engage a demonstration of proposed control system at owner's facilities with owner and engineer present.
- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION 260923**

## **SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Panelboards.
2. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" specifies additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other requirements applicable to the Work for electrical, communications, and electronic safety and security systems on Project, including wiring methods.
2. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" specifies concrete bases and supports for panelboards installed by this Section.
3. Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" specifies electrical equipment labels and warning signs installed by this Section.
4. Section 260573 "Power System Studies" specifies short-circuit current studies, overcurrent protective device coordination studies, and arc-flash hazard analysis studies.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:** For each type of product, submit the following:

1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
2. Include dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

**B. Shop Drawings:** For each panelboard and related equipment:

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**C. Field quality-control reports.**

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.
- B. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Spare Parts: Furnish to Owner spare parts, for repairing panelboards, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents. Include the following:
  - 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
  - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Products or components listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- D. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets, as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.
  - c. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: UL 50E, Type 4X, stainless steel.
  - d. Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 4.
  - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 12.
2. Height: 7 ft (2.13 m) maximum.
  3. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  4. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  5. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
- E. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating must run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus must be fully rated for entire length.
  2. Interiors must be factory assembled into unit. Replacing switching and protective devices may not disturb adjacent units or require removing main bus connectors.
  3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
- F. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  2. Terminations must allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
  3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
  4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with lug on neutral bar for each pole in panelboard.
  5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with lug on bar for each pole in panelboard.
- G. Quality-Control Label: Panelboards or load centers must be labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers must have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- H. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers must have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: As indicated on plans.
- I. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:

1. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
  - a. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less must have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A(rms) symmetrical.
  - b. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V must have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A(rms) symmetrical.

## 2.2 PANELBOARDS

### A. Lighting and Appliance Branch-Circuit Panelboards.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Eaton.
  - c. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  - d. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.
3. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, Lighting and Appliance Branch-Circuit Type.
4. Fabrication:
  - a. Doors: Front trim with concealed clamps.
  - b. Mains: Type as indicated on Drawings.
    - 1) Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
    - 2) Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 A must be field convertible to main breaker.
  - c. Surge Suppression: As indicated on Drawings. Factory installed as integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 2.
  - d. Feed-Through Lugs: As indicated on Drawings. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  - e. Power Metering: As indicated on Drawings. Panel-mounted.
5. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices
  - a. Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

## 2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- ### A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards in accordance with NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Install panelboards and accessories in compliance with NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Special Techniques:
  - 1. Equipment Mounting:
    - a. Attach panelboard to vertical finished or structural surface behind panelboard.
    - b. Where panelboards are mounted to drywall they shall utilize and span (2) studs.
  - 2. Mount top of trim 72 inches (1.83 m) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
  - 4. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
  - 5. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
    - a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
    - b. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
  - 6. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
  - 7. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
  - 8. Stub four 1 inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in future. Stub four 1 inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
  - 9. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- D. Interfaces with Other Work:



1. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify the following, complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems":
  1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components.
  2. Install warning signs.
  3. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with nameplate.
  4. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with nameplate.
- B. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles must be located on interior of panelboard door.
- C. Breaker Labels: Faceplate must list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- D. Circuit Directory:
  1. Provide computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
    - a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
  2. Handwritten directories are not acceptable.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

- b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

C. Nonconforming Work:

- 1. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports: Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

- 1. Include certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Upon completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards.
- B. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Touch up scratches and mars of finish to match original finish.

**END OF SECTION 262416**

## **SECTION 262500 - LOW-VOLTAGE ENCLOSED BUS ASSEMBLIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Enclosed bus assemblies.
2. Plug-in devices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For each type of product.

1. Show fabrication and installation details for enclosed bus assemblies. Include plans, elevations, and sections of components. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, connectors, straight lengths, and fittings.
2. Indicate required clearances, method of field assembly, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail connections to switchgear, switchboards, transformers, and panelboards.
4. Cable and conductor terminal sizes for bus and plug-in device terminations.
5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle enclosed bus assemblies according to NEMA BU 1.1, "General Instructions for Handling, Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Busway Rated 600 Volts or Less."

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed bus assemblies and plug-in devices from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with UL 857.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified electrical professional engineer to design enclosed bus assemblies, plug-in devices, and components.

## 2.3 ENCLOSED BUS ASSEMBLIES

- A. Plug-in Bus Assemblies: Low-impedance bus assemblies in totally enclosed, nonventilated housing; single-bolt joints; ratings as indicated.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Eaton](#).
    - b. [Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division](#).
    - c. [Square D; Schneider Electric USA](#).
  - 2. Electrical Characteristics:
    - a. Voltage: 120/208 V.
    - b. Phase: Three; 4 wire.
    - c. Percent of Neutral Capacity: 100.
  - 3. Short-Circuit Interrupting Rating:
    - a. For Bus Amperage of 800: 85 symmetrical kAIC.
  - 4. Temperature Rise: 55 deg C above 40 deg C ambient maximum for continuous rated current.
  - 5. Bus Materials: Current-carrying copper conductors, fully insulated with Class 130C insulation except at stabs and joints; plated surface at stabs and joints.
  - 6. Ground: 50 percent capacity, integral with housing.
  - 7. Enclosure: Steel, with manufacturer's standard finish.
  - 8. Plug-in Openings: 24 inch (600 mm) on center on each side of bus, and hinged covers over unused openings. Plug-in openings must be finger-safe with covers open or closed.
  - 9. Fittings and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 10. Firestop: Comply with UL 1479 firestop system, listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for penetrations of fire-rated walls, ceilings, and floors.
  - 11. Mounting: Arranged flat, edgewise, or vertically without derating. Rated for hanger spacing of up to 10 ft. (3 m) for horizontally mounted runs and up to 16 ft. (5 m) for vertically mounted runs.
  - 12. Expansion Section: Manufacturer's standard expansion fitting for the provided busway with expansion capability to accommodate thermal expansion of bus and enclosure, and to accommodate movement across building expansion joints.
- B. Joints:
  - 1. Busway joints must use one high-strength steel bolt with Belleville washers.

2. Bolts must be torque indicating type and at ground potential.
3. Bolts must be two-headed design to indicate when proper torque has been applied and require only a standard long handle wrench to be properly activated.
4. Access must be required to only one side of the busway for tightening joint bolts.
5. Joint connection assemblies must be removable without disturbing adjacent busway lengths.
6. Joint connection assemblies that rely on the joint cover to provide ground continuity are unacceptable.

## 2.4 PLUG-IN DEVICES

- A. Fusible Switches: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty; with J-type fuse clips to accommodate specified fuses; hookstick-operated handle, lockable with two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position. Interlocked to prevent plug-in device insertion into or removal from bus with switch in closed position.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Eaton.](#)
    - b. [Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.](#)
    - c. [Square D; Schneider Electric USA.](#)
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breakers: UL 489; hookstick-operated handle, lockable with two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position. Interlocked to prevent plug-in device insertion into or removal from bus with switch in closed position.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Eaton.](#)
    - b. [Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.](#)
    - c. [Square D; Schneider Electric USA.](#)
- C. Accessories: Hookstick operator, adjustable to maximum extension of 14 ft. (4.3 m)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed bus assemblies and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or floors or is supported by them, including luminaires, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
- B. Support bus assemblies independent of supports for other elements such as equipment enclosures at connections to panelboards and switchboards, pipes, conduits, ceilings, and ducts.
  1. Design each fastener and support to carry 200 lb (90 kg) or 4 times the weight of bus assembly, whichever is greater.
  2. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.

3. Support bus assembly with not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) steel rods. Install side bracing to prevent swaying or movement of bus assembly. Modify supports after completion to eliminate strains and stresses on bus bars and housings.
  4. Fasten supports securely to building structure according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
  5. Bolts and nuts that are loosened for any reason after tightening to manufacturer's recommended torque setting must be discarded and replaced with new bolts and nuts.
- C. Install expansion fittings at locations where bus assemblies cross building expansion joints. Install at other locations so distance between expansion fittings does not exceed manufacturer's recommended distance between fittings.
- D. Construct rated firestop assemblies where bus assemblies penetrate fire-rated elements such as walls, floors, and ceilings. Seal around penetrations according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Coordinate bus-assembly terminations to equipment enclosures to ensure proper phasing, connection, and closure.
- F. Tighten bus-assembly joints with torque wrench or similar tool recommended by bus-assembly manufacturer. Tighten joints again after bus assemblies have been energized for 30 days.
- G. Install bus-assembly, plug-in units. Support connecting conduit independent of plug-in unit.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
  2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
    - d. Verify correct connection according to single-line diagram.
    - e. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:
      - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
      - 3) Perform thermographic survey.
  3. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform insulation resistance measurements through bolted connections and bus joints with low-resistance ohmmeter.
  - b. Perform insulation resistance tests of each busway, phase to phase, and phase to ground.
  - c. Perform a dielectric withstand voltage test on each busway, phase to ground with phases not under test grounded for one minute.
  - d. Measure resistance of assembled busway sections on insulated busway and compare values with adjacent phases.
  - e. Perform phasing test on each busway tie section energized by separate sources.
  - f. Verify operation of busway space heaters.
- B. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
  3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.
- D. Nonconforming Work:
1. Enclosed bus assemblies will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING
- A. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges and overload relay trip settings as indicated.
- 3.5 CLEANING
- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.
- 3.6 PROTECTION
- A. Provide final protection to ensure that moisture does not enter bus assembly.

**END OF SECTION 262500**

## **SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
2. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
3. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
4. Locking receptacles.
5. Special-purpose power outlet assemblies.
6. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for occupancy sensors, timers, control-voltage switches, and control-voltage dimmers.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:**

1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
2. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
3. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
4. Locking receptacles.
5. Special-purpose power outlet assemblies.
6. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

**B. Shop Drawings:**

1. Wiring diagrams for duplex straight-blade receptacles with integral switching means.

**C. Field quality-control reports.**

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**A. Manufacturers' Instructions:** Record copy of official installation and testing instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Dimmers.
2. Fan-speed controllers.
3. Duplex straight-blade receptacles.
4. Receptacles with GFCI device.
5. Locking receptacles.



6. Cord reels.

B. Sample warranties.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with NEMA WD 1.

D. Comply with NEMA WD 6 and UL 498.

E. Comply with UL 20.

F. Comply with UL 943 .

G. Comply with NEMA FB11 and UL 1010.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices.
2. Eaton.
3. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems.
4. Leviton Manufacturing.
5. Pass & Seymour.

#### 2.2 DEVICES

A. Straight-Blade Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A, grounding type, NEMA 5-20R, modular connection with pre-wired pigtails or back and side wired.

1. Single Receptacles: Heavy-duty, specification-grade.
2. Duplex Receptacles: Heavy-duty, specification-grade with types, or combinations thereof, as indicated on Drawings.
  - a. GFCI: Personnel protection, feed-through, with indicator light for protection status.
  - b.**
  - c. Tamper-Resistant: Integral dual mechanical shutter system to help prevent insertion of foreign objects.

- d. Weather-Resistant (WR): Additional protection against accelerated aging, cold impact, corrosion, and ultraviolet light exposure. Provide WR devices for all exterior 15A and 20A devices.
  3. Twist-Locking Receptacles: Single receptacles, heavy-duty, industrial-grade, grounding type, with voltage ratings, amperage ratings, and NEMA configuration as indicated on Drawings.
  - B. Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A, heavy-duty, quiet-type, specification-grade, grounding type, modular connection with pre-wired pigtails or back and side wired.
    1. Snap Switches: Toggle switch, with number of poles, switching configuration types, or combinations thereof, as indicated on Drawings.
      - a. Pilot Light Switches: Illuminated when switch is on.
    2. Key-Operated Switches: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle with number of poles, switching configuration types, or combinations thereof, as indicated on Drawings.
    3. Three-Position Switches: Single-pole, double-throw, maintained contact, center-off.
  - C. Wall Plates: Standard-size single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices. Plate-securing metal screws with head color matching plate finish.
    1. Finished Spaces: Metal, aluminum finish.
    2. Unfinished Spaces: Metal, 302 stainless steel finish.
    3. Damp Locations: Listed, cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover.
    4. Wet Locations: Listed, cast aluminum weatherproof in-use cover, NEMA type 3R, with lockable cover.
  - D. Finishes: Colors as specified, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
    1. Connected to Normal Power System: White.
- 2.3 HAZARDOUS (CLASSIFIED) LOCATION DEVICES
- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    1. Appleton Electric.
    2. Hubbell (Basis of Design)
    3. Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
    4. Killark.
  - B. Single Receptacles: Listed for Classification and Group as indicated on Drawings, 125 V, 20 A, energized by matching twist-locking type plug, spring-loaded cover.

## 2.4 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type NEMA L5-20P plug and NEMA L5-20R receptacle body connector; NEMA L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade. Nylon body plug with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and woven wire-mesh, galvanized-steel cord grip.

## 2.5 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Type SOOW cord, with nylon body plug with cable-clamping jaws. Voltage ratings, current ratings, and number of conductors matched to requirements of equipment being connected.

## 2.6 CORD REELS

- A. General Requirements
  - 1. Provide with a plug and 5' cord for input power.
- B. Industrial Cord Reels
  - 1. Provide Hubbell Wiring Devices HBL series, or equal.
  - 2. Cord Type: SJEO.
  - 3. Power Cord Length: 25'.
  - 4. Device Type: Device box with duplex receptacle.
  - 5. Device Type: Device box with quad receptacle.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receptacles:
  - 1. Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are compatible with mating attachment plugs on equipment.
- B. Cord Reels:
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for cord reel mounting and power connections to verify actual locations of mounts and power connections before cord reel installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and ceilings for suitable conditions where cord reel will be installed.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- B. Install devices, and assemblies plumb, level, and secured tight to mounting surface. Repair wall finishes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

- C. Protect devices and assemblies during painting. Install wall plates after painting is complete.
- D. Dimmers: Install dimmers within terms of their listing and according to manufacturer's written instructions. Derate for ganging as required. Do not share neutral conductor on load side.
- E. Coordinate locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.
- F. Provide Tamper-resistance receptacles as indicated on the plans.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
- B. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch-circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- C. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.

### 3.4 CORD REEL INSTALLATION

- A. General Installation Requirements
  1. Install to structure/ceiling per manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Adjust stopping mechanism to maintain minimum cord length – Coordinate with owner in the field.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test wiring devices for proper polarity and ground continuity. Operate each device a minimum of six times.
- B. Test GFCI receptacle operation according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Replace damaged or defective components.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Prior to installation of devices, clean interior of outlet boxes and assembly enclosures.

**END OF SECTION 262726**

## **SECTION 262813 - FUSES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
    - a. Control circuits.
    - b. Enclosed controllers.
    - c. Enclosed switches.
  - 2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  - 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  - 3. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
  - 4. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures," Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.

2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fuses: Equal to 20 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 1 set of 3 of each size and type.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Bussmann; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. Littelfuse, Inc.
  3. Mersen USA.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
  1. Type RK-1: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  2. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  3. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

### 2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses.
  - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
  - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
  - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 2. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare fuse cabinet in main electrical room with spare fuses.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.
- B. Install typewritten labels on inside door of each fused switch to indicate fuse replacement information.

**END OF SECTION 262813**



## **SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Receptacle switches.
4. Shunt trip switches.
5. Molded-case switches.
6. Enclosures.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:**

1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Current and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

**B. Shop Drawings:** For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:**

1. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**A. Sample warranties.**

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  - 4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. Voltage ratings, frame sizes, fuse/trip ratings, number of poles, interrupting/withstand ratings, and accessories as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Clips to accommodate specified fuses.
- D. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Auxiliary Contact Kit, where indicated on Drawings: Auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Eaton.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Voltage ratings, frame sizes, current ratings, number of poles, interrupting/withstand ratings, and accessories as indicated on Drawings.
2. Lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit, where indicated on Drawings: Auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.

## 2.4 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bussmann; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
2. Littelfuse, Inc.
3. Mersen USA.

B. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, UL 50, and UL 98, with Class J fuse block and 200 kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating.

C. Clips to accommodate specified fuses.

D. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate required fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

1. Voltage ratings, frame sizes, fuse/trip ratings, number of poles, interrupting/withstand ratings, and accessories as indicated on Drawings.

E. Control Circuit: 120 V(ac); obtained from 120V panel branch circuit, with control power source of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, pilot, indicating and control devices.

F. Accessories:

1. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
2. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
3. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.

4. Auxiliary Contact Kit, where indicated on Drawings: Auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.

## 2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Eaton.
  3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- C. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- D. Features and Accessories:

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Operating Mechanism: Circuit-breaker operating handle must be directly operable through front cover of enclosure (UL 50E Type 1). Cover interlock mechanism must have externally operated override. Override may not permanently disable interlock mechanism, which must return to locked position once override is released. Tool used to override cover interlock mechanism must not be required to enter enclosure in order to override interlock.
- C. Enclosures designated as UL 50E Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K must have dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of enclosure cover when circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning circuit breaker ON when enclosure cover is open.
- D. UL 50E Type 7/9 enclosures must be furnished with breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Commencement of work will indicate Installer's acceptance of areas and conditions as satisfactory.

### 3.2 SELECTION OF ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.
- C. Kitchen / Wash-Down Areas: UL 50E, Type 4X, stainless steel.
- D. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 4.
- E. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 12.
- F. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: UL 50E, Type 7 with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Special Techniques:
  - 1. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
  - 2. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Install individual switches level and plumb, with tops at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Install according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Install fuses in fusible devices.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: After installing enclosed switches and circuit breakers and after electrical circuitry has been energized, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
- B. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new units and retest.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect enclosed switches and circuit breakers from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

**END OF SECTION 262816**

## **SECTION 262913 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS AND STARTERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Full-voltage manual.
  - 2. Full-voltage magnetic.
  - 3. Enclosures.
  - 4. Accessories.
  - 5. Identification.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller. Include manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and enclosure types and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.
  - 1. Show tabulations of the following:
    - a. Each installed unit's type and details.
    - b. Factory-installed devices.
    - c. Nameplate legends.
    - d. Short-circuit current rating of integrated unit.
    - e. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of OCPD's in combination controllers by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - f. Features, characteristics, ratings, and fusing of individual OCPD's in combination controllers.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For magnetic controllers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Routine maintenance requirements for magnetic controllers and installed components.
  - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
  - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by UL and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Use of IEC rated components is prohibited.
- D. Controllers shall be a minimum of NEMA size 1.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover enclosed controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace controllers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label magnetic motor controllers to comply with UL 508 and UL 60947-4-1.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Fabricate motor controllers to comply with ICS 2 Class A.
- D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

### **2.2 FULL VOLTAGE MANUAL CONTROLLERS**

- A. Motor-Starting Switches (MSS): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
  - 1. Configuration: Nonreversing.
  - 2. Surface mounting.
- B. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers (FHPMC): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
  - 1. Configuration: Nonreversing.
  - 2. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button.
  - 3. Surface mounting.
  - 4. Red "running" pilot light.

### **2.3 FULL-VOLTAGE MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLER**

- A. Configuration: Nonreversing.
- B. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
  - 1. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
- C. Overload Relays:
  - 1. Thermal Overload Relays:
    - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b. Heaters in each phase shall be matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.

2. Solid-State Overload Relay:
    - a. Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
    - b. Sensors in each phase.
  3. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  4. Control Circuits: 120 V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity, minimum 500VA, to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
  5. External overload reset push button.
- D. Combination Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
1. Auxiliary Contacts: N.O. /N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  2. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
  3. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
    - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Comply with NEMA 250, type designations as indicated on Drawings, complying with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
  2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
  3. Kitchens, Wash-Down Areas, Other Wet Indoor Locations: Type 4X, stainless steel.
  4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.
  5. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: Type 7 as indicated.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Standard-duty, except as needed to match enclosure type. Heavy-duty or oil-tight where indicated in the controller schedule.
    - a. Push Buttons: As indicated in the controller schedule.
    - b. Pilot Lights: As indicated in the controller schedule.
- B. Reversible N.C. /N.O. auxiliary contact(s) as indicated.
- C. Communications Modules: Where indicated provide communication modules, energy metering and control in motor starters with functions and features compatible with the building's BAS. Provide all communications wiring between remote metering and communication modules and the BAS system.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for motor controllers, their relationship with the motors, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install magnetic controllers on walls with tops at uniform height indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- E. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- F. Setting of Overload Relays: Select and set overloads on the basis of full-load current rating as shown on motor nameplate. Adjust setting value for special motors as required by NFPA 70 for motors that are high-torque, high-efficiency, and so on.

#### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

#### **3.4 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install wiring between enclosed controllers and remote devices and building's BAS. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
  - 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
  - 2. Connect selector switches with enclosed-controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
2. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
3. Test continuity of each circuit.
4. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages.
5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
6. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
8. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controller.

**END OF SECTION 262913**

## SECTION 265000 - LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Luminaires.
2. Luminaire fittings.
3. Electric-discharge lamp control equipment.
4. Lamps.
5. Interior lighting fixtures, light engine, power supply, and accessories.
6. Exterior lighting fixtures, light engine, power supply, and accessories.
7. Emergency lighting units.
8. Exit signs.
9. Accessories for support of luminaires.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
2. The other Contract Documents complement this section.
3. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" specifies additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
4. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" specifies wiring connections installed by this Section.
5. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" specifies channel and angle supports installed by this Section.
6. Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" specifies electrical equipment labels and warning signs installed by this Section.
7. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" specifies automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors installed by this Section.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include complete data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
3. Power Supply including actual wattage and control wiring.
4. Light Engine, including rated average life, initial lumens, mean lumens, correlated color temperature, color-rendering index, and mercury content.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on independent laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type.

B. Field quality-control reports.

- C. Shop drawings.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals specified in Division 01.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp and light engine types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
  - 2. Provide a list of all power supply types used on Project with manufacturers' codes.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Spare parts.
- B. Extra stock material.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides.
- B. FM Global Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global. For Hazardous Location Fixtures Only
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Comply with UL 1598 for fixtures.
- E. Comply with UL 924 for exit signs, and emergency lighting units, and.
- F. Comply with NFPA 101.
- G. Comply with UL 844 for explosion-proof fixtures.
- H. Comply with UL 1574 for track lighting.
- I. Comply with UL 1598 for Solid state lighting (LED).

### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect exposed surface finishes on lighting equipment by applying strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.9 WARRANTY FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that luminaires perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
  - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

1.10 WARRANTY FOR BATTERIES

- A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty for Batteries: Manufacturer warrants that batteries perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of batteries that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
  - 1. Initial Extended-Warranty Period for Batteries: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 LIGHT FIXTURES

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
    - b. See individual product types below for listing criteria.
    - c. Marked in accordance with UL CCN HYXT, including UL 1598, for compatible power supply, installation location, and environmental conditions.
- B. Products: For each fixture type, subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated in the Lighting Fixture Schedule on Drawings or comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified on the schedule.
- C. Finishes: Standard, except as otherwise indicated, applied over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer, free of streaks, runs, holidays, stains, blisters, and similar defects.

1. Where note "standard color selected by Architect" is included in the fixture schedule. Color samples for standard colors shall be submitted for review and selection by Architect.
2. Where note "custom color selected by Architect" is included in the fixture schedule. Custom RAL color samples shall be submitted for review and selection by Architect.

D. Solid State Lighting (LED Luminaires):

1. Comply with IES LM-79.
2. CRI 80 (minimum).
3. Color consistency comply with NEMA SSL 3.
4. B70 rating at least 50,000 hours per IES LM-80.

## 2.2 LED DRIVERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers::

1. Philips Advance.
2. General Electric.
3. Osram Sylvania.
4. Universal Lighting Technologies.

B. Requirements.

1. Electronic Type – with sound rating "A".
2. Comply with NEMA SSL-1.
3. Minimum Efficiency – 85%
4. Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) – less than 20%
5. Dimming – 0-10V type. Down to 10%, unless otherwise noted on the schedule.

## 2.3 LAMPS

A. Products: For each fixture type, subject to compliance with requirements and compatible with fixtures and power supply provided listed in fixture schedule, provide product by one of the following manufacturers:

1. General Electric.
2. Philips Lighting.
3. Osram/Sylvania.

B. LED Lamps

1. General Requirements
  - a. Screw in Socket compatible with provided fixture.
  - b. Lamp shall be compatible with provided line voltage dimmer.



### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Installation Techniques:
  - 1. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished floor or grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
  - 3. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
    - a. Secured to outlet box.
    - b. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
    - c. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
  - 4. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
    - a. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
  - 5. Suspended Luminaire Support:
    - a. Ceiling Mount:
      - 1) Hook hangers.
  - 6. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
    - a. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
    - b. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Provide tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
    - c. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
  - 7. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaire Support:

- a. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, for each luminaire. Locate not more than 6 inch (150 mm) from luminaire corners.
  - b. Support Clips: Fasten to luminaires and to ceiling grid members at or near each luminaire corner with clips that are UL listed for application.
  - c. Luminaires of Sizes Smaller Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support luminaires independently with no fewer than two 3/4 inch (20 mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
- D. Remote Mounting of Drivers: Do not exceed distance between driver and luminaire recommended by driver manufacturer.
- E. Systems Integration: Integrate lighting control devices and equipment with electrical power connections for operation of luminaires as specified.
- F. Adjust aimable fixtures to provide required light intensities.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Perform manufacturer's recommended tests and inspections.
  2. Give advance notice of dates and times for field tests.
  3. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  4. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
  5. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Field Quality-Control Reports: Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Luminaire Aiming Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aiming direction of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
  2. Parts and supplies must be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  3. Adjust aim of luminaires in presence of Engineer.

### 3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

#### A. Maintenance Material Submittals:

1. Extra Stock Material: Furnish to Owner extra materials, from same production run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Include the following:
  - a. Light Engines and Driver: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - b. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - c. Emergency battery pack: One for every 50 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - d. Power Supply: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - e. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect lighting equipment from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures after installation using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer. Protect fixtures from dirt and debris during remainder of construction.
- B. Immediately prior to final inspection, for Substantial Completion, clean fixtures. Inspect, adjust, repair, replace, and re-clean fixtures to meet requirements.

**END OF SECTION 265000**

## **SECTION 266000 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Existing fire-alarm system to be modified.
  - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
  - 3. Fire-alarm notification appliances.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" or Section 260523 "Control Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

#### **1.3 DESIGN DELEGATION**

- A. The fire alarm system is to be designed and sealed by a licensed designer where required by local codes or the AHJ.
- B. The Drawings indicate a basis of design for locations of devices, appliances, control panels, etc. Fire alarm system designer shall revise the locations as required by AHJ.
- C. Submission to AHJ: In addition to required submittals, make an identical submission with any additional requirements to the AHJ.
  - 1. Include copies of battery calculations and annotated Contract Drawings as needed to depict component locations to facilitate review.
  - 2. Provide drawings sealed by a licensed designer where required by AHJ.
  - 3. Upon receipt of comments from the AHJ, submit them for review.
  - 4. Resubmit if required to make clarifications or revisions to obtain approval.

#### **1.4 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING**

- A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational.

#### **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Approved Permit Submittal: Submittals must be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.

- B. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
  
- C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
  - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including details of attachments to other Work.
  - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
  - 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
  - 5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
  - 6. Include battery-size calculations.
  - 7. Include input/output matrix.
  - 8. Include written statement from manufacturer that equipment and components have been tested as a system and comply with requirements in this Section and in NFPA 72.
  - 9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
  - 10. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
  
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Drawings showing location of each notification appliance, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of device.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
  - 3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates:
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Qualification Statements: For Installer.
- D. Sample Warranty: Submittal must include line item pricing for replacement parts and labor.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:
  - a. Comply with "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - b. Provide "Fire-Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" in accordance with "Completion Documents" Article in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between devices and equipment. Each conductor must be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
  - d. Riser diagram.
  - e. Device addresses.
  - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
  - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" in accordance with "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
    - 1) Equipment tested.
    - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
    - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
    - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
    - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
  - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
  2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
  3. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamper proofed components.
  4. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
  5. Fuses: Two of each type installed in system. Provide in box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  1. Personnel must be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  2. Installation must be by personnel certified by NICET.
  3. Obtain certification by NRTL in accordance with NFPA 72.
  4. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail because of defects in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 EXISTING FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM TO BE MODIFIED

- A. Basis for Pricing: Contractor shall field-verify existing fire alarm system manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components must be compatible with, and operate as extension of, existing system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.

2.2 Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a complete system of products from one of the following:

- 1. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
- 2. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
- 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
- 4. Silent Knight; Honeywell International, Inc.
- 5. Simplex; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.

2.3 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes must be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; must show visible indication of operation; and must be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
  - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
  - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
  - 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at top to permit lifting for access to initiate alarm. Lifting cover actuates integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
  - 4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at top to permit lifting for access to initiate alarm.

2.4 DUCT SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. Description: Photoelectric-type, duct-mounted smoke detector.
- B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
  - a. NFPA 72.
  - b. UL 268A.
2. General Characteristics:
  - a. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
  - b. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  - c. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated.
  - d. Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
  - e. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:
    - 1) Primary status.
    - 2) Device type.
    - 3) Present average value.
    - 4) Present sensitivity selected.
    - 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
  - f. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
  - g. Each sensor must have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
  - h. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
  - i. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.5 FIRE-ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

### A. Fire-Alarm Audible Notification Appliances:

1. Description: Horns, bells, or other notification devices that cannot output voice messages.
2. Performance Criteria:
  - a. Regulatory Requirements:
    - 1) NFPA 72.
  - b. General Characteristics:
    - 1) Individually addressed, connected to signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
    - 2) Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

### B. Fire-Alarm Visible Notification Appliances:

1. Performance Criteria:
  - a. Regulatory Requirements:



- 1) NFPA 72.
- 2) UL 1971.

b. General Characteristics:

- 1) Rated Light Output:
  - a) 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in field.
- 2) Clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on aluminum faceplate.
- 3) Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
- 4) For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings must be determined with guards in place.
- 5) Flashing must be in temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
- 6) Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
- 7) Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

## 2.6 FIRE-ALARM ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. NFPA 72.

2. General Characteristics:

- a. Include address-setting means on module.
- b. Store internal identifying code for control panel use to identify module type.
- c. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- d. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- e. Integral Relay: Capable of providing direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall.
  - 1) Allow control panel to switch relay contacts on command.
  - 2) Have minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- f. Control Module:
  - 1) Operate notification devices.
  - 2) Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service in accordance with requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Owner's written permission.
- B. Protection of In-Place Conditions: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect facility during construction.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Comply with NECA 305, NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
  1. Devices placed in service before other trades have completed cleanup must be replaced.
  2. Devices installed, but not yet placed, in service must be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage in accordance with manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
  1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of building.
  2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at supervising station.
  3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing control equipment as necessary to extend existing control functions to new points. New components must be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading performance of either system.
- C. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inch (1980 mm) above finished floor.
- D. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
  1. Install manual fire-alarm box in normal path of egress within 60 inch (1520 mm) of exit doorway.
  2. Operable part of manual fire-alarm box must be between 48 inch (1060 and 1220 mm) above floor level. Devices must be mounted at same height unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inch (9100 mm) long must be supported at both ends.
  - 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- A. Audible Notification Appliances: Install not less than 90 inches above the finished floor nor less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install ceiling-mounted appliances centered in acoustical panels or as indicated on drawings.
- B. Visual Notification Appliances: Install not less than 90 inches above the finished floor or at least 6 inches below the ceiling, whichever is lower. Install ceiling-mounted appliances centered in acoustical panels or as indicated on drawings. Synchronize strobes.
- C. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near device they monitor.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate must be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Wiring: Manufacturers recommended minimum wire size and type based on circuit length and loading.
- C. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to the sides and back of the enclosure.
  - 1. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess.
  - 2. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks.
  - 3. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams.
  - 4. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in cabinets or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.

### 3.6 PATHWAYS

- A. MC Cable and similar flexible conduits are not permitted for the installation of fire alarm wiring.
- B. Wiring must be installed in one of the following rigid conduit types: GRC, IMC, or EMT. Refer to specification section 260533 for additional conduit-use requirements.
- C. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in location visible from FACU.

### 3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground FACU and associated circuits in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Ground shielded cables at control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the pretesting, testing, and adjustment of the system.
- B. Pretesting: After installation, align, adjust, and balance the system and perform complete pretesting. Determine, through pretesting, the conformance of the system to the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new ones and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare forms for systematic recording of acceptance test results.
- C. Report of Pretesting: After pretesting is complete, provide a letter certifying the installation is complete and fully operable, including the names and titles of the witnesses to the preliminary tests.
- D. Final Test Notice: Provide a 7-day minimum notice in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing.
- E. Minimum System Tests: Test the system according to the procedures outlined in NFPA 72. Minimum required tests are as follows:

1. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground.
  2. Test all conductors for short circuits using an insulation-testing device.
  3. With each circuit pair, short circuit at the far end of the circuit and measure the circuit resistance with an ohmmeter. Record the circuit resistance of each circuit on the record drawings.
  4. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's operation and maintenance manual.
  5. Test initiating and indicating circuits for proper signal transmission under open circuit conditions. One connection each should be opened at not less than 10 percent of the initiating and indicating devices. Observe proper signal transmission according to class of wiring used.
  6. Test each initiating and indicating device for alarm operation and proper response at the control unit. Test smoke detectors with actual products of combustion.
  7. Test the system for all specified functions according to the approved operation and maintenance manual.
  8. Systematically initiate specified functional performance items at each station, including making all possible alarm and monitoring initiations and using all communications options.
  9. For each item, observe related performance at all devices required to be affected by the item under all system sequences.
  10. Observe indicating lights, displays, signal tones, and annunciator indications.
  11. Observe all voice audio for routing, clarity, quality, freedom from noise and distortion, and proper volume level.
  12. Test Both Primary and Secondary Power: Verify by test that the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the period and in the manner specified.
- F. Retesting: Correct deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies. Verify by the system test that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards.
- G. Report of Tests and Inspections: Provide a written record of inspections, tests, and detailed test results in the form of a test log. Submit log upon the satisfactory completion of tests.
- H. Tag all equipment, stations, and other components at which tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- 3.10 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING
- A. Cleaning: Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Touch up scratches and marred finish to match original finish. Clean unit internally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.11 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Startup Services: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to provide startup service and to demonstrate and train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below.
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, adjusting, and preventive maintenance. Provide a minimum of 4 hours' training.
  2. Training Aid: Use the approved final version of the operation and maintenance manual as a training aid.
  3. Schedule training with Owner with at least 7 days' advance notice.

- B. Coordinate system demonstration with local AHJ, and servicing fire units, where their presence at demonstration is required.

3.12 ON-SITE ASSISTANCE

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound levels, controls, and sensitivities to suit actual occupied conditions.
  - 1. Provide up to 3 requested adjustment visits to the site for this purpose.

**END OF SECTION 266000.**

## **SECTION 31 10 00 - SITE CLEARING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Protecting existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants, and grass, to remain.
  - 2. Removing existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants, and grass as indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Clearing and grubbing.
  - 4. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  - 5. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.
  - 6. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for soil materials, excavating, backfilling, and site grading.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

### **3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL**

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and in accordance with sediment and erosion control Drawings.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

### **3.3 TREE PROTECTION**

- A. Erect and maintain temporary fencing around tree protection zones before starting site clearing. Remove fence when construction is complete.
  - 1. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within fenced area.
  - 2. Do not permit vehicles, equipment, or foot traffic within fenced area.
  - 3. Maintain fenced area free of weeds and trash.
- B. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.

### **3.4 UTILITIES**

- A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.



- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Construction Manager's written permission.
- C. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

### 3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
  - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
  - 2. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
  - 3. Grind stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
  - 4. Use only hand methods for grubbing within tree protection zone.
  - 5. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
  - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

### 3.6 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
  - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
  - 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

### 3.7 DISPOSAL

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 311000**

## **SECTION 31 20 00 - EARTH MOVING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses, and exterior plants.
  - 2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
  - 3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
  - 4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
  - 2. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading, including preparing and placing topsoil and planting soil for lawns.
  - 3. Division 32 Section "Plants" for planting bed establishment and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
  - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

- I. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- J. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Geotextile.
  - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Perform earthwork complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Owner will employ and pay a qualified, independent geotechnical testing laboratory to perform soil testing and inspection services during earthwork operations. Contractor shall be responsible for scheduling and coordination of these services.
- C. Preexcavation Conference: Before commencing earthwork, meet with representatives of governing authorities, Owner, Architect, Structural Engineer, consultants, Geotechnical Testing Agency and other concerned entities. Review earthwork procedures and responsibilities including testing and inspection procedures and requirements. Notify participants at least three working days prior to convening conference. Record discussions and agreements and furnish a copy to each attendee.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Construction Manager and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Construction Manager's written permission.
  - 3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide off-site borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from on-site excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: On site soils satisfactory to testing agency, containing less than 25% pulverized shale fragments, free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, organics, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Silt, highly organic soils, wood, roots, trash, debris, and other soils and materials not acceptable to the testing agency.
  - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- J. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

## 2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; as noted on drawings.
- B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; as noted on the drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earthwork operations.
- C. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated utility trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
  - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
  - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. For sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water lines, please see the corresponding spec sections. For other site utilities follow below.
- B. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- C. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe elevation to allow for bedding course. Hand excavate for bell of pipe.
  - 1. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify testing agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If testing agency determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Construction Manager, without additional compensation.

3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used when approved by Geotechnical Engineer.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Construction Manager.

3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.10 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
  - 5. Removing trash and debris.
  - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. For sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water lines, please see the corresponding spec sections. For other site utility backfill, follow below.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- C. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

- D. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.
- E. Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
- F. Place and compact initial backfill material, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit in non-paved areas.
  - 1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit in paved areas.
- H. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.
- I. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation in non-paved areas.
- J. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation in paved areas.

### 3.12 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations in accordance with sections 3.13 and 3.14 and as follows:
  - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material or engineered fill.
  - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material (excluding topsoil) or engineered fill.
  - 3. Under steps and ramps, use satisfactory soil material (excluding topsoil) or engineered fill.
  - 4. Under building slabs, use satisfactory soil material (excluding topsoil) or engineered fill.
  - 5. Under footings and foundations, use satisfactory (excluding topsoil) soil material or engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

### 3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
  - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, including 10 feet beyond all such areas, compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 100 percent maximum dry density.
  - 2. Under walkways, compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 100 percent maximum dry density.
  - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent maximum dry density.
  - 4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 100 percent maximum dry density.

### 3.15 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

### 3.16 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Division 33 Section "Subdrainage."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
  - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with 1 layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
  - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.17 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.



- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
1. Where specified install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  2. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  3. Place subbase and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  4. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry density.
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 100 percent of maximum dry density.

### 3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### 3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Construction Manager; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Transport surplus soil material offsite to a legal disposal site off Owner's property.
  1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.
- B. Excavated pavements shall be considered waste material and shall not be incorporated into fills.

**END OF SECTION 312000**

## **SECTION 32 12 16 - ASPHALT PAVING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
2. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
3. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
4. Asphalt surface treatments.
5. Pavement-marking paint.
6. Wheel Stops.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 02 Section "Structure Demolition" for demolition, removal, and recycling of existing asphalt pavements, and for geotextiles that are not embedded within courses of asphalt paving.
2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
3. Division 32 Sections for other paving installed as part of crosswalks in asphalt pavement areas.
4. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

#### **1.3 DEFINITION**

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the Ohio Department of Transportation for asphalt paving work.
  1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard DOT specifications do not apply to this section.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
  - b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
  - c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
  - d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  1. Prime Coat: Comply with weather limitations as per the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications.
  2. Tack Coat: Comply with weather limitations as per the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications.
  3. Asphalt Base Course: Comply with weather limitations as per the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications.
  4. Asphalt Surface Course: Comply with weather limitations as per the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials, and 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials complying with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications as indicated on the plans.

#### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: Use materials complying with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications as indicated on the plans.
- B. Asphalt Cement: Use materials complying with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications as indicated on the plans.

- C. Prime Coat: Use materials complying with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications.
- D. Tack Coat: Use materials complying with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications as indicated on the plans.
- E. Water: Potable.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Paving Geotextile: As specified on plans.
- C. Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690 or AASHTO M 324, Type II or III, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.
- D. Pavement-Marking Paint: ODOT Item 642.
  - 1. Color: White, Yellow, & Blue.
- E. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 3500-psi minimum compressive strength, see drawings for dimensions. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.
  - 1. Dowels: 2 - Galvanized steel, minimum 1/2-inch diameter.

### 2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Use plant-mixed, hot-laid asphalt aggregate mixtures complying with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Materials Specifications as indicated on the plans.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - 1. Proof rolling to be performed in presence of Architect or Construction Manager.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, Construction Manager, or Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- C. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Verify that utilities, traffic loop detectors, and other items requiring a cut and installation beneath the asphalt surface have been completed and that asphalt surface has been repaired flush with adjacent asphalt prior to beginning installation of asphalt.

### 3.2 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove all soft or unsatisfactory material. Recompact subgrade and any existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting against new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- C. Patching: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

### 3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
  - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/2 inch.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

### 3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
  - 1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.
- C. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd.. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
  - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
  - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### 3.5 PAVING GEOTEXTILE INSTALLATION

- A. Place paving geotextile promptly according to manufacturer's written instructions. Broom or roll geotextile smooth and free of wrinkles and folds. Overlap longitudinal joints 4 inches and transverse joints 6 inches.
  - 1. Protect paving geotextile from traffic and other damage and place next portion of the pavement section the same day.

### 3.6 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

- A. Asphalt shall be placed in accordance with the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications and as indicated on the plans.
- B. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
  - 1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
  - 2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
  - 3. Spread mix at minimum temperatures as per the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications.
  - 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- C. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
  - 1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- D. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

### 3.7 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
  - 1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
  - 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
  - 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints Per ODOT standards.
  - 5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
  - 6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

### 3.8 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Complete compaction within temperature specifications as set in the Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Materials Specifications.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
  1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (total of all combined base courses).
  2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  3. Total Thickness: Where total thickness is of asphalt material is 3" or less, total pavement thickness is to be plus or minus 1/4 inch.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
  2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
  3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

### 3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age per manufacturers recommendations before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply per ODOT 642 Specifications to a minimum wet film thickness of 20 mils.



3.11 WHEEL STOPS

- A. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels a minimum of 7 inches into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner is to engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979.
  - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
    - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.13 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  - 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

**END OF SECTION 321216**

## **SECTION 32 13 13 - CONCRETE PAVING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
  - 1. Driveways and roadways.
  - 2. Parking lots.
  - 3. Curbs and gutters.
  - 4. Walkways.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture. Include alternate mixture designs when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:
  - 1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- C. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Curing compounds.
  - 4. Applied finish materials.
- D. Jointing Plan

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. ACI Publications:
  - 1. Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Comply with ACI 330, "Guide for Design and Construction of Concrete Parking Lot" unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Comply with ACI 325, "Design of Jointed Concrete Pavements for Streets and Local Roads" unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- D. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
  - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete pavement mixture design and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials and concrete pavement construction practices. Require representatives, including the following, of each entity directly concerned with concrete pavement, to attend conference:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
    - d. Concrete pavement subcontractor.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

## 2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

## 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain steel bars.
- C. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against pavement form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
- D. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use one of the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I., gray. Supplement with the following:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material when steel reinforcement is called out in exterior installations.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.

6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. Dry, delivered pre-wetted and soaked.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM 1752 Vinyl full depth, with joint sealant.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
  1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4,500 psi, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
  3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, or up to 5 inches with the use of a water-reducing chemical admixture.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
  1. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements and as follows:
  1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades
  - 1. Proof rolling to be performed in presence of Architect or Construction Manager.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, Construction Manager, or Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- C. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain 2" minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, or through locations of intended contraction or isolation joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint. Dowels to be epoxy coated and sized per ACI 330.
- C. Isolation (expansion) Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of not more than 30 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  4. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  5. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
  6. Apply joint sealant / caulk.
  7. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint. Dowels to be epoxy coated and sized per ACI 330.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. For thickness 5 inches or less construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-third of the concrete thickness, for thickness greater than 5 inches construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-quarter of the concrete thickness, as follows or match jointing of existing adjacent concrete pavement:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
  2. Sawed Joints: (*Not permitted on sidewalks*). Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
  3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated, or when construction joint will experience heavy truck traffic. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint. Dowels to be epoxy coated and sized per ACI 330.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed.
- D. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- E. Comply with ACI 301 and ASTM C94, requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- F. A one time add of water to concrete during delivery or at Project site is permitted but the water to cementitious material ratio must not be violated.
- G. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- H. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- I. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- J. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- K. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations.
- L. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.
- M. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
  - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.
- N. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.
- O. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.



2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.

P. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### 3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

### 3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
  1. Moist Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated prior to placement and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.9 TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
  4. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
  5. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
  6. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  7. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 5000 sq. ft. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
  4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
    - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.

- G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.11 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

**END OF SECTION 321313**

## **SECTION 33 11 00 - WATER DISTRIBUTION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside of the building for domestic, fire, and combined water service mains.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- B. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water valves and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All work must be done in compliance with the local water jurisdiction having authority, the local building department, the governing fire department, and all applicable state and national codes. If local codes conflict with project specifications or project plans the contractor should contact the Construction Manager.
- B. Minimum working pressures: The following are minimum pressure requirements for piping and specialties:
  - 1. Domestic Water Service: 200 psi
  - 2. Fire Protection Water Service: 250 psi
- C. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
  - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
  - 3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.

- D. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- F. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- G. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.
- H. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
  - 1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
  - 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
  - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
  - 2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Construction Manager's permission.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.
- B. Coordinate water main installation with other utility work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, annealed temper.
  - 1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - 2. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, drawn temper.
  - 1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - 2. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
- C. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
- D. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

### 2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: Class 52 minimum, 250 psi minimum pressure rating, AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated. The interior of the pipe shall be cement-mortar lined and seal coated in accordance with AWWA C104. The exterior of all pipe shall receive wither coal tar or asphalt base coating a minimum of 1 mil thick.
  - 1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: 250 psi minimum pressure rating, AWWA C110, ductile-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and Core 10 Alloy Steel only bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: Class 52 minimum, 250 psi minimum pressure rating, AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated. The interior of the pipe shall be cement-mortar lined and seal coated in accordance with AWWA C104. The exterior of all pipe shall receive wither coal tar or asphalt base coating a minimum of 1 mil thick.
  - 1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: 250 psi minimum pressure rating, AWWA C110, ductile-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

### 2.3 GATE VALVES

- A. AWWA, Gate Valves:
  - 1. Nonrising-Stem, High-Pressure, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
  - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
  - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  - 3) End Connections: Push on or mechanical joint.
  - 4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.

## 2.4 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

### A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:

- 1. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-60.
  - b. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
  - c. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.

### B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.

- 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.

### C. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FMG-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

## 2.5 CHECK VALVES

### A. AWWA Check Valves:

- 1. Description: Swing-check type with resilient seat. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.
  - a. Standard: AWWA C508.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.

## 2.6 DETECTOR CHECK VALVES

### A. Detector Check Valves:

- 1. Description: Galvanized cast-iron body, bolted cover with air-bleed device for access to internal parts, and flanged ends. Include one-piece bronze disc with bronze bushings, pivot, and replaceable seat. Include threaded bypass taps in inlet and outlet for bypass meter connection. Set valve to allow minimal water flow through bypass meter when major water flow is required.
  - a. Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  - c. Bypass Water Meter: AWWA C700, disc type, at least one-fourth size of detector check valve. Include meter, bypass piping, gate valves, check valve, and connections to detector check valve.

2. Description: Iron body, corrosion-resistant clapper ring and seat ring material, flanged ends, with connections for bypass and installation of water meter.
  - a. Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.

## 2.7 WATER METERS

- A. Water meters are to be per the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

## 2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
  1. As required per the jurisdiction having authority.
- B. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
  1. As required per the jurisdiction having authority.

## 2.9 WATER METER BOXES

- A. As required per the jurisdiction having authority.
- B. Description: Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. General:
  1. Conduit Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type B Conduits.
  2. Conduit Not Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type C Conduits.
- B. Excavation For Utility Trenches:
  1. Excavate trenches to indicated slopes, lines, depths, and invert elevations.
  2. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit.
  3. Excavate trench walls per ODOT Item 603.05 and geotechnical report as identified on the Drawings.
  4. Where encountering rock or another unyielding bearing surface, carry trench excavation 6 inches below invert elevation to receive bedding course.
- C. Utility Trench Backfill:
  1. Place and compact bedding course as required by ODOT specifications Item 603.06 and geotechnical report. Type 2 bedding consists of structural backfill extending at least 3 inches (75 mm) for all ODOT Item 706 rigid pipe conduits and 6 inches (150 mm) for all other conduits below the bottom of the conduit for the full width of the trench. Extend the bedding up around the pipe for a depth of not less than 30 percent of the rise of the conduit. Shape the bedding to fit the conduit with recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell-and-spigot pipe. Leave the bedding below the



- middle one-third of the pipe span uncompacted. Compact the remaining bedding according to ODOT Item 603.11.
2. Use Type 2 bedding for Types A, B, C, and D conduits except for long span structures and for conduits that require Type 3 bedding.
  3. Type 3 bedding consists of a natural foundation with recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell-and-spigot pipe. Scarify and loosen the middle one-third of the pipe span.
  4. Use Type 3 bedding for Type C and Type D conduits of the following materials: ODOT Items 706.01, 706.02, or 706.03.
  5. Structural backfill for ODOT Item 603 bedding and backfill shall consist of limestone, gravel, natural sand, sand manufactured from stone, or foundry sand. Provide Type I or Type II structural backfill per the requirements of ODOT Item 703.11
  6. Non-structural backfill should consist of clean, inorganic soil free of any miscellaneous materials, cobbles, and boulders. The fill should be placed in uniform, thin lifts and carefully compacted to a unit dry weight equal to 100 percent in structure areas and at least 98 percent of the maximum dry weight below pavement areas. The moisture content of the fill should be maintained at -2 to +1 percent of the optimum moisture content as determined in the laboratory by the Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils (ASTM D 698). Fill should not be placed in a frozen condition or upon a frozen subgrade.
  7. Place backfill to the limits described and according to the compaction requirements of ODOT Item 603.11. Place the backfill in the trench and embankment outside the trench uniformly on both sides of the conduit for all conduit installations.
    - a. Type A and B. Backfill Types A and B conduits except for long span structures as follows
      - 1) In a cut situation, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench. Within the trench and more than 4 feet (1.2 m) above the top of the conduit, if the trench can accommodate compaction equipment, the Contractor may construct Item 203 Embankment. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
      - 2) In a fill situation, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench specified in 603.05.B. Above these limits, uniformly place the lesser of one pipe span or 4 feet (1.2 m) of structural backfill on each side of the conduit and to a depth of 2 feet (0.6 m) above the top of the conduit. Construct the embankment outside the limits of the backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
    - b. Type C and D. Backfill Type C and D conduits as follows:
      - 1) In a cut situation, for plastic pipe, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding and to 12 inches (300 mm) over the top of the pipe. All other conduit material types place and compact backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
      - 2) In a fill situation, for plastic pipe, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench specified in 603.05.B. Above these limits, uniformly place the lesser of one pipe span or 4 feet (1.2 m) of structural backfill on each side of the conduit and vertically to the top of the conduit. Then place for a depth of 12 inches (300 mm) structural backfill over the top of the pipe equal to the trench width centered on the pipe center line. Construct the embankment outside the limits of the backfill. All other conduit material types place and compact backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
  8. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
  9. All fill soils shall be placed in accordance with the article "Compaction of Soil Backfills and Fills" from the Earth Moving Specification Section 312000.
  10. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
  11. Fill voids with approved backfill materials as shoring and bracing, and sheeting is removed.
  12. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
  - 1. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine in accordance with the jurisdiction having authority.
  - 2. Make connections NPS 2 and smaller with drilling machine in accordance with the jurisdiction having authority.
- B. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping installation.
- C. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- E. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 48 inches below finish grade.
- F. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
- G. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - 1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- H. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.

### 3.3 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Only the following may be used for anchorages and restrained-joint types:
  - 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
  - 2. Locking mechanical joints.
  - 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
  - 4. Bolted flanged joints.
  - 5. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
- C. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- D. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.

3.5 DETECTOR-CHECK VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install in vault or aboveground.
- B. Install for proper direction of flow. Install bypass with water meter, gate valves on each side of meter, and check valve downstream from meter.
- C. Support detector check valves, meters, shutoff valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.

3.6 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.

3.7 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.

3.8 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.
- B. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 1 inch above surface.

3.9 CONCRETE VAULT INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.

3.10 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints and thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
- B. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.

3.11 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection to mains.

3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water main. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve, or service clamp and corporation valve.

- B. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water and fire-suppression piping if in place. Coordinate connection with plumber.
- C. Connect drainage piping from concrete vault drains to storm-drainage system swale or pipe.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
  - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
  - 2. All pipe, fittings and other materials found to be defective under test shall be removed and replaced at the contractors expense.
- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

### 3.14 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
    - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - b. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
    - c. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 331100

## **SECTION 33 31 00 – SANITARY SEWERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure sanitary sewerage outside the building, with the following components:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Precast concrete manholes.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Piping Pressure Rating: at least equal to system test pressure.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Pipe.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - 1. Manholes: Include plans, sections, details, and frames and covers.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, and locations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewerage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
- D. Profile Drawings (as necessary): Show system piping in elevation view. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and locations of other utilities crossing system piping.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Construction Manager 's permission.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - 1. NPS 3 to NPS 6: SDR 35.
  - 2. NPS 8 to NPS 12: SDR 42.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.2 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with integral bell-and-spigot rubber gasketed joints per ASTM D 3212.
- B. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 18 and Larger: ASTM F 679, T-1 wall thickness, with integral bell-and-spigot rubber gasketed joints per ASTM D 3212.

2.3 CLEANOUTS

- A. PVC with cast iron adaptor: Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping. Include cast iron adaptor and threaded brass closure plug.

2.4 MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
  - 1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
  - 3. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  - 4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and of length to provide depth indicated.

5. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type, unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
6. Joint Sealant: Precast manhole section joints shall be formed entirely of concrete employing a round, wedge shaped profile gasket, and when assembled shall be self centering and make a uniform watertight joint conforming to ASTM C 443. The joint shall also be sealed with a bituminous mastic joint sealing compound.
7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: Sewer pipe to manhole connections on all sanitary sewers shall be flexible and watertight. Sewer pipe shall be sealed in the manhole section pipe openings with a resilient connector meeting the requirements of ASTM C 923. The connection may be any of the following types:
  - a. Rubber sleeve with stainless steel banding
  - b. Rubber gasket compression

Resilient connector shall be cast integrally into the wall of the manhole section at the time of manufacture, or, shall be installed by mechanical means in openings cut into manhole wall per ASTM C 923.

8. Steps: ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP; Ductile Iron; or Cast Aluminum. Steps shall be wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Steps shall be equally spaced. Whenever possible steps shall not be placed directly above manhole flow channel. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 48 inches.
9. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
10. Protective Coating: Plant-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to interior surfaces.
11. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch- minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER." Manhole Frames and Covers shall be heavy duty.
  - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile iron, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 CONCRETE

- A. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
  1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
    - a. Invert Slope: minimum fall of 0.10 foot across manhole.
  2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
- B. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Paint: SSPC-Paint 16.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTHWORK

##### A. General:

1. Conduit Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type B Conduits.
2. Conduit Not Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type C Conduits.

##### B. Excavation For Utility Trenches:

1. Excavate trenches to indicated slopes, lines, depths, and invert elevations.
2. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit.
3. Excavate trench walls per ODOT Item 603.05 and geotechnical report as identified on the Drawings.
4. Where encountering rock or another unyielding bearing surface, carry trench excavation 6 inches below invert elevation to receive bedding course.

##### C. Utility Trench Backfill:

1. Place and compact bedding course as required by ODOT specifications Item 603.06 and geotechnical report. Type 2 bedding consists of structural backfill extending at least 3 inches (75 mm) for all ODOT Item 706 rigid pipe conduits and 6 inches (150 mm) for all other conduits below the bottom of the conduit for the full width of the trench. Extend the bedding up around the pipe for a depth of not less than 30 percent of the rise of the conduit. Shape the bedding to fit the conduit with recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell-and-spigot pipe. Leave the bedding below the middle one-third of the pipe span uncompacted. Compact the remaining bedding according to ODOT Item 603.11.
2. Use Type 2 bedding for Types A, B, C, and D conduits except for long span structures and for conduits that require Type 3 bedding.
3. Type 3 bedding consists of a natural foundation with recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell-and-spigot pipe. Scarify and loosen the middle one-third of the pipe span.
4. Use Type 3 bedding for Type C and Type D conduits of the following materials: ODOT Items 706.01, 706.02, or 706.03.
5. Structural backfill for ODOT Item 603 bedding and backfill shall consist of limestone, gravel, natural sand, sand manufactured from stone, or foundry sand. Provide Type I or Type II structural backfill per the requirements of ODOT Item 703.11
6. Non-structural backfill should consist of clean, inorganic soil free of any miscellaneous materials, cobbles, and boulders. The fill should be placed in uniform, thin lifts and carefully compacted to a unit dry weight equal to 100 percent in structure areas and at least 98 percent of the maximum dry weight below pavement areas. The moisture content of the fill should be maintained at -2 to +1 percent of the optimum moisture content as determined in the laboratory by the Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils (ASTM D 698). Fill should not be placed in a frozen condition or upon a frozen subgrade.
7. Place backfill to the limits described and according to the compaction requirements of ODOT Item 603.11. Place the backfill in the trench and embankment outside the trench uniformly on both sides of the conduit for all conduit installations.
  - a. Type A and B. Backfill Types A and B conduits except for long span structures as follows
    - 1) In a cut situation, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench. Within the trench and more than 4 feet (1.2 m) above the top of the conduit, if the trench can accommodate compaction equipment, the Contractor may construct Item 203 Embankment. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
    - 2) In a fill situation, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench specified in 603.05.B. Above these limits, uniformly place the lesser of one pipe span or 4 feet (1.2 m) of structural backfill on each side of the conduit and to a depth of 2 feet (0.6 m) above the top of the conduit. Construct the



embankment outside the limits of the backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.

- b. Type C and D. Backfill Type C and D conduits as follows:
  - 1) In a cut situation, for plastic pipe, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding and to 12 inches (300 mm) over the top of the pipe. All other conduit material types place and compact backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
  - 2) In a fill situation, for plastic pipe, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench specified in 603.05.B. Above these limits, uniformly place the lesser of one pipe span or 4 feet (1.2 m) of structural backfill on each side of the conduit and vertically to the top of the conduit. Then place for a depth of 12 inches (300 mm) structural backfill over the top of the pipe equal to the trench width centered on the pipe center line. Construct the embankment outside the limits of the backfill. All other conduit material types place and compact backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
8. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
9. All fill soils shall be placed in accordance with the article "Compaction of Soil Backfills and Fills" from the Earth Moving Specification Section 312000.
10. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
11. Fill voids with approved backfill materials as shoring and bracing, and sheeting is removed.
12. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, contact Construction Manager.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections, unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 2 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Install ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 except as modified by this section or as required by the jurisdiction having authority.
  4. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 except as modified by this section or as required by the jurisdiction having authority.
- F. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Preparatory to making pipe joints, all joint surfaces shall be cleaned of all dirt, dust, and foreign matter and shall be dry, smooth, and free of imperfections before placing joining materials. Gaskets, lubricants, primers, adhesives, or other joining materials shall be used as recommended by the pipe or joint manufacturer's specifications. Generally, lubricants and primers and adhesives shall be placed on both the bell and spigot portions of the joint. The pipe shall then be placed, fitted, joined, and adjusted in such a workmanlike manner as to obtain the degree of watertightness required. In the event that pipe previously laid is disturbed due to any cause, it shall be removed and relaid.
- B. Joints that show leakage will not be accepted. If after backfilling and inspection, any joints are found to be allowing groundwater to enter the sewer, such joints shall be sealed by the contractor at no cost to the owner.
- C. No fittings (except service wyes and repair couplings) shall be allowed in gravity sewers. Open ends of wyes shall be plugged or sealed until service laterals are installed.
- D. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Join ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 except as modified by this section or as required by the jurisdiction having authority.
  - 2. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 except as modified by this section or as required by the jurisdiction having authority.
  - 3. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible couplings.

### 3.4 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
- C. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

### 3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  - 1. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic, vehicle-traffic, roads, and service areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in asphalt or concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall, unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
    - a. Use concrete that will attain minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
  - 4. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- C. Connect to **[grease]** **[oil]** **[sediment]** interceptors specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Interceptors."

### 3.8 PAINTING

- A. Clean and prepare concrete manhole surfaces for field painting. Remove loose efflorescence, chalk, dust, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen surface as required to remove glaze. Paint the following concrete surfaces as recommended by paint manufacturer:
  - 1. Precast Concrete Manholes: All interior.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - 1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  - 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  - 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  - 2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice. If authorities having jurisdiction do not have published procedures, or if sewer does not fall under a jurisdiction, perform tests as follows:
  - 4. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
    - a. Allowable leakage is maximum of 50 gal./inch of nominal pipe size per mile of pipe, during 24-hour period.
    - b. Close openings in system and fill with water.
    - c. Purge air and refill with water.
    - d. Disconnect water supply.
    - e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
  - 5. Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - a. Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
- C. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969.
- D. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- E. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous material.

**END OF SECTION 333100**

## **SECTION 33 41 00 - STORM DRAINAGE**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure storm drainage outside the building, with the following components:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Drains, Catch Basins, Inlets, & Headwalls.
  - 3. Precast concrete & Cast-in-place concrete manholes.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- C. ODOT: Ohio Department of Transportation

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water. Pipe joints shall be at least silttight, unless otherwise indicated.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Pipe.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Trench Drains.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - 1. Manholes: Include plans, sections, details, and frames and covers.
  - 2. Catch Basins, Headwalls and Stormwater Inlets. Include plans, sections, details, and frames, covers, and grates.
  - 3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, sections, details, frames, grates, and covers.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, and locations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

- D. Profile Drawings (as necessary): Show system piping in elevation view. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and locations of other utilities crossing system piping.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle catch basins, headwalls, and stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Construction Manager's permission.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL:

- A. Public Roadway Culverts: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type A Conduits.
- B. Conduit Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type B Conduits.
- C. Conduit Not Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type C Conduits.
- D. Private Drive Pipes and Bikeways: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type B Conduits.

#### 2.2 ALUMINIZED CORRUGATED METAL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and as noted on the Drawings.

#### 2.3 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and as noted on the Drawings.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and as noted on the Drawings.
- B. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- C. PVC Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 794 pipe, with bell-and-spigot ends; ASTM D 3034 fittings, with bell ends; and ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.5 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and as noted on the Drawings.

2.6 DUCTILE IRON PIPE

- A. Per ODOT 748.01 conforming to ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51, service and extra-heavy classes, for gasketed joints.
- B. Gaskets: ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber, compression type, thickness to match class of pipe.

2.7 CLEANOUTS

- A. PVC with cast iron adaptor: Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping. Include cast iron adaptor and threaded brass closure plug.

2.8 DRAINS

- A. Yard Drains: As noted on the Drawings.
- B. Trench Drains: As noted on the Drawings.

2.9 MANHOLES

- A. Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
  - 1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  - 3. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and of length to provide depth indicated.
  - 4. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type, unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.Steps: ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP; Ductile Iron; or Cast Aluminum. Steps shall be wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Steps shall be equally spaced. Whenever possible steps shall not be placed directly above manhole flow channel. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 48 inches.
  - 5. Manhole Frames and Covers: Include lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."
    - a. Frames and Covers must be heavy duty

2.10 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings

2.11 CATCH BASINS

- A. Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
  - 1. See drawings for schedule of specific types of catch basins
  - 2. Frames and Grates:
    - a. Are to be heavy duty.
    - b. Are to be ADA compliant.
    - c. Are to be Bicycle safe.

2.12 STORMWATER DETENTION STRUCTURES

- A. As indicated on the Drawings and Per the jurisdiction having authority.

2.13 PIPE INLETS AND OUTLETS

- A. Headwalls: Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
- B. Rock Channel Protection (Riprap): Per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and as indicated on the Drawings.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. General:
  - 1. Conduit Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type B Conduits.
  - 2. Conduit Not Under Pavement: Refer to The Ohio Department of Transportation Construction and Material Specifications Item 603.02, Type C Conduits.
- B. Excavation For Utility Trenches:
  - 1. Excavate trenches to indicated slopes, lines, depths, and invert elevations.
  - 2. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit.
  - 3. Excavate trench walls per ODOT Item 603.05 and geotechnical report as identified on the Drawings.
  - 4. Where encountering rock or another unyielding bearing surface, carry trench excavation 6 inches below invert elevation to receive bedding course.
- C. Utility Trench Backfill:
  - 1. Place and compact bedding course as required by ODOT specifications Item 603.06 and geotechnical report. Type 2 bedding consists of structural backfill extending at least 3 inches (75 mm) for all ODOT Item 706 rigid pipe conduits and 6 inches (150 mm) for all other conduits below the bottom of the conduit for the full width of the trench. Extend the bedding up around the pipe for a depth of not less than 30 percent of the rise of the conduit. Shape the bedding to fit the conduit with recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell-and-spigot pipe. Leave the bedding below the



- middle one-third of the pipe span uncompacted. Compact the remaining bedding according to ODOT Item 603.11.
2. Use Type 2 bedding for Types A, B, C, and D conduits except for long span structures and for conduits that require Type 3 bedding.
  3. Type 3 bedding consists of a natural foundation with recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell-and-spigot pipe. Scarify and loosen the middle one-third of the pipe span.
  4. Use Type 3 bedding for Type C and Type D conduits of the following materials: ODOT Items 706.01, 706.02, or 706.03.
  5. Structural backfill for ODOT Item 603 bedding and backfill shall consist of limestone, gravel, natural sand, sand manufactured from stone, or foundry sand. Provide Type I or Type II structural backfill per the requirements of ODOT Item 703.11
  6. Non-structural backfill should consist of clean, inorganic soil free of any miscellaneous materials, cobbles, and boulders. The fill should be placed in uniform, thin lifts and carefully compacted to a unit dry weight equal to 100 percent in structure areas and at least 98 percent of the maximum dry weight below pavement areas. The moisture content of the fill should be maintained at -2 to +1 percent of the optimum moisture content as determined in the laboratory by the Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils (ASTM D 698). Fill should not be placed in a frozen condition or upon a frozen subgrade.
  7. Place backfill to the limits described and according to the compaction requirements of ODOT Item 603.11. Place the backfill in the trench and embankment outside the trench uniformly on both sides of the conduit for all conduit installations.
    - a. Type A and B. Backfill Types A and B conduits except for long span structures as follows
      - 1) In a cut situation, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench. Within the trench and more than 4 feet (1.2 m) above the top of the conduit, if the trench can accommodate compaction equipment, the Contractor may construct Item 203 Embankment. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
      - 2) In a fill situation, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench specified in 603.05.B. Above these limits, uniformly place the lesser of one pipe span or 4 feet (1.2 m) of structural backfill on each side of the conduit and to a depth of 2 feet (0.6 m) above the top of the conduit. Construct the embankment outside the limits of the backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
    - b. Type C and D. Backfill Type C and D conduits as follows:
      - 1) In a cut situation, for plastic pipe, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding and to 12 inches (300 mm) over the top of the pipe. All other conduit material types place and compact backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
      - 2) In a fill situation, for plastic pipe, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench specified in 603.05.B. Above these limits, uniformly place the lesser of one pipe span or 4 feet (1.2 m) of structural backfill on each side of the conduit and vertically to the top of the conduit. Then place for a depth of 12 inches (300 mm) structural backfill over the top of the pipe equal to the trench width centered on the pipe center line. Construct the embankment outside the limits of the backfill. All other conduit material types place and compact backfill. For plastic pipe with an ID 8 inch (200 mm) or less, place and compact structural backfill above the bedding for the full depth of the trench.
  8. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
  9. All fill soils shall be placed in accordance with the article "Compaction of Soil Backfills and Fills" from the Earth Moving Specification Section 312000.
  10. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
  11. Fill voids with approved backfill materials as shoring and bracing, and sheeting is removed.
  12. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. All installation shall be per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications item 603 and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
- B. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, contact architect.
- C. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- D. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- E. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install piping with 12inches minimum cover, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. Notify architect if less than 12 inches of cover will exist.
  - 3. During construction protect installed piping from damage. Maintain manufacturers recommended minimum cover.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. All joint construction shall be per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications item 603 and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
- B. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings, or concrete collar.

### 3.4 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  - 1. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic, vehicle-traffic, roads, and service areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in asphalt or concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.5 DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
  - 1. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification drains in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification drains in paved foot-traffic, vehicle-traffic, roads, and service areas.

- B. Install per manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.6 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Installation shall be per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
- B. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.7 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. General: Installation shall be per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

### 3.8 STORMWATER INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION

- A. General: Installation of Headwalls and Rock Channel Protection shall be per the latest version of the ODOT Construction and Material Specifications and the latest version of the ODOT Standard Construction Drawings.

### 3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

### 3.10 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - 1. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
  - 2. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - 3. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  - 2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
- C. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat testing until defect is within allowances specified.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials.

**END OF SECTION 334100**